



1 Chronicles

translationNotes

v6

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 6

Published: 2017-02-22

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	23
Introduction to 1 Chronicles	23
1 Chronicles 1 General Notes	41
1 Chronicles 1:1-4	42
1 Chronicles 1:5-7	43
1 Chronicles 1:8-10	44
1 Chronicles 1:11-12	45
1 Chronicles 1:13-16	46
1 Chronicles 1:17-19	47
1 Chronicles 1:20-23	48
1 Chronicles 1:24-27	49
1 Chronicles 1:28-31	50
1 Chronicles 1:32-33	51
1 Chronicles 1:34-37	52
1 Chronicles 1:38-40	53
1 Chronicles 1:41-42	54
1 Chronicles 1:43-45	55
1 Chronicles 1:46-48	56
1 Chronicles 1:49-50	57
1 Chronicles 1:51-54	58
1 Chronicles 2 General Notes	59
1 Chronicles 2:1-2	60
1 Chronicles 2:3-4	61
1 Chronicles 2:5-8	62
1 Chronicles 2:9-12	63
1 Chronicles 2:13-15	64
1 Chronicles 2:16-17	65
1 Chronicles 2:18-20	66
1 Chronicles 2:21-22	67
1 Chronicles 2:23-24	68
1 Chronicles 2:25-28	69
1 Chronicles 2:29-33	70
1 Chronicles 2:34-35	71
1 Chronicles 2:36-38	72
1 Chronicles 2:39-41	73
1 Chronicles 2:42-44	74
1 Chronicles 2:45-47	75
1 Chronicles 2:48-49	76
1 Chronicles 2:50-51	77
1 Chronicles 2:52-53	78

Table of Contents

1 Chronicles 2:54-55	79
1 Chronicles 3 General Notes	80
1 Chronicles 3:1-3	81
1 Chronicles 3:4-5	83
1 Chronicles 3:6-9	84
1 Chronicles 3:10-12	85
1 Chronicles 3:13-14	87
1 Chronicles 3:15-16	88
1 Chronicles 3:17-18	89
1 Chronicles 3:19-21	90
1 Chronicles 3:22-24	91
1 Chronicles 4 General Notes	92
1 Chronicles 4:1-2	93
1 Chronicles 4:3-4	94
1 Chronicles 4:5-8	95
1 Chronicles 4:9-10	96
1 Chronicles 4:11-12	98
1 Chronicles 4:13-16	99
1 Chronicles 4:17-18	101
1 Chronicles 4:19-20	103
1 Chronicles 4:21-23	104
1 Chronicles 4:24-26	105
1 Chronicles 4:27-28	106
1 Chronicles 4:29-31	107
1 Chronicles 4:32-33	108
1 Chronicles 4:34-38	109
1 Chronicles 4:39-41	110
1 Chronicles 4:42-43	112
1 Chronicles 5 General Notes	113
1 Chronicles 5:1-3	114
1 Chronicles 5:4-6	116
1 Chronicles 5:7-9	117
1 Chronicles 5:10	118
1 Chronicles 5:11-13	119
1 Chronicles 5:14-15	120
1 Chronicles 5:16-17	121
1 Chronicles 5:18-19	122
1 Chronicles 5:20-22	123
1 Chronicles 5:23-24	125
1 Chronicles 5:25-26	126
1 Chronicles 6 General Notes	128
1 Chronicles 6:1-3	129
1 Chronicles 6:4-6	130

1 Chronicles 6:7-9	131
1 Chronicles 6:10-12	132
1 Chronicles 6:13-15	133
1 Chronicles 6:16-18	134
1 Chronicles 6:19-21	135
1 Chronicles 6:22-24	136
1 Chronicles 6:25-27	137
1 Chronicles 6:28-30	138
1 Chronicles 6:31-32	139
1 Chronicles 6:33-35	141
1 Chronicles 6:36-38	143
1 Chronicles 6:39-43	145
1 Chronicles 6:44-47	147
1 Chronicles 6:48	149
1 Chronicles 6:49	150
1 Chronicles 6:50-53	152
1 Chronicles 6:54-56	153
1 Chronicles 6:57-58	155
1 Chronicles 6:59-60	156
1 Chronicles 6:61-62	157
1 Chronicles 6:63-65	158
1 Chronicles 6:66-69	159
1 Chronicles 6:70	160
1 Chronicles 6:71-73	161
1 Chronicles 6:74-76	162
1 Chronicles 6:77-79	163
1 Chronicles 6:80-81	165
1 Chronicles 7 General Notes	166
1 Chronicles 7:1-3	167
1 Chronicles 7:4-5	168
1 Chronicles 7:6-7	169
1 Chronicles 7:8-10	170
1 Chronicles 7:11-12	171
1 Chronicles 7:13	172
1 Chronicles 7:14-16	173
1 Chronicles 7:17-19	175
1 Chronicles 7:20-22	176
1 Chronicles 7:23-24	178
1 Chronicles 7:25-27	179
1 Chronicles 7:28-29	180
1 Chronicles 7:30-32	182
1 Chronicles 7:33-35	183
1 Chronicles 7:36-38	184

Table of Contents

1 Chronicles 7:39-40	185
1 Chronicles 8 General Notes	186
1 Chronicles 8:1-5	187
1 Chronicles 8:6-7	188
1 Chronicles 8:8-11	189
1 Chronicles 8:12-13	190
1 Chronicles 8:14-18	191
1 Chronicles 8:19-21	192
1 Chronicles 8:22-25	193
1 Chronicles 8:26-28	194
1 Chronicles 8:29-31	195
1 Chronicles 8:32-34	196
1 Chronicles 8:35-37	197
1 Chronicles 8:38-40	198
1 Chronicles 9 General Notes	199
1 Chronicles 9:1-3	200
1 Chronicles 9:4-6	202
1 Chronicles 9:7-9	203
1 Chronicles 9:10-11	204
1 Chronicles 9:12-13	205
1 Chronicles 9:14-16	206
1 Chronicles 9:17-19	208
1 Chronicles 9:20-21	210
1 Chronicles 9:22-24	211
1 Chronicles 9:25-27	213
1 Chronicles 9:28-29	214
1 Chronicles 9:30-32	215
1 Chronicles 9:33-34	216
1 Chronicles 9:35-37	217
1 Chronicles 9:38-40	218
1 Chronicles 9:41-44	219
1 Chronicles 10 General Notes	220
1 Chronicles 10:1-3	221
1 Chronicles 10:4	222
1 Chronicles 10:5-6	223
1 Chronicles 10:7-8	224
1 Chronicles 10:9-10	225
1 Chronicles 10:11-12	226
1 Chronicles 10:13-14	227
1 Chronicles 11 General Notes	228
1 Chronicles 11:1-3	229
1 Chronicles 11:4-6	231
1 Chronicles 11:7-9	233

1 Chronicles 11:10-11	234
1 Chronicles 11:12-14	235
1 Chronicles 11:15-17	236
1 Chronicles 11:18-19	237
1 Chronicles 11:20-21	238
1 Chronicles 11:22-23	239
1 Chronicles 11:24-25	241
1 Chronicles 11:26-29	242
1 Chronicles 11:30-33	243
1 Chronicles 11:34-37	244
1 Chronicles 11:38-41	245
1 Chronicles 11:42-44	246
1 Chronicles 11:45-47	247
1 Chronicles 12 General Notes	248
1 Chronicles 12:1-2	249
1 Chronicles 12:3-4	250
1 Chronicles 12:5-7	251
1 Chronicles 12:8	252
1 Chronicles 12:9-13	253
1 Chronicles 12:14-15	254
1 Chronicles 12:16-17	255
1 Chronicles 12:18	256
1 Chronicles 12:19-20	257
1 Chronicles 12:21-22	258
1 Chronicles 12:23-25	259
1 Chronicles 12:26-28	261
1 Chronicles 12:29-31	262
1 Chronicles 12:32-33	263
1 Chronicles 12:34-35	264
1 Chronicles 12:36-37	265
1 Chronicles 12:38-40	266
1 Chronicles 13 General Notes	268
1 Chronicles 13:1-4	269
1 Chronicles 13:5-6	271
1 Chronicles 13:7-8	272
1 Chronicles 13:9-11	273
1 Chronicles 13:12-14	274
1 Chronicles 14 General Notes	276
1 Chronicles 14:1-2	277
1 Chronicles 14:3-7	279
1 Chronicles 14:8-9	280
1 Chronicles 14:10-12	281
1 Chronicles 14:13-14	283

Table of Contents

1 Chronicles 14:15-17	284
1 Chronicles 15 General Notes	285
1 Chronicles 15:1-3	286
1 Chronicles 15:4-6	288
1 Chronicles 15:7-10	289
1 Chronicles 15:11-12	290
1 Chronicles 15:13-15	291
1 Chronicles 15:16-18	293
1 Chronicles 15:19-21	295
1 Chronicles 15:22-24	296
1 Chronicles 15:25-26	297
1 Chronicles 15:27-28	298
1 Chronicles 15:29	300
1 Chronicles 16 General Notes	301
1 Chronicles 16:1-3	302
1 Chronicles 16:4-6	304
1 Chronicles 16:7-9	305
1 Chronicles 16:10-11	306
1 Chronicles 16:12-14	307
1 Chronicles 16:15-18	309
1 Chronicles 16:19-22	311
1 Chronicles 16:23-24	313
1 Chronicles 16:25-27	314
1 Chronicles 16:28-29	316
1 Chronicles 16:30-31	317
1 Chronicles 16:32-33	318
1 Chronicles 16:34-35	319
1 Chronicles 16:36	320
1 Chronicles 16:37-39	321
1 Chronicles 16:40-41	323
1 Chronicles 16:42-43	324
1 Chronicles 17 General Notes	325
1 Chronicles 17:1-2	326
1 Chronicles 17:3-6	327
1 Chronicles 17:7-8	329
1 Chronicles 17:9-10	330
1 Chronicles 17:11-12	332
1 Chronicles 17:13-15	333
1 Chronicles 17:16-18	334
1 Chronicles 17:19-21	336
1 Chronicles 17:22-24	338
1 Chronicles 17:25-27	339
1 Chronicles 18 General Notes	340

1 Chronicles 18:1-2	341
1 Chronicles 18:3-4	342
1 Chronicles 18:5-6	343
1 Chronicles 18:7-8	344
1 Chronicles 18:9-11	345
1 Chronicles 18:12-13	347
1 Chronicles 18:14-17	348
1 Chronicles 19 General Notes	350
1 Chronicles 19:1-3	351
1 Chronicles 19:4-5	353
1 Chronicles 19:6-7	354
1 Chronicles 19:8-9	355
1 Chronicles 19:10-11	356
1 Chronicles 19:12-13	357
1 Chronicles 19:14-15	358
1 Chronicles 19:16-17	359
1 Chronicles 19:18-19	360
1 Chronicles 20 General Notes	361
1 Chronicles 20:1	362
1 Chronicles 20:2-3	363
1 Chronicles 20:4-5	364
1 Chronicles 20:6-8	366
1 Chronicles 21 General Notes	367
1 Chronicles 21:1-3	368
1 Chronicles 21:4-5	370
1 Chronicles 21:6-8	371
1 Chronicles 21:9-10	373
1 Chronicles 21:11-12	374
1 Chronicles 21:13-15	375
1 Chronicles 21:16-17	377
1 Chronicles 21:18-20	379
1 Chronicles 21:21-22	380
1 Chronicles 21:23-24	381
1 Chronicles 21:25-27	383
1 Chronicles 21:28-30	384
1 Chronicles 22 General Notes	386
1 Chronicles 22:1-2	387
1 Chronicles 22:3-5	388
1 Chronicles 22:6-8	390
1 Chronicles 22:9-10	392
1 Chronicles 22:11-13	394
1 Chronicles 22:14	395
1 Chronicles 22:15-16	396

Table of Contents

1 Chronicles 22:17-19	397
1 Chronicles 23 General Notes	399
1 Chronicles 23:1-3	400
1 Chronicles 23:4-6	401
1 Chronicles 23:7-9	403
1 Chronicles 23:10-11	404
1 Chronicles 23:12-14	405
1 Chronicles 23:15-18	407
1 Chronicles 23:19-20	408
1 Chronicles 23:21-23	409
1 Chronicles 23:24-26	410
1 Chronicles 23:27-29	412
1 Chronicles 23:30-31	414
1 Chronicles 23:32	415
1 Chronicles 24 General Notes	416
1 Chronicles 24:1-3	417
1 Chronicles 24:4-5	418
1 Chronicles 24:6	419
1 Chronicles 24:7-10	420
1 Chronicles 24:11-14	421
1 Chronicles 24:15-18	422
1 Chronicles 24:19	423
1 Chronicles 24:20-22	424
1 Chronicles 24:23-25	425
1 Chronicles 24:26-28	426
1 Chronicles 24:29-31	427
1 Chronicles 25 General Notes	429
1 Chronicles 25:1-3	430
1 Chronicles 25:4-5	432
1 Chronicles 25:6-8	433
1 Chronicles 25:9-12	434
1 Chronicles 25:13-16	435
1 Chronicles 25:17-20	436
1 Chronicles 25:21-24	437
1 Chronicles 25:25-28	438
1 Chronicles 25:29-31	439
1 Chronicles 26 General Notes	440
1 Chronicles 26:1-3	441
1 Chronicles 26:4-6	442
1 Chronicles 26:7-9	443
1 Chronicles 26:10-11	444
1 Chronicles 26:12-14	445
1 Chronicles 26:15-16	446

1 Chronicles 26:17-19	447
1 Chronicles 26:20-22	448
1 Chronicles 26:23-25	449
1 Chronicles 26:26-28	450
1 Chronicles 26:29-30	452
1 Chronicles 26:31-32	453
1 Chronicles 27 General Notes	455
1 Chronicles 27:1-3	456
1 Chronicles 27:4-6	458
1 Chronicles 27:7-9	459
1 Chronicles 27:10-12	461
1 Chronicles 27:13-15	463
1 Chronicles 27:16-18	465
1 Chronicles 27:19-22	467
1 Chronicles 27:23-24	469
1 Chronicles 27:25-27	471
1 Chronicles 27:28-29	473
1 Chronicles 27:30-31	474
1 Chronicles 27:32-34	475
1 Chronicles 28 General Notes	476
1 Chronicles 28:1	477
1 Chronicles 28:2-3	478
1 Chronicles 28:4-5	480
1 Chronicles 28:6-7	482
1 Chronicles 28:8	484
1 Chronicles 28:9-10	485
1 Chronicles 28:11-12	487
1 Chronicles 28:13-15	488
1 Chronicles 28:16-17	490
1 Chronicles 28:18-19	491
1 Chronicles 28:20-21	492
1 Chronicles 29 General Notes	494
1 Chronicles 29:1-2	495
1 Chronicles 29:3-5	496
1 Chronicles 29:6-7	497
1 Chronicles 29:8-9	498
1 Chronicles 29:10-11	499
1 Chronicles 29:12-13	501
1 Chronicles 29:14-15	502
1 Chronicles 29:16-17	504
1 Chronicles 29:18-19	505
1 Chronicles 29:20-21	507
1 Chronicles 29:22-23	508

Table of Contents

1 Chronicles 29:24-25	509
1 Chronicles 29:26-28	510
1 Chronicles 29:29-30	511
translationQuestions	512
1 Chronicles 1	512
1 Chronicles 2	513
1 Chronicles 3	514
1 Chronicles 4	515
1 Chronicles 5	516
1 Chronicles 6	517
1 Chronicles 7	518
1 Chronicles 8	520
1 Chronicles 9	521
1 Chronicles 10	523
1 Chronicles 11	525
1 Chronicles 12	527
1 Chronicles 13	529
1 Chronicles 14	530
1 Chronicles 15	531
1 Chronicles 16	533
1 Chronicles 17	536
1 Chronicles 18	538
1 Chronicles 19	539
1 Chronicles 20	541
1 Chronicles 21	542
1 Chronicles 22	545
1 Chronicles 23	546
1 Chronicles 24	547
1 Chronicles 25	548
1 Chronicles 26	549
1 Chronicles 27	550
1 Chronicles 28	551
1 Chronicles 29	553
translationWords	555
Aaron	555
Abiathar	556
Abijah	557
Abner	558
Abraham, Abram	559
Absalom	560
Adam	561
administration, administrator	562
Adonijah	563

adversary, enemy	564
age	565
Ahaz	566
Ahaziah	567
Ahijah	568
altar	569
altar of incense	570
Amalek, Amalekite	571
marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished	572
Amaziah	573
amen, truly	574
Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess	575
Amnon	576
Amorite	577
angel, archangel	578
angry, anger	580
anoint, anointed	581
appoint, appointed	582
Aram, Aramean, Aramaic	583
archer	584
ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh	585
armor	586
Asa	587
Asaph	588
Asher	589
assembly, assemble	590
assign, assigned	591
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	592
atonement, atone	593
atonement lid	594
awe, awesome	595
Azariah	596
Babylon, Babylonian	597
barley	598
Bashan	599
Bathsheba	600
Beersheba	601
Benaiah	602
Benjamin	603
Bethel	604
Bethlehem, Ephrathah	605
Beth Shemesh	606
Bethuel	607

Table of Contents

betray, betrayer	608
birthright	609
bless, blessed, blessing	610
blood	612
bloodshed	613
boast, boastful	614
Boaz	615
body	616
bow, bow down	617
bow and arrow	618
bread	619
bronze	620
brother	621
burnt offering, offering by fire	622
bury, buried, burial	623
Caleb	624
call, calling, called, call out	625
camel	627
Canaan, Canaanite	628
captive, captivity	629
Translation Suggestions	630
Carmel, Mount Carmel	631
cedar	632
chariot	633
cherubim, cherub	634
chief	635
children, child	636
chronicles	637
city of David	638
clan	639
clothe, clothed	640
comfort, comforter	641
command, to command, commandment	642
commander, command	643
commit, committed, commitment	644
concubine	645
confirm, confirmation	646
consecrate	647
counsel, counselor, advice, advisor	648
courage, courageous	649
courtyard, court	650
covenant	651
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love	653

cow, calf, bull, cattle	654
crown, to crown	655
Cush	656
cut off	657
Damascus	658
Dan	659
David	660
death, die, dead	661
declare, declaration	663
decree	664
defile, be defiled	665
descendant, descended from	666
desert, wilderness	667
divine	668
divorce	669
donkey, mule	670
drink offering	671
earth, earthly	672
Edom, Edomite, Idumea	673
Egypt, Egyptian	674
Elam	675
elder	676
Eleazar	677
chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect	678
endure, endurance	679
Enoch	680
ephod	681
Ephraim	682
Esau	683
everlasting, eternal, eternity	684
Euphrates River	685
evil, wicked, wickedness	686
exalt, exaltation	688
exile, the Exile	689
face	690
false god, foreign god, god, goddess	692
family	693
famine	694
fast	695
ancestor, father, forefather	696
fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh	697
feast	698
fellowship offering	699

Table of Contents

festival	700
fig	701
firstborn	702
flesh	703
flock, herd	704
fool, foolish, folly	705
footstool	706
foreigner, foreign, alien	707
forever	708
frankincense	709
free, freedom, liberty	710
freewill offering	711
fulfill	712
Gad	713
Galilee, Galilean	714
gate, gate bar	715
Gath	716
generation	717
Geshur	718
Gibeon, Gibeonite	719
Gilead	720
Girgashites	721
glory, glorious	722
God	723
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	725
gold	727
Goliath	728
good, goodness	729
grain offering	731
guilt, guilty	732
Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites	733
Ham	734
hand, right hand, to hand over	735
harp	737
head	738
heart	740
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	741
Hebron	742
Hezekiah	743
high places	744
Hittite	745
Hivite	746
holy, holiness	747

holy place, most holy place	748
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord	749
honor, to honor	751
hope	752
horn, horns	753
horsemen	754
Hoshea	755
house	756
household	757
house of God, Yahweh's house	758
idol, idolatrous	759
incense	760
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	761
Isaac	763
Ishmael	764
Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel	765
Issachar	766
Jacob, Israel	767
Japheth	768
Jebusites, Jebus	769
Jehoiakim	770
Jehoram, Joram	771
Jehoshaphat	772
Jehu	773
Jericho	774
Jeroboam	775
Jerusalem	776
Jesse	778
Jethro, Reuel	779
Jew, Jewish, Jews	780
Joab	781
Joash	782
Joel	783
Jonathan	784
Jordan River	785
Joseph (OT)	786
Joshua	787
Josiah	788
Jotham	789
joy, joyful	790
Judah	791
judge, judgment	792
judge	794

Table of Contents

just, justice, justly	795
Kedesh	796
kin, kinsman	797
kingdom	798
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven	800
kingdom of Israel	802
Judah, kingdom of Judah	803
king	805
know, knowledge, make known	806
Korah	807
labor, laborer	808
Lamech	809
lamp	810
lampstand	811
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh	812
Levite, Levi	814
life, live, living, alive	815
lion	817
lord, master, sir	818
lots, casting lots	819
majesty	820
manager, steward	821
Manasseh	822
man of God	823
mercy, merciful	824
Meshech	826
messenger	827
Midian, Midianites	828
mighty, might	829
mind	830
miracle, wonder, sign	831
Miriam	833
Moab, Moabite, Moabites	834
Moses	835
Mount Hermon	836
mourn, mourning	837
Naaman	838
Nahor	839
name	840
Naphtali	841
Nathan	842
nation	843
Nebuchadnezzar	844

new moon	845
Noah	846
oak	847
oath, swear, swear by	848
Obadiah	849
obey, obedient, obedience	850
oil	851
olive	852
oppress, oppression, oppressor	853
overseer	854
ox, oxen	855
palace	856
peace, peaceful	857
people group, peoples, the people, a people	858
people of God, my people	860
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	861
Philistia	862
Philistines	863
Phinehas	864
pillar, column	865
pit	866
plague	867
possess, possession	868
power, powers	869
praise	870
pray, prayer	871
precious	872
priest, priesthood	873
promise	875
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	876
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	878
punish, punishment	879
pure, purify, purification	881
Rabbah	882
Ramah	883
Ramoth	884
rebuke	885
refuge, shelter	886
Rehoboam	887
reign	888
reject	889
rejoice	890
rest	891

Table of Contents

Reuben	892
reveal, revelation	893
righteous, righteousness	894
right hand	895
robe	896
ruler, rulers, rule	897
Sabbath	898
sackcloth	899
sacred	900
sacrifice, offering	901
salvation	903
Samuel	904
sanctuary	905
Saul (OT)	906
scribe, expert in the Jewish law	907
seek, sought	908
seize	909
send, send out, sent	910
servant, slave, slavery	911
serve, service	913
set apart	914
Seth	915
sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking	916
shadow	917
shame, shameful, ashamed	918
Sharon, Plain of Sharon	919
Sheba	920
Shechem	921
sheep, ram, ewe	922
Shem	923
shepherd, to shepherd	924
shield	926
Shimei	927
Sidon, Sidonians	928
siege, besiege	929
silver	930
Simeon	931
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	932
sister	934
snow	935
Solomon	936
son, son of	937
spear	939

spirit, spiritual	940
splendor	942
staff	943
statute, statutes	944
stone, stoning	945
storehouse	946
strength, strengthen	947
stronghold, fortress, fortified	949
stumble	950
sword	951
tabernacle	952
Tamar	953
Tarshish	954
temple	955
tent	957
tent of meeting	958
Terah	959
thresh, threshing	960
throne	961
time	962
tribe	963
tribute	964
trouble, troubles, troubled	965
true, truth, come true	966
trumpet	968
trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness	969
Tubal	970
Tyre, Tyrians	971
uncircumcised, uncircumcision	972
understand, understanding	973
unfaithful, unfaithfulness	974
unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread	975
upright, uprightness	976
Uriah	977
vineyard	978
vision	979
warrior, soldier	980
watch, watchman	981
watchtower, tower	982
well, cistern	983
wheat	984
will of God	985
wine, wineskin, new wine	986

wise men	987
word	988
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture	989
works, deeds, work, acts	991
world, worldly	992
worship	993
wrath, fury	994
written	995
Yahweh	996
Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host	998
Zadok	999
Zebulun	1000
Zechariah (OT)	1001
Zedekiah	1002
Zephaniah	1003
Zerubbabel	1004
Zion, Mount Zion	1005
translationAcademy	1006
First, Second or Third Person	1006
Active or Passive	1008
Doublet	1011
Ellipsis	1013
Euphemism	1015
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1017
Hyperbole	1019
Idiom	1022
Litotes	1024
Merism	1026
Metaphor	1028
Metonymy	1033
Parallelism	1035
Personification	1037
Rhetorical Question	1039
Simile	1042
Synecdoche	1045
Forms of You	1047
Biblical Distance	1048
Biblical Money	1051
Hebrew Months	1053
How to Translate Names	1056
Numbers	1060
Ordinal Numbers	1063
Textual Variants	1066

Translate Unknowns	1069
Verse Bridges	1072
Background Information	1074

translationNotes

Introduction to 1 Chronicles

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 1 Chronicles

1. Genealogies
 - a) From Adam to Jacob (1:1–2:2)
 - b) Jacob’s genealogy (2:2–9:44)
2. The death of Saul and the beginning David’s reign
 - a) The death of Saul (10:1–14)
 - b) The capture of Jerusalem, and the valiant men (11:1–12:40)
 - c) David prospers (13:1–22:1)
 - d) David prepares for Solomon to build the temple (22:2–29:30)

What are 1 and 2 Chronicles about?

The purpose of 1 and 2 Chronicles was to retell the genealogy of Adam to Jacob, and the history of Israel leading up to the death of David. These books were probably written for the Jews who returned from exile in Babylon. The purpose was to give the people instructions on how to avoid repeating the sins of their ancestors who were unfaithful to the covenant with Yahweh.

How should the titles of 1 and 2 Chronicles be translated?

The traditional titles of these cases may not be meaningful to project language readers. Translators might consider as an alternative title “The events of the kings of Judah and Israel.”

Who wrote 1 and 2 Chronicles?

These books seem to contain many different historical accounts that were put together. The writers of Chronicles mention other books that they took information from in their own writing. The non-biblical sources included “The Chronicles of Samuel the Seer,” “The Chronicles of Nathan the Seer,” “The Chronicles of Gad the Seer,” “The History of Nathan the Prophet,” “The Chronicles of Shemaiah the Prophet and Iddo,” “The Story of the Prophet Iddo” and “The books of the kings of Judah and Israel.”

Why are there multiple books which give the history of the kings of Israel?

Though the Book of 1 and 2 Chronicles cover much of the same history as the Books of 1 and 2 Kings, they do not repeat everything. The purpose of 1 and 2 Chronicles was not simply to retell

the history of Israel and Judah by repeating the books of 1 and 2 Kings. Instead, the writers of these books want to reassure the people that Yahweh would still be faithful to his covenant with them.

The Books of 1 and 2 Chronicles focus on David and Solomon and the reformation that Jehoshaphat, Hezekiah, and Josiah accomplished. Those reformations were to encourage all the people of Yahweh and their leaders to obey the law and to honor his covenant with them. (See: [covenant](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What is retribution?

Retribution is righteous punishment of those who deserve it. This is an important theme in 1 and 2 Chronicles. There is a record of the fulfillment of the promise to bless those who bless Israel and to curse those who curse Israel. The author attempts to show the reader God's blessing or judgment being given to each generation in accordance with their obedience or disobedience of Yahweh's commands.

Why are alliances with foreign countries seen as evil in these books?

Yahweh was the true leader of Israel and the protector of the nation. He was the one who should have been trusted, instead of the neighboring nations.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What is the meaning of the term "Israel"?

The name "Israel" is used in many different ways in the Bible. The descendants of Jacob, who was also named Israel, were a people group who became known as Israel. This people group developed into the unified nation of Israel. After the civil war in the nation of Israel, the tribes in the north took the name Israel, while the southern kingdom became known as the kingdom of Judah.

What does it mean to "seek God?"

The concept of seeking God is very common in 1 and 2 Chronicles. It does not imply that God is hidden; instead, it is a command to seek to please and honor God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

What does the phrase "to this day" mean?

This phrase was used by the narrator to refer to the time when he was writing. The translator should be aware that "to this day" refers to a time which has already passed. The translator might decide to say, "to this day, at the time when this is being written," or, "to this day, at the time of writing." This Hebrew phrase occurs in 1 Chronicles 4:41, 43; 5:26; 13:11; 20:26; 21:10; 35:25.

List of translationAcademy Topics in 1 Chronicles

- * **First, Second or Third Person** is found in: 21:06, 28:09
- * **Active or Passive** is found in: 04:34, 05:01, 05:07, 05:16, 06:31, 06:48, 06:77, 09:22, 09:28, 11:04, 11:20, 11:24, 12:36, 14:01, 14:08, 14:10, 15:27, 19:16, 20:02, 21:06, 22:03, 23:10, 23:12, 23:24, 23:27, 23:30, 24:06, 24:19, 26:12, 26:15, 26:17, 26:23, 26:26, 26:31, 27:23, 27:28, 28:09, 29:29
- * **Doublet** is found in: 06:31, 08:26, 11:18, 16:19, 17:03, 17:19, 28:01, 28:02, 28:06, 28:08, 28:20, 29:12
- * **Ellipsis** is found in: 02:13, 10:05, 11:10, 11:18, 12:01, 12:23, 13:09, 14:15, 15:01, 15:11, 18:12, 22:17, 26:17, 27:23
- * **Euphemism** is found in: 05:01, 10:04, 10:07, 21:11, 22:06
- * **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information** is found in: 04:34, 17:03, 17:19, 21:23, 21:25, 25:09, 28:06
- * **Hyperbole** is found in: 10:01, 10:07, 10:11, 15:27, 16:36, 21:01, 22:03
- * **Idiom** is found in: 04:42, 08:29, 09:33, 10:13, 11:01, 11:07, 12:21, 12:23, 16:07, 16:23, 17:03, 17:09, 17:11, 17:16, 17:25, 19:04, 21:01, 21:04, 21:06, 21:13, 28:02, 28:04, 28:08, 28:18, 28:20
- * **Litotes** is found in: 28:20
- * **Merism** is found in: 09:33, 21:01, 25:06, 26:12
- * **Metaphor** is found in: 11:18, 12:18, 13:09, 14:10, 16:10, 17:01, 17:09, 19:06, 21:16, 22:09, 22:17, 28:06, 29:14
- * **Metonymy** is found in: 04:09, 05:18, 06:39, 11:01, 13:01, 13:05, 14:10, 15:01, 15:13, 16:10, 16:12, 16:15, 16:25, 16:28, 16:30, 17:07, 17:11, 17:13, 19:04, 19:16, 20:02, 20:06, 21:04, 21:11, 21:13, 21:16, 21:28, 22:06, 22:09, 22:11, 22:17, 23:12, 27:23, 29:16
- * **Parallelism** is found in: 12:18, 16:10, 16:12, 17:16, 17:25, 28:09, 29:24
- * **Parallelism]]** is found in: 16:23
- * **Personification** is found in: 14:15, 15:29, 16:23, 16:30, 16:32, 21:13
- * **Rhetorical Question** is found in: 17:03, 17:16, 19:01, 21:01, 21:16, 29:14
- * **Simile** is found in: 11:22, 12:08, 12:21, 14:10, 27:23, 29:14
- * **Synecdoche** is found in: 06:13, 10:04, 10:11, 11:04, 11:12, 15:29, 17:01, 17:09, 21:13, 21:23, 28:02, 28:09, 29:29
- * **Forms of You** is found in: 22:17
- * **Biblical Distance** is found in: 11:22
- * **Biblical Money** is found in: 19:06, 20:02, 21:25, 22:14, 29:03, 29:06
- * **Hebrew Months** is found in: 12:14, 27:01, 27:04, 27:07, 27:10, 27:13
- * **How to Translate Names** is found in: 01:01, 01:05, 01:08, 01:13, 01:17, 01:20, 01:24, 01:28, 01:32, 01:34, 01:38, 01:41, 01:43, 01:46, 01:49, 01:51, 02:01, 02:05, 02:16, 02:21, 02:23, 02:29, 02:54, 03:01,

03:04, 03:06, 03:13, 03:15, 03:17, 03:19, 03:22, 04:01, 04:03, 04:05, 04:09, 04:11, 04:13, 04:17, 04:19, 04:21, 04:24, 04:27, 04:29, 04:32, 04:34, 04:39, 04:42, 05:01, 05:04, 05:07, 05:10, 05:11, 05:14, 05:18, 05:23, 05:25, 06:01, 06:04, 06:07, 06:10, 06:13, 06:16, 06:19, 06:22, 06:25, 06:28, 06:33, 06:36, 06:39, 07:08, 07:11, 07:13, 07:23, 07:25, 08:08, 08:12, 08:14, 08:38, 09:04, 09:12, 09:14, 09:22, 09:30, 09:41, 10:09, 10:11, 11:04, 11:07, 11:10, 11:12, 14:01, 14:08, 14:10, 14:15, 15:04, 15:07, 15:25, 15:27, 15:29, 16:37, 18:03, 18:07, 18:09, 18:14, 19:01, 19:06, 19:10, 19:16, 19:18, 20:06, 21:13, 23:04, 23:07, 23:10, 23:12, 23:15, 23:19, 23:21, 24:01, 24:06, 24:07, 24:11, 24:15, 24:20, 24:23, 24:26, 24:29, 25:01, 25:04, 26:01, 26:04, 26:07, 26:10, 26:15, 26:20, 26:23, 26:26, 26:29, 26:31, 27:01, 27:04, 27:07, 27:10, 27:13, 27:16, 27:19, 27:25, 27:28, 27:30, 27:32, 29:08

* **How to Translate Names]]** is found in: 02:03, 02:09, 02:13, 02:18, 02:25, 02:34, 02:36, 02:39, 02:42, 02:45, 02:48, 02:50, 02:52, 06:44, 06:50, 06:54, 06:57, 06:59, 06:66, 06:70, 06:71, 06:74, 06:77, 06:80, 07:14, 07:17, 07:20, 07:28, 07:30, 07:33, 07:36, 07:39, 08:06, 08:26, 08:29, 08:32, 08:35, 09:07, 09:10, 09:17, 09:35, 09:38, 10:01, 11:04, 11:15, 11:20, 11:22, 11:24, 11:26, 11:30, 11:34, 11:38, 11:42, 11:45, 12:01, 12:03, 12:05, 12:08, 12:09, 12:18, 12:19, 13:05, 13:07, 13:09, 13:12, 14:03, 15:11, 15:16, 15:19, 15:22, 16:04, 16:40, 16:42, 18:12, 20:04

* **Numbers** is found in: 02:03, 03:04, 04:27, 04:42, 05:18, 05:20, 06:59, 07:01, 07:04, 07:06, 07:11, 07:39, 08:01, 09:22, 09:25, 11:15, 11:18, 11:20, 11:42, 12:03, 12:14, 12:18, 12:19, 12:26, 12:29, 12:36, 12:38, 13:01, 13:12, 15:16, 15:25, 16:15, 18:03, 18:05, 18:12, 19:06, 19:18, 21:13, 21:25, 22:14, 23:01, 23:04, 23:24, 23:27, 24:04, 25:01, 25:04, 25:06, 25:09, 25:13, 25:17, 25:21, 25:25, 25:29, 26:01, 26:04, 26:07, 26:10, 26:17, 26:26, 26:29, 26:31, 27:01, 27:04, 27:07, 27:10, 27:13, 27:23, 28:01

* **Numbers]]** is found in: 06:61, 12:23, 12:32, 12:34, 29:06, 29:20

* **Ordinal Numbers** is found in: 08:38, 12:09, 25:09, 25:13, 25:17, 25:21, 25:25, 25:29, 26:31

* **Textual Variants** is found in: 01:05

* **Translate Unknowns** is found in: 12:38, 13:07, 14:13, 16:01, 21:23, 27:28

* **Verse Bridges** is found in: 04:13, 04:17, 06:77, 08:14, 08:19, 08:22

* **Background Information** is found in: 05:01

List of translationWords in 1 Chronicles

* **Aaron** is found in: 06:01, 06:49, 06:59, 12:26, 15:04, 23:12, 23:27, 23:32, 24:01, 24:19, 24:29, 27:16

* **Abiathar** is found in: 15:11, 24:06, 27:32

* **Abijah** is found in: 03:10, 06:28, 24:07

* **Abner** is found in: 26:26

* **Abraham, Abram** is found in: 01:24, 16:15, 29:18

* **Absalom** is found in: 03:01

* **Adam** is found in: 01:01

* **administration, administrator** is found in: 18:14

- * Adonijah is found in: 03:01
- * adversary, enemy is found in: 05:20, 12:16, 14:10, 17:07, 21:01, 21:11, 22:09
- * age is found in: 29:26
- * Ahaz is found in: 03:13
- * Ahaziah is found in: 03:10
- * Ahijah is found in: 02:25, 26:20
- * altar is found in: 06:49, 16:40, 21:18, 21:21, 21:28, 22:01, 28:18
- * altar of incense is found in: 06:49
- * Amalek, Amalekite is found in: 01:34, 04:42, 18:09
- * marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished is found in: 16:07, 16:23
- * Amaziah is found in: 03:10, 04:34
- * amen, truly is found in: 16:36
- * Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess is found in: 11:38, 18:09, 19:01, 19:06, 19:10, 19:18, 20:01
- * Amnon is found in: 03:01
- * Amorite is found in: 01:13
- * angel, archangel is found in: 21:11, 21:13, 21:18, 21:25
- * angry, anger is found in: 13:09
- * anoint, anointed is found in: 11:01, 14:08, 16:19, 29:22
- * Aram, Aramean, Aramaic is found in: 01:17, 02:23, 18:05, 19:06, 19:10, 19:18
- * archer is found in: 08:38, 10:01
- * ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh is found in: 06:31, 13:01, 13:12, 15:01, 15:13, 15:25, 16:01, 16:37, 17:01, 22:17, 28:02, 28:18
- * armor is found in: 10:04, 10:09, 11:38
- * Asa is found in: 03:10
- * Asaph is found in: 06:39, 09:14, 15:16, 16:04, 16:37, 25:01
- * Asher is found in: 02:01, 06:61, 06:74, 07:30, 12:36
- * assembly, assemble is found in: 13:01, 28:08, 29:01, 29:10, 29:20
- * assign, assigned is found in: 06:48, 06:63, 09:25, 09:33, 15:16, 26:15, 28:13
- * Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire is found in: 05:04, 05:25
- * atonement, atone is found in: 06:49
- * atonement lid is found in: 28:11
- * awe, awesome is found in: 17:19

- * Azariah is found in: 02:36, 03:10, 06:07, 06:10, 06:13, 06:36
- * Babylon, Babylonian is found in: 09:01
- * barley is found in: 11:12
- * Bashan is found in: 05:11, 05:16, 05:23, 06:61, 06:71
- * Bathsheba is found in: 03:04
- * Beersheba is found in: 04:27, 21:01
- * Benaiah is found in: 04:34, 27:04, 27:32
- * Benjamin is found in: 02:01, 06:59, 07:06, 08:01, 08:38, 09:01, 11:30, 12:01, 12:16, 12:29, 21:06, 27:10
- * Bethel is found in: 07:28
- * Bethlehem, Ephrathah is found in: 02:50, 04:03, 04:21, 11:15, 11:26, 20:04
- * Beth Shemesh is found in: 06:59
- * Bethuel is found in: 04:29
- * betray, betrayer is found in: 12:16
- * birthright is found in: 05:01
- * bless, blessed, blessing is found in: 04:09, 13:12, 16:01, 16:42, 17:25, 18:09, 23:12, 26:04, 29:10, 29:20
- * blood is found in: 11:18
- * bloodshed is found in: 22:06, 28:02
- * boast, boastful is found in: 16:10
- * Boaz is found in: 02:09
- * body is found in: 10:11
- * bow, bow down is found in: 16:28, 21:21, 29:20
- * bow and arrow is found in: 05:18, 12:01
- * bread is found in: 09:30, 12:38, 16:01, 28:16
- * bronze is found in: 15:19, 18:07, 22:03, 22:14, 29:01
- * brother is found in: 07:04, 09:38, 13:01, 15:11, 16:07, 20:06, 26:29, 28:02
- * burnt offering, offering by fire is found in: 06:49, 16:01, 16:40, 21:23, 21:28, 22:01, 23:30, 29:20
- * bury, buried, burial is found in: 10:11
- * Caleb is found in: 04:13, 06:54
- * call, calling, called, call out is found in: 04:09, 16:07
- * camel is found in: 05:20, 12:38, 27:30
- * Canaan, Canaanite is found in: 01:08, 02:03, 16:15

- * captive, captivity is found in: 03:17, 05:20, 06:13
- * Carmel, Mount Carmel is found in: 03:01
- * cedar is found in: 14:01, 17:01, 22:03
- * chariot is found in: 18:03, 19:06, 19:18
- * cherubim, cherub is found in: 13:05, 28:18
- * chief is found in: 07:39, 11:42, 12:03, 12:18
- * children, child is found in: 02:18, 02:29, 07:14, 07:33, 08:08, 09:22, 14:03, 24:01, 28:08
- * chronicles is found in: 27:23
- * city of David is found in: 11:04, 13:12, 15:01, 15:29
- * clan is found in: 01:51, 02:52, 04:01, 04:21, 04:27, 04:34, 05:07, 06:19, 06:33, 06:54, 06:66, 06:70, 07:01, 07:04, 07:39, 08:06, 08:08, 08:26, 09:07, 16:28, 23:07, 23:24, 24:04, 26:23, 27:04
- * clothe, clothed is found in: 15:27
- * comfort, comforter is found in: 07:20
- * command, to command, commandment is found in: 06:49, 12:03, 12:32, 14:15, 15:13, 16:15, 16:40, 17:09, 19:10, 21:06, 21:16, 21:18, 22:06, 28:06, 28:20, 29:18
- * commander, command is found in: 11:04, 12:18, 12:21, 13:01, 15:25, 18:14, 19:16, 19:18, 21:01, 26:26, 27:01, 27:10, 27:13, 27:32, 28:01, 29:06
- * commit, committed, commitment is found in: 28:06
- * concubine is found in: 01:32, 02:45, 03:06, 07:14
- * confirm, confirmation is found in: 16:15
- * consecrate is found in: 15:11, 15:13
- * counsel, counselor, advice, advisor is found in: 18:14, 27:32
- * courage, courageous is found in: 17:25
- * courtyard, court is found in: 23:27, 26:17, 28:06, 28:11
- * covenant is found in: 11:01, 16:15, 29:18
- * covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love is found in: 16:34, 17:13
- * cow, calf, bull, cattle is found in: 15:25
- * crown, to crown is found in: 20:02
- * Cush is found in: 01:08
- * cut off is found in: 17:07
- * Damascus is found in: 18:05
- * Dan is found in: 02:01, 12:34, 21:01, 27:19

- * David is found in: 02:13, 03:01, 04:29, 06:31, 07:01, 09:22, 10:13, 11:01, 11:12, 11:24, 12:01, 12:16, 12:23, 12:38, 13:01, 13:12, 14:01, 14:13, 15:01, 15:16, 15:27, 16:01, 16:37, 17:01, 17:13, 17:22, 18:01, 18:09, 18:12, 19:01, 19:18, 20:01, 20:06, 21:01, 21:13, 21:25, 22:01, 22:06, 22:17, 23:01, 23:24, 23:27, 24:01, 24:29, 25:01, 26:26, 26:31, 27:16, 27:30, 28:01, 28:11, 28:18, 29:10, 29:24, 29:26
- * death, die, dead is found in: 02:18, 02:29, 10:01, 10:13, 13:09, 19:01, 21:13, 22:03, 23:21, 24:01, 29:26
- * declare, declaration is found in: 16:23
- * decree is found in: 15:13, 16:12, 22:11, 23:30, 28:06, 29:18
- * defile, be defiled is found in: 05:01
- * descendant, descended from is found in: 01:32, 02:09, 02:23, 02:48, 03:19, 04:01, 04:24, 05:04, 05:14, 06:19, 06:50, 06:61, 06:71, 07:17, 07:39, 08:06, 08:38, 09:01, 09:04, 09:17, 09:30, 11:30, 12:26, 15:04, 15:16, 16:12, 17:11, 20:04, 20:06, 23:07, 23:12, 23:15, 23:24, 23:32, 24:01, 24:23, 26:01, 26:17, 26:29, 27:01, 27:16, 29:08
- * desert, wilderness is found in: 05:07, 06:77, 12:08, 21:28
- * divine is found in: 05:20
- * divorce is found in: 08:08
- * donkey, mule is found in: 05:20, 12:38, 27:30
- * drink offering is found in: 29:20
- * earth, earthly is found in: 01:08, 16:12, 16:23, 16:30, 17:07, 17:19, 21:16, 29:10
- * Edom, Edomite, Idumea is found in: 01:43, 18:09, 18:12
- * Egypt, Egyptian is found in: 02:34, 04:17, 11:22, 13:05, 17:19
- * Elam is found in: 01:17
- * elder is found in: 11:01, 15:25, 21:16
- * Eleazar is found in: 24:01
- * chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect is found in: 09:22, 16:12, 17:19
- * endure, endurance is found in: 16:34
- * Enoch is found in: 01:01
- * ephod is found in: 15:27
- * Ephraim is found in: 06:66, 07:20, 09:01, 12:29, 27:10
- * Esau is found in: 01:34
- * everlasting, eternal, eternity is found in: 16:15, 16:36
- * Euphrates River is found in: 05:07, 18:03, 19:16
- * evil, wicked, wickedness is found in: 02:03, 17:09, 21:16
- * exalt, exaltation is found in: 14:01, 29:10

- * **exile, the Exile** is found in: 05:04, 05:25, 06:13, 09:01
- * **face** is found in: 12:08
- * **false god, foreign god, god, goddess** is found in: 05:25, 10:09, 14:10, 16:25
- * **family** is found in: 05:14, 05:23, 06:19, 07:08, 07:39, 09:33, 12:26, 15:11, 17:16, 21:16, 24:06, 24:29, 26:04, 26:20, 26:31, 27:01, 28:04, 29:06
- * **famine** is found in: 21:11
- * **fast** is found in: 10:11
- * **ancestor, father, forefather** is found in: 05:14, 06:19, 08:08, 09:17, 17:13, 19:01, 25:06, 28:04
- * **fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh** is found in: 10:04, 13:12, 14:15, 16:25, 21:28, 22:11
- * **feast** is found in: 23:30
- * **fellowship offering** is found in: 16:01, 21:25
- * **festival** is found in: 23:30
- * **fig** is found in: 12:38
- * **firstborn** is found in: 01:13, 01:28, 02:03, 02:25, 02:42, 03:01, 03:15, 04:03, 05:01, 06:28, 08:01, 08:29, 09:04, 09:30, 26:01
- * **flesh** is found in: 11:01
- * **flock, herd** is found in: 04:39, 27:28
- * **fool, foolish, folly** is found in: 21:06
- * **footstool** is found in: 28:02
- * **foreigner, foreign, alien** is found in: 22:01
- * **forever** is found in: 15:01, 16:15, 16:34, 17:11, 17:22, 17:25, 22:09, 23:12, 23:24, 28:04, 28:06, 29:10, 29:18
- * **frankincense** is found in: 09:28
- * **free, freedom, liberty** is found in: 09:33
- * **freewill offering** is found in: 29:08
- * **fulfill** is found in: 17:11
- * **Gad** is found in: 02:01, 05:11, 05:18, 05:25, 06:63, 06:80, 12:08, 12:14, 21:09, 21:18, 26:31, 29:29
- * **Galilee, Galilean** is found in: 06:74
- * **gate, gate bar** is found in: 09:17, 11:15, 16:37, 19:08, 22:03, 26:12
- * **Gath** is found in: 07:20, 08:12, 18:01, 20:06
- * **generation** is found in: 16:15, 17:16
- * **Geshur** is found in: 03:01

- * Gibeon, Gibeonite is found in: 08:29, 12:03, 14:15, 16:37, 21:28
- * Gilead is found in: 02:21, 05:07, 05:16, 06:80, 07:14, 10:11, 26:31, 27:19
- * Girgashites is found in: 01:13
- * glory, glorious is found in: 16:23, 16:34, 22:03, 29:10
- * God is found in: 02:05, 04:09, 05:20, 05:25, 06:49, 11:01, 12:16, 13:01, 13:12, 14:10, 15:11, 15:25, 16:01, 16:12, 16:34, 17:01, 17:16, 19:12, 21:06, 21:16, 21:28, 22:01, 23:24, 24:04, 24:19, 25:04, 26:04, 26:31, 28:02, 28:09, 28:20, 29:10, 29:18
- * God the Father, heavenly Father, Father is found in: 22:09
- * gold is found in: 18:07, 20:02, 21:25, 22:14, 28:13, 28:16, 29:03, 29:06
- * Goliath is found in: 20:04
- * good, goodness is found in: 16:34, 17:25, 29:26
- * grain offering is found in: 21:23, 23:27
- * guilt, guilty is found in: 21:01, 21:06
- * Ham is found in: 01:01, 04:39
- * Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites is found in: 18:03, 18:09
- * hand, right hand, to hand over is found in: 04:09, 06:13, 14:10, 20:06, 21:13, 21:16, 22:17, 29:12
- * harp is found in: 15:16, 15:27, 16:04, 25:01
- * head is found in: 01:51, 05:11, 08:06, 08:26, 24:04, 29:20
- * heart is found in: 15:29, 16:10, 17:01, 28:09, 29:16
- * heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly is found in: 16:25, 16:30, 21:16, 21:25, 27:23, 29:10
- * Hebron is found in: 03:01, 06:54, 11:01, 12:23, 12:38, 29:26
- * Hezekiah is found in: 03:13, 04:39
- * high places is found in: 16:37, 21:28
- * Hittite is found in: 11:38
- * Hivite is found in: 01:13
- * holy, holiness is found in: 09:28, 16:10, 16:28, 24:04, 29:03, 29:16
- * holy place, most holy place is found in: 06:49, 22:17, 23:32
- * Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord is found in: 12:18
- * honor, to honor is found in: 11:20, 17:16, 25:04, 29:12, 29:24, 29:26
- * hope is found in: 29:14
- * horn, horns is found in: 15:27, 16:04
- * horsemen is found in: 18:03, 19:06

- * Hoshea is found in: 27:19
- * house is found in: 13:12, 17:09, 17:13, 17:22, 17:25
- * household is found in: 10:05, 13:12, 16:42, 28:04
- * house of God, Yahweh's house is found in: 06:31, 06:48, 09:10, 09:22, 17:11, 22:01, 22:03, 22:06, 22:09, 22:11, 22:14, 22:17, 23:04, 23:24, 23:32, 24:19, 25:06, 26:12, 26:26, 28:11, 29:03
- * idol, idolatrous is found in: 10:09, 16:25
- * incense is found in: 23:12, 28:18
- * inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir is found in: 16:15, 28:08
- * Isaac is found in: 01:28, 16:15, 29:18
- * Ishmael is found in: 01:28
- * Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel is found in: 01:43, 04:09, 06:49, 06:63, 10:01, 11:01, 12:32, 12:38, 13:01, 14:01, 15:01, 15:13, 15:25, 16:01, 16:12, 16:36, 17:03, 17:19, 18:14, 19:10, 19:14, 21:01, 21:13, 22:01, 22:17, 23:01, 23:24, 24:19, 26:29, 27:01, 27:16, 28:01, 29:06, 29:20, 29:26
- * Issachar is found in: 02:01, 06:61, 06:71, 07:01, 12:32, 12:38, 27:16
- * Jacob, Israel is found in: 01:34, 02:01, 05:01, 06:36, 07:28, 16:12, 29:18
- * Japheth is found in: 01:01
- * Jebusites, Jebus is found in: 01:13, 11:04, 21:13, 21:18, 21:28
- * Jehoiakim is found in: 03:15
- * Jehoram, Joram is found in: 03:10
- * Jehoshaphat is found in: 03:10, 18:14
- * Jehu is found in: 04:34, 12:03
- * Jericho is found in: 06:77, 19:04
- * Jeroboam is found in: 05:16
- * Jerusalem is found in: 03:04, 06:10, 06:31, 08:26, 09:01, 09:33, 11:04, 14:03, 15:01, 18:07, 19:14, 20:01, 21:04, 21:13, 21:16, 23:24, 28:01, 29:26
- * Jesse is found in: 02:09, 10:13, 12:18, 29:26
- * Jethro, Reuel is found in: 01:34, 09:07
- * Jew, Jewish, Jews is found in: 04:17
- * Joab is found in: 02:16, 11:04, 11:20, 11:26, 11:38, 18:14, 19:08, 19:14, 20:01, 21:01, 26:26, 27:07, 27:23, 27:32
- * Joash is found in: 03:10, 12:03, 27:28
- * Joel is found in: 06:33, 07:01
- * Jonathan is found in: 02:29, 08:32, 09:38, 10:01

- * **Jordan River** is found in: 06:77, 12:14, 12:36, 19:16, 26:29
- * **Joseph (OT)** is found in: 02:01, 05:01, 07:28
- * **Joshua** is found in: 07:25
- * **Josiah** is found in: 03:13, 03:15
- * **Jotham** is found in: 02:45, 03:10, 05:16
- * **joy, joyful** is found in: 15:16, 16:25, 29:16
- * **Judah** is found in: 02:01, 04:01, 04:21, 04:27, 04:39, 05:01, 06:63, 09:01, 12:16, 12:23, 13:05, 21:04, 27:16, 28:04
- * **judge, judgment** is found in: 16:32
- * **judge** is found in: 17:09, 23:04, 26:29
- * **just, justice, justly** is found in: 18:14
- * **Kedesh** is found in: 06:71
- * **kin, kinsman** is found in: 15:16, 26:10
- * **king** is found in: 01:43, 03:01, 04:21, 04:39, 05:04, 05:16, 05:25, 09:01, 09:17, 11:01, 12:29, 12:38, 14:01, 15:29, 16:19, 17:01, 18:09, 18:14, 19:01, 19:08, 19:18, 20:01, 21:01, 21:23, 23:01, 24:06, 24:29, 25:01, 26:26, 27:01, 27:23, 27:30, 28:01, 29:01, 29:20, 29:22
- * **kingdom** is found in: 10:13, 11:10, 12:23, 14:01, 16:19, 17:11, 22:09, 29:10, 29:29
- * **kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven** is found in: 28:04
- * **kingdom of Israel** is found in: 05:16, 09:01
- * **Judah, kingdom of Judah** is found in: 05:16, 06:13, 06:54, 09:01
- * **know, knowledge, make known** is found in: 14:01
- * **Korah** is found in: 01:34, 02:42, 06:22, 06:36, 09:17, 09:30, 12:05, 26:17
- * **labor, laborer** is found in: 20:02
- * **Lamech** is found in: 01:01
- * **lamp** is found in: 28:13
- * **lampstand** is found in: 28:13
- * **law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh** is found in: 16:40, 22:11
- * **Levite, Levi** is found in: 02:01, 06:01, 06:16, 06:36, 06:44, 06:63, 06:77, 09:01, 09:14, 09:25, 12:26, 13:01, 15:01, 15:13, 15:25, 16:04, 21:06, 23:01, 23:04, 23:12, 23:24, 24:06, 24:20, 24:29, 26:17, 27:16, 28:13
- * **life, live, living, alive** is found in: 04:39, 07:28, 08:12, 08:26, 10:07, 11:07, 11:18, 12:14, 17:01, 23:01, 29:26
- * **lion** is found in: 11:22, 12:08

- * lord, master, sir is found in: 12:19, 21:01, 21:23
- * lots, casting lots is found in: 06:54, 06:61, 24:04, 24:29, 25:06, 26:12
- * majesty is found in: 16:25, 29:10
- * manager, steward is found in: 28:01
- * Manasseh is found in: 03:13, 05:18, 05:23, 05:25, 06:61, 06:71, 07:14, 07:28, 09:01, 12:19, 12:29, 26:31, 27:19
- * man of God is found in: 23:12
- * mercy, merciful is found in: 21:13
- * Meshech is found in: 01:05, 01:17
- * messenger is found in: 10:09, 13:01, 14:01, 19:01
- * Midian, Midianites is found in: 01:32, 01:46
- * mighty, might is found in: 11:12, 11:22, 11:26, 13:07, 29:12
- * mind is found in: 16:15, 29:18
- * miracle, wonder, sign is found in: 16:12
- * Miriam is found in: 06:01
- * Moab, Moabite, Moabites is found in: 01:46, 04:21, 08:08, 11:22, 11:45, 18:01, 18:09
- * Moses is found in: 06:01, 06:49, 15:13, 21:28, 22:11, 23:12, 26:23
- * Mount Hermon is found in: 05:23
- * mourn, mourning is found in: 07:20
- * Naaman is found in: 08:06
- * Nahor is found in: 01:24
- * name is found in: 07:14, 09:22, 13:05, 16:01, 16:07, 16:28, 16:34, 17:07, 17:19, 21:18, 22:06, 22:09, 22:17, 23:12, 29:12
- * Naphtali is found in: 02:01, 06:61, 06:74, 07:13, 12:34, 12:38, 27:19
- * Nathan is found in: 17:01, 17:13, 29:29
- * nation is found in: 14:15, 16:07, 16:19, 16:30, 17:19, 18:09
- * Nebuchadnezzar is found in: 06:13
- * new moon is found in: 23:30
- * Noah is found in: 01:01
- * oak is found in: 10:11
- * oath, swear, swear by is found in: 16:15
- * Obadiah is found in: 03:19, 07:01, 08:38, 09:14, 27:19

- * obey, obedient, obedience is found in: 10:13, 11:10, 15:13, 22:11, 28:06, 28:09, 29:22
- * oil is found in: 09:28, 12:38, 23:27, 27:28
- * olive is found in: 27:28
- * oppress, oppression, oppressor is found in: 16:19, 17:09
- * overseer is found in: 26:31, 27:30
- * ox, oxen is found in: 12:38, 13:09, 21:23
- * palace is found in: 29:18
- * peace, peaceful is found in: 12:16, 19:18, 22:09, 22:17
- * people group, peoples, the people, a people is found in: 02:52, 04:13, 04:27, 05:25, 09:22, 10:09, 13:01, 16:01, 16:12, 16:28, 16:42, 18:14, 28:02, 29:12
- * people of God, my people is found in: 11:01, 14:01, 17:07, 23:24, 29:16
- * Pharaoh, king of Egypt is found in: 04:17
- * Philistia is found in: 10:09
- * Philistines is found in: 01:11, 10:01, 10:11, 11:12, 12:19, 14:08, 18:01, 18:09, 20:04
- * Phinehas is found in: 06:04, 06:50, 09:20
- * pillar, column is found in: 18:07
- * pit is found in: 11:22
- * plague is found in: 21:11, 21:16, 21:21
- * possess, possession is found in: 06:70, 07:28, 13:12, 28:01, 28:08, 29:12
- * power, powers is found in: 29:10, 29:24
- * praise is found in: 16:04, 16:25, 16:34, 23:04, 23:30, 25:01, 29:10
- * pray, prayer is found in: 04:09, 17:25
- * precious is found in: 20:02, 29:01
- * priest, priesthood is found in: 09:01, 09:10, 09:30, 13:01, 15:11, 15:22, 16:04, 16:37, 18:14, 23:01, 24:01, 24:29, 27:04, 28:13, 29:22
- * promise is found in: 17:22, 27:23
- * prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess is found in: 09:22, 16:19, 17:01, 21:09, 25:01, 26:26, 29:29
- * prosper, prosperity, prosperous is found in: 29:22
- * punish, punishment is found in: 16:19
- * pure, purify, purification is found in: 23:27, 28:16
- * Rabbah is found in: 20:01

- * Ramah is found in: 27:25
- * Ramoth is found in: 06:71
- * rebuke is found in: 12:16
- * Rehoboam is found in: 03:10
- * reign is found in: 01:43, 03:04, 04:29, 13:01, 16:30, 18:14, 26:31, 29:26
- * reject is found in: 28:09
- * rejoice is found in: 15:25, 16:10, 16:30, 29:08
- * rest is found in: 22:09
- * Reuben is found in: 02:01, 05:01, 05:18, 05:25, 06:63, 06:77, 12:36, 26:31, 27:16
- * reveal, revelation is found in: 17:19
- * righteous, righteousness is found in: 18:14
- * right hand is found in: 06:39
- * robe is found in: 15:27
- * ruler, rulers, rule is found in: 03:04, 11:01, 17:07, 17:13, 18:03, 26:04, 29:10, 29:12, 29:22, 29:26
- * Sabbath is found in: 09:30, 23:30
- * sackcloth is found in: 21:16
- * sacred is found in: 16:42
- * sacrifice, offering is found in: 06:49, 09:30, 15:25, 16:28, 21:28, 23:27, 29:20
- * salvation is found in: 16:23, 16:34
- * Samuel is found in: 06:28, 06:33, 09:22, 11:01, 26:26, 29:29
- * sanctuary is found in: 09:33, 28:09
- * Saul (OT) is found in: 05:10, 08:32, 09:38, 10:01, 10:11, 11:01, 12:01, 12:19, 12:29, 13:01, 15:29, 17:13, 26:26
- * scribe, expert in the Jewish law is found in: 02:54, 18:14, 24:06, 27:32
- * seek, sought is found in: 10:13, 15:13, 28:09
- * seize is found in: 19:04
- * send, send out, sent is found in: 10:09, 13:01, 14:01, 21:11
- * servant, slave, slavery is found in: 02:34, 06:49, 09:01, 16:12, 17:03, 17:16, 17:25, 18:05, 18:12, 19:01, 19:18, 21:06, 22:01
- * serve, service is found in: 06:10, 06:31, 07:11, 15:01, 16:04, 16:37, 19:18, 21:01, 23:12, 23:24, 24:01, 24:19, 25:06, 26:07, 27:01, 28:01, 28:09, 28:13, 28:20, 29:06
- * set apart is found in: 23:12, 26:26

- * **Seth** is found in: 01:01
- * **sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking** is found in: 02:23, 07:23
- * **shadow** is found in: 29:14
- * **shame, shameful, ashamed** is found in: 19:04
- * **Sharon, Plain of Sharon** is found in: 05:16, 27:28
- * **Sheba** is found in: 01:08, 01:20
- * **Shechem** is found in: 06:66, 07:28
- * **sheep, ram, ewe** is found in: 05:20, 12:38, 15:25, 17:07, 21:16
- * **Shem** is found in: 01:01, 01:17
- * **shepherd, to shepherd** is found in: 11:01, 17:03
- * **shield** is found in: 05:18, 12:08, 12:23, 12:34, 18:07
- * **Shimei** is found in: 06:16, 06:28, 08:19, 25:17, 27:25
- * **Sidon, Sidonians** is found in: 01:13, 22:03
- * **siege, besiege** is found in: 20:01
- * **silver** is found in: 18:09, 22:14, 28:13, 28:16, 29:03
- * **Simeon** is found in: 02:01, 04:24, 04:42, 06:63, 12:23, 27:16
- * **sin, sinful, sinner, sinning** is found in: 09:01, 21:06
- * **sister** is found in: 02:16, 03:06, 03:19
- * **snow** is found in: 11:22
- * **Solomon** is found in: 03:04, 06:10, 06:31, 14:03, 18:07, 22:03, 22:06, 22:09, 22:17, 23:01, 28:04, 28:09, 28:11, 28:20, 29:01, 29:18
- * **son, son of** is found in: 03:01, 06:33, 06:44, 06:49, 08:38, 09:04, 12:14, 17:13, 18:14, 19:01, 23:12, 24:20, 25:01, 28:04
- * **spear** is found in: 11:10, 11:20, 11:22, 12:08, 12:23, 12:34, 20:04
- * **spirit, spiritual** is found in: 28:09
- * **splendor** is found in: 16:25, 16:28
- * **staff** is found in: 11:22
- * **statute, statutes** is found in: 16:15, 22:11, 29:18
- * **stone, stoning** is found in: 12:01
- * **storehouse** is found in: 26:26, 27:25
- * **strength, strengthen** is found in: 16:10, 16:25, 29:12
- * **stronghold, fortress, fortified** is found in: 11:04, 11:15, 12:08

- * **stumble** is found in: 13:09
- * **sword** is found in: 05:18, 10:04, 21:04, 21:11, 21:25, 21:28
- * **tabernacle** is found in: 06:31, 06:48, 09:22, 16:37, 17:03, 21:28, 23:24, 25:01, 26:07
- * **Tamar** is found in: 02:03, 03:06
- * **Tarshish** is found in: 01:05
- * **temple** is found in: 06:10, 09:01, 09:28, 10:09, 28:02, 28:09, 28:11, 28:20, 29:16
- * **tent** is found in: 05:10, 06:31, 09:17, 15:01, 16:01, 17:01
- * **tent of meeting** is found in: 09:20, 23:32
- * **Terah** is found in: 01:24
- * **thresh, threshing** is found in: 13:09, 21:13, 21:18, 21:21, 21:23, 21:28
- * **throne** is found in: 17:11, 22:09, 28:04, 29:22
- * **time** is found in: 12:32
- * **tribe** is found in: 04:42, 05:04, 06:59, 06:66, 06:70, 06:80, 07:04, 12:01, 12:29, 26:31, 27:10, 28:01, 29:06
- * **tribute** is found in: 18:01, 18:05
- * **trouble, troubles, troubled** is found in: 02:05, 17:09, 21:13
- * **true, truth, come true** is found in: 11:01
- * **trumpet** is found in: 13:07, 15:22, 16:42
- * **trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness** is found in: 05:20, 09:22
- * **Tubal** is found in: 01:05
- * **Tyre, Tyrians** is found in: 14:01, 22:03
- * **uncircumcised, uncircumcision** is found in: 10:04
- * **understand, understanding** is found in: 12:32, 22:11, 28:18
- * **unfaithful, unfaithfulness** is found in: 05:25, 10:13
- * **unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread** is found in: 23:27
- * **upright, uprightness** is found in: 29:16
- * **Uriah** is found in: 11:38
- * **vineyard** is found in: 27:25
- * **vision** is found in: 17:13
- * **warrior, soldier** is found in: 21:04
- * **watch, watchman** is found in: 26:15
- * **watchtower, tower** is found in: 27:25

- * well, cistern is found in: 11:15
- * wheat is found in: 21:18
- * will of God is found in: 13:01
- * wine, wineskin, new wine is found in: 09:28, 12:38, 27:25
- * wise men is found in: 27:32
- * word is found in: 21:04
- * word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture is found in: 11:01, 12:23, 15:13, 16:15, 17:03
- * works, deeds, work, acts is found in: 06:48, 09:12, 09:33, 16:07, 16:23, 17:19, 24:01, 25:01, 26:29, 28:20, 29:03, 29:06, 29:29
- * world, worldly is found in: 16:30
- * worship is found in: 05:25, 29:20
- * wrath, fury is found in: 27:23
- * written is found in: 09:07, 29:29
- * Yahweh is found in: 02:03, 06:13, 09:17, 10:13, 11:01, 11:12, 13:01, 13:12, 14:01, 14:15, 15:01, 15:13, 16:01, 16:12, 16:23, 16:32, 16:40, 17:16, 18:05, 18:09, 18:12, 19:12, 21:01, 21:09, 21:13, 21:18, 21:25, 22:15, 23:04, 24:19, 25:01, 26:29, 27:23, 28:02, 29:03, 29:16, 29:24
- * Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host is found in: 11:07, 17:07, 17:22
- * Zadok is found in: 06:50, 09:10, 12:26, 15:11, 16:37, 18:14, 24:01, 24:29, 29:22
- * Zebulun is found in: 02:01, 06:63, 06:77, 12:32, 12:38, 27:19
- * Zechariah (OT) is found in: 09:20, 09:35, 27:19
- * Zedekiah is found in: 03:15
- * Zephaniah is found in: 06:36
- * Zerubbabel is found in: 03:19
- * Zion, Mount Zion is found in: 11:04

1 Chronicles 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter gives the genealogies of Abraham, Esau and the early kings of Edom.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

1 Chronicles 1:1-4

UDB:

¹ The first person God created was Adam. Adam's son was Seth. Seth's son was Enosh. Enosh's son was Kenan. ² Kenan's son was Mahalalel. Mahalalel's son was Jared. Jared's son was Enoch. ³ Enoch's son was Methuselah. Methuselah's son was Lamech. Lamech's son was Noah. ⁴ Noah's sons were Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

-

ULB:

1 ¹ Adam, Seth, Enosh, ² Kenan, Mahalalel, Jared, ³ Enoch, Methuselah, Lamech. ⁴ The sons of Noah were Shem, Ham, and Japheth.[1]Some versions omit *The sons of ... , but others include this expression.*

translationWords:

- Adam
- Seth
- Enoch
- Lamech
- Noah
- Shem
- Ham
- Japheth

translationNotes:

- **The sons of Noah were Shem, Ham, and Japheth** - Some versions, including the ULB and UDB, include "The sons of" in order to make it clear that Shem, Ham, and Japheth were brothers to each other and sons of Noah. Otherwise, the reader would assume that each person represented one generation farther away from Noah, their ancestor.
- **Enosh, Kenan, Mahalalel, Jared ... Methuselah** - These names are a list of ancestors. If your language has a specific way to mark this kind of list, you can use it here. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:5-7

UDB:

⁵ The sons of Japheth were Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras.

- ⁶ The sons of Gomer were Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah.
- ⁷ The sons of Javan were Elishah, Tarshish, Kittim, and Rodanim.

ULB:

⁵ The sons of Japheth were Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras. ⁶ The sons of Gomer were Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah.[1]Some versions have *Diphath* instead of *Riphath*. However, *Diphath* was probably a misspelling. Many ancient copies correct it to *Riphath* in order to make it agree with the same name in Gen. 10:2. ⁷ The sons of Javan were Elishah, Tarshish, Kittim, and Dodanim.

translationWords:

- Tubal
- Meshech
- Tarshish

translationNotes:

- **Gomer ... Dodanim** - Translate these names of people the way you would translate names in your language. These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Dodanim** - This name is sometimes spelled “Rodanim” as in the UDB. (See: [Textual Variants](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:8-10

UDB:

⁸ The sons of Ham were Cush, Mizraim, Put, and Canaan.

- ⁹ The sons of Cush were Seba, Havilah, Sabta, Raamah, and Sabteca.
 - The sons of Raamah were Sheba and Dedan.
- ¹⁰ Another son of Cush was Nimrod. When he grew up, he became a mighty warrior on the earth.
-

ULB:

⁸ The sons of Ham were Cush, Mizraim, Put, and Canaan. ⁹ The sons of Cush were Seba, Havilah, Sabta, Raamah, and Sabteca. The sons of Raamah were Sheba and Dedan. ¹⁰ Cush became the father of Nimrod, who was the first conqueror on the earth.

translationWords:

- [Cush](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Sheba](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

translationNotes:

- **Mizraim ... Nimrod** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Mizraim was the ancestor of the Lud , the Anam, the Lehab, the Naphtuh, ¹² the Pathrus, the Casluh, and the Caphtor people groups. The people of the region of Philistia were descended from the Casluh people group.

-

ULB:

¹¹ Mizraim became the ancestor of the Ludites, Anamites, Lehabites, Naphtuhites, ¹² Pathrusites, Casluhites (from whom the Philistines came), and the Caphtorites.

translationWords:

- [Philistines](#)

translationNotes:

- **from whom the Philistines came** - AT: “the ancestors of the Philistines,”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:13-16

UDB:

¹³ Canaan's first son was Sidon. He was also the ancestor of the Heth, ¹⁴ the Jebus, the Amor, the Girgash, ¹⁵ the Hiv, the Ark, the Sin, ¹⁶ the Arvad, the Zemar, and the Hamath people groups.

-

ULB:

¹³ Canaan became the father of Sidon, his firstborn, and of Heth. ¹⁴ He also became the ancestor of the Jebusites, Amorites, Girgashites, ¹⁵ Hivites, Arkites, Sinites, ¹⁶ Arvadites, Zemarites, and the Hamathites.

translationWords:

- [Sidon, Sidonians](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [Jebusites, Jebus](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [Girgashites](#)
- [Hivite](#)

translationNotes:

- **Heth** - This is the name of a person. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Arkites ... Hamathites** - These are names of people groups.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ The sons of Shem were Elam, Asshur, Arphachshad, Lud, and Aram.

- Aram's sons were Uz, Hul, Gether, and Meshech.
- ¹⁸ Arphachshad was the father of Shelah, who was the father of Eber.
 - ¹⁹ Eber had two sons. One was named Peleg which sounds like the word that means 'divided' because during the time that he lived, the people on the earth were divided into various language groups. Peleg's younger brother was Joktan.
 -

ULB:

¹⁷ The sons of Shem were Elam, Asshur, Arpachshad, Lud, Aram, Uz, Hul, Gether, and Meshech. ¹⁸ Arpachshad became the father of Shelah, and Shelah became the father of Eber. ¹⁹ Eber had two sons. The name of the one was Peleg, for in his days the earth was divided. His brother's name was Joktan.

translationWords:

- [Shem](#)
- [Elam](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [Meshech](#)

translationNotes:

- **Arpachshad ... Joktan** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:20-23**UDB:**

²⁰ Joktan was the ancestor of Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah, ²¹ Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah, ²² Obal, Abimael, Sheba, ²³ Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab.

-

ULB:

²⁰ Joktan became the father of Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah, ²¹ Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah, ²² Obal, Abimael, Sheba, ²³ Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab; all these were descendants of Joktan.

translationWords:

- [Sheba](#)

translationNotes:

- **Joktan ... Jobab** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:24-27

UDB:

²⁴ These are the descendants of Shem, in order from him to Abraham, were Arphachshad, Shelah, ²⁵ Eber, Peleg, Reu, ²⁶ Serug, Nahor, Terah, ²⁷ and Abram, whose name was later changed to Abraham.

-

ULB:

²⁴ Shem, Arpachshad, Shelah, ²⁵ Eber, Peleg, Reu, ²⁶ Serug, Nahor, Terah, ²⁷ Abram, who was Abraham.

translationWords:

- [Nahor](#)
- [Terah](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

translationNotes:

- **Shem ... Serug** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:28-31

UDB:

²⁸ Abraham's sons were Isaac and Ishmael.

- ²⁹ The son of Abraham's slave wife Hagar was Ishmael. Ishmael's twelve sons were Nebaioth, his firstborn, then Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam, ³⁰ Mishma, Dumah, Massa, Hadad, Tema, ³¹ Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah.
-

ULB:

²⁸ The sons of Abraham were Isaac and Ishmael. ²⁹ These are their sons: the firstborn of Ishmael was Nebaioth, then Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam, ³⁰ Mishma, Dumah, Massa, Hadad, Tema, ³¹ Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah. These were Ishmael's sons.

translationWords:

- [Isaac](#)
- [Ishmael](#)
- [firstborn](#)

translationNotes:

- **Nebaioth ... Kedemah** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:32-33

UDB:

³² After Abraham's wife Sarah died, he took another wife named Keturah. Her sons were Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah.

- Jokshan's sons were Sheba and Dedan.
- ³³ Midian's sons were Ephah, Epher, Hanoah, Abida, and Eldaah.

ULB:

³² The sons of Keturah, Abraham's concubine, were Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah. The sons of Jokshan were Sheba and Dedan. ³³ Midian's sons were Ephah, Epher, Hanoah, Abida, and Eldaah. All these were Keturah's descendants.

translationWords:

- [concubine](#)
- [Midian, Midianites](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)

translationNotes:

- **Keturah ... Eldaah** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:34-37

UDB:

³⁴ The son of Abraham's wife Sarah was Isaac, and Isaac's sons were Esau and Jacob, whose name was later changed to Israel.

- ³⁵ The sons of Esau were Eliphaz, Reuel, Jeush, Jalam, and Korah.
 - ³⁶ The sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, Kenaz, Timna, and Amalek.
 - ³⁷ Reuel's sons were Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah.
-

ULB:

³⁴ Abraham became the father of Isaac. The sons of Isaac were Esau and Israel.

³⁵ The sons of Esau were Eliphaz, Reuel, Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. ³⁶ The sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, Kenaz, Timna, and Amalek. ³⁷ The sons of Reuel were Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah.

translationWords:

- [Esau](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Jethro, Reuel](#)
- [Korah](#)
- [Amalek, Amalekite](#)

translationNotes:

- **Eliphaz ... Mizzah** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:38-40

UDB:

³⁸ Another descendant of Esau was Seir. His descendants lived in the region of Edom. Seir's sons were Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan.

- ³⁹ Lotan's sons were Hori and Homam, and Lotan's sister was Timna.
- ⁴⁰ Shobal's sons were Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam.
- Zibeon's sons were Aiah and Anah.
-

ULB:

³⁸ The sons of Seir were Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. ³⁹ The sons of Lotan were Hori and Homam, and Timna was Lotan's sister. ⁴⁰ The sons of Shobal were Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam. The sons of Zibeon were Aiah and Anah.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **Lotan ... Anah** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:41-42

UDB:

⁴¹ Anah's son was Dishon.

- 1 Dishon's sons were Hamram, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran.
- ⁴² Ezer's sons were Bilhan, Zaavan, and Jaakan.
- Dishan's sons were Uz and Aran.

ULB:

⁴¹ The son of Anah was Dishon. The sons of Dishon were Hamran, Eshban, Ithran, and Keran. ⁴² The sons of Ezer were Bilhan, Zaavan, and Jaakan. The sons of Dishan were Uz and Aran.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **Anah ... Aran** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:43-45

UDB:

⁴³ These are the names of the kings who ruled the region of Edom before any kings ruled over Israel:

- Bela son of Beor, was king in Edom, and the name of the city in which he lived was Dinhabah.
- ⁴⁴ When Bela died, Jobab son of Zerah, from the city of Bozrah, became the king.
- ⁴⁵ When Jobab died, Husham became the king. He was from the region where the Teman people group lived.
-

ULB:

⁴³ These were the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before any king reigned over the Israelites: Bela son of Beor, and the name of his city was Dinhabah. ⁴⁴ When Bela died, Jobab son of Zerah of Bozrah reigned in his place. ⁴⁵ When Jobab died, Husham of the land of the Temanites reigned in his place.

translationWords:

- king
- reign
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

translationNotes:

- **Bela ... Beor ... Jobab ... Zerah ... Husham** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Dinhabah ... Bozrah** - These are the names of places.
- **Husham of the land of the Temanites reigned in his place** - “Husham, from the land where Teman’s descendants lived, reigned after him.”
- **Temanites** - This is the name of a people group.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:46-48**UDB:**

⁴⁶ When Husham died, Hadad son of Bedad, became the king. He ruled in the city of Avith. Hadad's army defeated the army of the Midian people group in the region of Moab.

- ⁴⁷ When Hadad died, Samlah became the king. He was from the city of Masrekah.
- ⁴⁸ When Samlah died, Shaul became the king. He was from the city of Rehoboth Hannahar.
-

ULB:

⁴⁶ When Husham died, Hadad son of Bedad, who defeated the Midianites in the land of Moab, reigned in his place. The name of his city was Avith. ⁴⁷ When Hadad died, Samlah of Masrekah reigned in his place. ⁴⁸ When Samlah died, Shaul of Rehoboth Hannahar reigned in his place.

translationWords:

- [Midian, Midianites](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)

translationNotes:

- **Husham ... Hadad ... Bedad ... Samlah ... Shaul** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Avith ... Masrekah ... Rehoboth** - These are the names of places.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:49-50

UDB:

⁴⁹ When Shaul died, Baal Hanan son of Achbor, became the king.

- ⁵⁰ When Baal Hanan died, Hadad became the king. He was from the city of Pai. His wife's name was Mehetabel; she was the daughter of Matred and the granddaughter of Me Zahab.

ULB:

⁴⁹ When Shaul died, Baal Hanan son of Achbor reigned in his place. ⁵⁰ When Baal Hanan son of Achbor died, Hadar reigned in his place. The name of his city was Pai. His wife's name was Mehetabel daughter of Matred daughter of Me Zahab.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **Shaul ... Baal Hanan ... Achbor ... Hadar ... Mehetabel ... Matred ... Me Zahab** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Pai** - This is the name of a place.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 1:51-54

UDB:

⁵¹ Then Hadad died.

- The leaders of the clans of the Edom people group were Timna, Alvah, Jetheth, ⁵² Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon, ⁵³ Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar, ⁵⁴ Magdiel, and Iram.

ULB:

⁵¹ Hadad died.

The heads of clans in Edom were Timna, Alvah, Jetheth, ⁵² Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon, ⁵³ Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar, ⁵⁴ Magdiel, and Iram. These were the heads of clans in Edom.

translationWords:

- [head](#)
- [clan](#)

translationNotes:

- **Timna ... Iram** - These are the names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 01 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of Judah, son of Jacob.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 02:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 2:1-2

UDB:

¹ The sons of Jacob were Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Zebulun, ² Dan, Joseph, Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.

-

ULB:

² ¹ These were Israel's sons: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Zebulun, ² Dan, Joseph, Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.

translationWords:

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [Zebulun](#)
- [Dan](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Asher](#)

translationNotes:

- **Reuben ... Asher** - These are all names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:3-4

UDB:

³ Judah's sons were Er, Onan, and Shelah. Their mother was the daughter of Shua from the Canaan people group. When Judah's oldest son Er grew up, he did something that Yahweh considered to be very wicked, so Yahweh caused him to die. ⁴ Judah and his daughter-in-law Tamar had twin boys named Perez and Zerah. So altogether Judah had five sons.

•

ULB:

³ Judah's sons were Er, Onan, and Shelah, who were born to him by Shua's daughter, the Canaanite. Er, Judah's firstborn, was wicked in the sight of Yahweh, and Yahweh killed him. ⁴ Tamar, his daughter-in-law, bore him Perez and Zerah. Judah had five sons.

translationWords:

- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Tamar](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Yahweh** - This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.
- **bore him Perez and Zerah** - "gave birth to his sons Perez and Zerah"
- **five sons** - "5 sons" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **in the sight of Yahweh** - AT: "according to Yahweh"
- **Yahweh killed him** - This means that Yahweh allowed Er to be killed.
- **daughter-in-law** - This is a reference to the wife of his son.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:5-8

UDB:

⁵ The sons of Perez were Hezron and Hamul.

- ⁶ Zerah had five sons: Zimri, Ethan, Heman, Calcol, and Darda.
 - ⁷ One of the sons of Zimri was Carmi. Carmi's son Achan caused the people of Israel to experience much trouble, because he stole some of the things that were to be destroyed because they were dedicated to God.
 - ⁸ Ethan's son was Azariah.
-

ULB:

⁵ Perez's sons were Hezron and Hamul. ⁶ Zerah's sons were Zimri, Ethan, Heman, Calcol, and Dara, five in all. ⁷ Carmi's son was Achar, who brought trouble on Israel when he stole what was reserved for God. ⁸ Ethan's son was Azariah.

translationWords:

- trouble, troubles, troubled
- God

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:9-12

UDB:

⁹ Hezron's sons were Jerahmeel, Ram, and Caleb.

- ¹⁰ Ram was the father of Amminadab, and Amminadab was the father of Nahshon. Nahshon was a leader of the tribe of Judah.
- ¹¹ Nahshon was the father of Salmon, who was the father of Boaz. ¹² Boaz was the father of Obed, and Obed was the father of Jesse.
-

ULB:

⁹ Hezron's sons were Jerahmeel, Ram, and Chelubai. ¹⁰ Ram became the father of Amminadab, and Amminadab became the father of Nahshon, a leader among Judah's descendants. ¹¹ Nahshon became the father of Salma, and Salma became the father of Boaz. ¹² Boaz became the father of Obed, and Obed became the father of Jesse.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from
- Boaz
- Jesse

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:13-15

UDB:

¹³ Jesse's oldest son was Eliab. His other sons were Abinadab, Shimea, ¹⁴ Nethanel, Raddai, ¹⁵ Ozem. The youngest was David.

-

ULB:

¹³ Jesse became the father of his firstborn Eliab, Abinadab the second, Shimea the third, ¹⁴ Nethanel the fourth, Raddai the fifth, ¹⁵ Ozem the sixth, and David the seventh.

translationWords:

- [David](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **the second ... the third** - “the second child ... the third child” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Their sisters were Zeruah and Abigail. Zeruah's three sons were Abishai, Joab, and Asahel. ¹⁷ Abigail's husband was Jether, a descendant of Ishmael, and their son was Amasa,

-

ULB:

¹⁶ Their sisters were Zeruah and Abigail. The sons of Zeruah were Abishai, Joab, and Asahel, three of them. ¹⁷ Abigail bore Amasa, whose father was Jether the Ishmaelite.

translationWords:

- [sister](#)
- [Joab](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))
- **Jether the Ishmaelite** - This means that Jether was a descendant of Ishmael.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ Hezron's younger son Caleb had two wives. One of them, Azubah, gave birth to three sons, Jeshur, Shobab, and Ardon. ¹⁹ When Azubah died, Caleb married Ephrath. Their son was Hur. ²⁰ Hur was the father of Uri, and Uri was the father of Bezalel.

-

ULB:

¹⁸ Caleb son of Hezron became the father of children by Azubah, his wife, and by Jerioth. His sons were Jeshur, Shobab, and Ardon. ¹⁹ Azubah died, and then Caleb married Ephrath, who bore him Hur. ²⁰ Hur became the father of Uri, and Uri became the father of Bezalel.

translationWords:

- [children, child](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **bore him** - AT: "gave birth to"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:21-22

UDB:

²¹ When Hezron was sixty years old, he married a daughter of Makir, who was also the father of Gilead. The son of Hezron and Makir was Segub. ²² Segub was the father of Jair. Jair's army controlled twenty-three cities in the region ruled by Gilead.

-

ULB:

²¹ Later Hezron (when he was sixty years old) married the daughter of Machir, the father of Gilead. She bore him Segub. ²² Segub became the father of Jair, who controlled twenty-three cities in the land of Gilead.

translationWords:

- [Gilead](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#)
- **bore him** - "gave birth to"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:23-24

UDB:

²³ But the armies of Geshur and Aram captured those towns controlled by Jair. They also captured the city of Kenath and the nearby towns; altogether they captured sixty towns. The people who lived there were all descendants of Makir, the father of Gilead.

- ²⁴ Shortly after Hezron died, Caleb slept with Ephrathah, his father's widow. She bore a son for Caleb, whose name was Ashhur. Asshur became the father of Tekoa.
-

ULB:

²³ Geshur and Aram took the towns of Jair and Kenath, as well as sixty surrounding towns. All these inhabitants were descendants of Machir, the father of Gilead. ²⁴ After the death of Hezron, Caleb slept with Ephrathah, the wife of his father Hezron. She bore him Ashhur, the father of Tekoa.[1]Some versions read, *After Hezron's death in Caleb Ephrathah, his wife Abijah bore him a son, Ashhur, the father of Tekoa.*

translationWords:

- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#)
- **bore him** - “gave birth to”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:25-28

UDB:

²⁵ Hezron's oldest son was Jerahmeel. His sons were Ram, Bunah, Oren, Ozem, and Ahijah. Jerahmeel's oldest son was Ram. ²⁶ Jerahmeel had another wife named Atarah. Their son was Onam.

- ²⁷ The sons of Ram, Jerahmeel's oldest son, were Maaz, Jamin, and Eker.
- ²⁸ Onam's sons were Shammai and Jada.
- Shammai's sons were Nadab and Abishur.

○

ULB:

²⁵ The sons of Jerahmeel, the firstborn of Hezron, were Ram the firstborn, Bunah, Oren, Ozem, and Ahijah. ²⁶ Jerahmeel had another wife, whose name was Atarah. She was the mother of Onam. ²⁷ The sons of Ram, the firstborn of Jerahmeel, were Maaz, Jamin, and Eker. ²⁸ The sons of Onam were Shammai and Jada. The sons of Shammai were Nadab and Abishur.

translationWords:

- [firstborn](#)
- [Ahijah](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Atarah** - This is the name of a woman.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:29-33

UDB:

²⁹ Abishur's wife was Abihail. The sons of Abishur and Abihail were Ahban and Molid.

- ³⁰ Nadab's sons were Seled and Appaim. Seled did not have any children. ³¹ Appaim's son was Ishi; Ishi's son was Sheshan. One of Sheshan's daughters was Ahlai.

³² Shammai's younger brother was Jada. Jada's sons were Jether and Jonathan. Jether did not have any children.

³³ Jonathan's sons were Peleth and Zaza.

Those were the descendants of Jerahmeel.

ULB:

²⁹ The name of the wife of Abishur was Abihail, and she bore him Ahban and Molid. ³⁰ The sons of Nadab were Seled and Appaim, but Seled died without children. ³¹ The son of Appaim was Ishi. The son of Ishi was Sheshan. The son of Sheshan was Ahlai. ³² The sons of Jada, the brother of Shammai, were Jether and Jonathan. Jether died without children. ³³ The sons of Jonathan were Peleth and Zaza. These were the descendants of Jerahmeel.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- children, child
- Jonathan

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:34-35

UDB:

³⁴ Sheshan did not have any sons; he had only daughters. He had a servant from Egypt whose name was Jarha. ³⁵ Sheshan allowed his daughter to marry Jarha, and their son was Attai.

-

ULB:

³⁴ Now Sheshan had no sons, only daughters. Sheshan had a servant, an Egyptian, whose name was Jarha. ³⁵ Sheshan gave his daughter to Jarha his servant as his wife. She bore him Attai.

translationWords:

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **bore him** - “gave birth to”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:36-38

UDB:

³⁶ Attai was the father of Nathan.

- Nathan was the father of Zabad.
- ³⁷ Zabad was the father of Ephlal.
- Ephlal was the father of Obed.
- ³⁸ Obed was the father of Jehu.
- Jehu was the father of Azariah.
-

ULB:

³⁶ Attai became the father of Nathan, and Nathan became the father of Zabad. ³⁷ Zabad became the father of Ephlal, and Ephlal became the father of Obed. ³⁸ Obed became the father of Jehu, and Jehu became the father of Azariah.

translationWords:

- [Azariah](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:39-41

UDB:

³⁹ Azariah was the father of Helez.

- Helez was the father of Eleasah.
- ⁴⁰ Eleasah was the father of Sismai.
- Sismai was the father of Shallum.
- ⁴¹ Shallum was the father of Jekamiah.
- And Jekamiah was the father of Elishama.
-

ULB:

³⁹ Azariah became the father of Helez, and Helez became the father of Eleasah. ⁴⁰ Eleasah became the father of Sismai, and Sismai became the father of Shallum. ⁴¹ Shallum became the father of Jekamiah, and Jekamiah became the father of Elishama.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:42-44

UDB:

⁴² Jerahmeel's younger brother was Caleb.

- Caleb's oldest son was Mesha. Mesha was the father of Ziph. Ziph was the father of Mareshah. Mareshah was the father of Hebron. ⁴³ Hebron's sons were Korah, Tappuah, Rekem, and Shema. ⁴⁴ Shema was the father of Raham. Raham was the father of Jorkeam. Rekem was the father of Shammai.
-

ULB:

⁴² The sons of Caleb, the brother of Jerahmeel, were Mesha his firstborn, who was the father of Ziph. His second son, Mareshah, was the father of Hebron. ⁴³ The sons of Hebron were Korah, Tappuah, Rekem, and Shema. ⁴⁴ Shema became the father of Raham, the father of Jorkeam. Rekem became the father of Shammai.

translationWords:

- [firstborn](#)
- [Korah](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **The sons of Caleb ... Mareshah** - Different versions understand the relationships among these people in different ways. Some interpreters believe that “the father of Hebron ... the father of Raham, the father of Jorkeam ... the father of Shammai” means “the founder of the clan of Hebron,” etc. Some versions might employ this interpretation.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:45-47

UDB:

⁴⁵ Shammai was the father of Maon. Maon was the father of Beth Zur.

- ⁴⁶ Caleb had a slave wife who was named Ephah. Caleb and Ephah's sons were Haran, Moza, and Gazez. Haran had a son whom he also named Gazez.
- ⁴⁷ Ephah's father was Jahdai. Jahdai was the father of six sons: Regem, Jotham, Geshan, Pelet, Ephah, and Shaaph.
-

ULB:

⁴⁵ The son of Shammai was Maon, and Maon was the father of Bethzur. ⁴⁶ Ephah, Caleb's concubine, bore Haran, Moza, and Gazez. Haran became the father of Gazez. ⁴⁷ The sons of Jahdai were Regem, Jotham, Geshan, Pelet, Ephah, and Shaaph.

translationWords:

- [concubine](#)
- [Jotham](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:48-49

UDB:

⁴⁸ Caleb had another slave wife whose name was Maacah. Caleb and Maacah's sons were Sheber, Tirhanah, ⁴⁹ Shaaph, and Sheva. Shaaph was the father of Madmannah. Sheva was the father of Macbenah and Gibeah. Caleb's daughter was Acsah.

-

ULB:

⁴⁸ Maacah, Caleb's concubine, bore Sheber and Tirhanah. ⁴⁹ She also bore Shaaph the father of Madmannah, Sheva the father of Machbena and the father of Gibeah. The daughter of Caleb was Achsah. These were the descendants of Caleb.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- bore - "gave birth to"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:50-51

UDB:

50-51 These people were also descendants of Caleb: Caleb had another wife whose name was Ephrathah. Their oldest son was Hur. Hur's sons were Shobal, Salma, and Hareph. Shobal started the city of Kiriath Jearim. Salma started the city of Bethlehem. Hareph started the city of Beth Gader.

-

ULB:

⁵⁰ These were the sons of Hur, his firstborn by Ephrathah: Shobal the father of Kiriath Jearim, ⁵¹ Salma the father of Bethlehem, and Hareph the father of Bethgader.

translationWords:

- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:52-53

UDB:

⁵² Shobal's descendants were Haroeh, and half of the Manahath people group. ⁵³ His descendants also included these clans that lived in Kiriath Jearim: Ithri, Put, Shumath, and Mishra. The clans of Zorath and Eshtaol were descendants of the clan of Mishra.

-

ULB:

⁵² Shobal the father of Kiriath Jearim had descendants: Haroeh, half of the Menuthite people, ⁵³ and the clans of Kiriath Jearim: the Ithrites, Puthites, Shumathites, and Mishraites. The Zorathites and Eshtaolites descended from these.

translationWords:

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [clan](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Menuthite ... Ithrites, Puthites, Shumathites, and Mishraites. The Zorathites and Eshtaolites** - These are the names of clans.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 2:54-55

UDB:

⁵⁴ Salma's descendants in Bethlehem were the Netophath clan, the clan of Atroth Beth Joab, the other half of the clan of Manahath, and the clan of Zor. ⁵⁵ Salma's descendants also included the families in the city of Jabez who wrote and copied important documents. These were the clan of Tirath, the clan of Shimeath, and the clan of Sucath. They were all from the Kenite people group who came from the city of Hammath, and who had married members of the family of Rechab.

ULB:

⁵⁴ The clans of Salma were the following: Bethlehem, the Netophathites, Atroth Beth Joab, and half of the Manahathites—the Zorites, ⁵⁵ the clans of the scribes who lived at Jabez: the Tirathites, Shimeathites, and Sucathites. These were the Kenites who descended from Hammath, the ancestor of the Rechabites.

translationWords:

- [scribe, expert in the Jewish law](#)

translationNotes:

- **Netophathites, Atroth Beth Joab ... Manahathites—the Zorites ... Tirathites, Shimeathites, and Sucathites ... Kenites ... Rechabites** - These are the names of clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 02 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of King David.

This chapter indents some of the lines of 3:1-3, 6-8, 10-24 because they are long lists.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 03:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 3:1-3

UDB:

¹ Six sons of King David were born in the city of Hebron.

- His oldest son was Amnon, whose mother Ahinoam was from the city of Jezreel.
- His next son was Daniel, whose mother was Abigail from the city of Carmel.
- ² His next son was Absalom, whose mother was Maacah, the daughter of Talmai, the king who ruled in the city of Geshur.
- His next son was Adonijah, whose mother was Haggith.
- ³ The next son was Shephatiah, whose mother was Abital.
- His youngest son was Ithream, whose mother was Eglah.
-

ULB:

3 ¹ Now these are the sons of David who were born to him in Hebron: the firstborn was Amnon, by Ahinoam from Jezreel; the second was Daniel, by Abigail from Carmel; ² the third was Absalom, whose mother was Maacah, daughter of Talmai king of Geshur. The fourth was Adonijah son of Haggith; ³ the fifth was Shephatiah by Abital; the sixth was Ithream by Eglah his wife.

translationWords:

- son, son of
- David
- Hebron
- firstborn
- Amnon
- Carmel, Mount Carmel
- Absalom
- king
- Geshur
- Adonijah

translationNotes:

- **David** - David was a son of Jesse, who was a descendant of Judah. (See: [2:15](#))
- **Ahinoam ... Abigail ... Maacah ... Haggith ... Abital ... Eglah** - These are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Talmai ... Shephatiah ... Ithream** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **Daniel** - This man has the same name as an Israelite prophet but is a different person.
- **Eglah his wife** - “Eglah, David’s wife.” David had more than one wife. AT: “David’s wife Eglah”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 3:4-5

UDB:

⁴ They were all born in Hebron, where David ruled for seven and one half years.

After that, David ruled in Jerusalem for thirty-three years. ⁵ Many of David's children were born in Jerusalem.

- Bathshua, daughter of Ammiel, gave birth to four of his sons: Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, and Solomon.

-

ULB:

⁴ These six were born to David in Hebron, where he reigned seven years and six months. He then ruled thirty-three years in Jerusalem. ⁵ These four sons, by Bathshua daughter of Ammiel, were born to him in Jerusalem: Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, and Solomon.[1]Some versions have *Bathseba* instead of *Bathshua* .

translationWords:

- [reign](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Bathsheba](#)
- [Solomon](#)

translationNotes:

- **where he reigned seven years and six months** - This can also be translated as a separate sentence: "David reigned there seven years and six months."
- **thirty-three years** - "33 years" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Ammiel ... Shammua ... Shobab ... Nathan** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 3:6-9

UDB:

⁶ Nine other sons of David were also born there. They were Ibhar, Elishua, Elpelet, ⁷ Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia, ⁸ Elishama, Eliada, and Eliphelet.

- ⁹ In addition to all those sons, David's slave wives also gave birth to sons. David also had a daughter named Tamar.
-

ULB:

⁶ David's other nine sons were: Ibhar, Elishua, Elpelet,[1]ULB and UDB harmonize *Elishama* and *Eliphelet* to *Elishua* and *Elpelet* , as do some other versions. ⁷ Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia, ⁸ Elishama, Eliada, and Eliphelet. ⁹ These were David's sons, not including the sons by his concubines. Tamar was their sister.

translationWords:

- [concubine](#)
- [Tamar](#)
- [sister](#)

translationNotes:

- **Ibhar ... Elishama ... Eliphelet ... Nogah ... Nepheg ... Japhia ... Eliada** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Elishama ... Eliphelet** - These names are both used for two sons.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 3:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ Solomon's son was King Rehoboam.

- Rehoboam's son was King Abijah.
- Abijah's son was King Asa.
- Asa's son was King Jehoshaphat.
- ¹¹ Jehoshaphat's son was King Jehoram.
- Jehoram's son was King Ahaziah.
- Ahaziah's son was King Joash.
- ¹² Joash's son was King Amaziah.
- Amaziah's son was King Azariah.
- Azariah's son was King Jotham.
-

ULB:

¹⁰ Solomon's son was Rehoboam. Rehoboam's son was Abijah. Abijah's son was Asa. Asa's son was Jehoshaphat. ¹¹ Jehoshaphat's son was Joram. Joram's son was Ahaziah. Ahaziah's son was Joash. ¹² Joash's son was Amaziah. Amaziah's son was Azariah. Azariah's son was Jotham.

translationWords:

- Rehoboam
- Abijah
- Asa
- Jehoshaphat
- Jehoram, Joram
- Ahaziah
- Joash
- Amaziah
- Azariah
- Jotham

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the beginning of the list of David's descendants who became king.
- **Solomon's son was Rehoboam. Rehoboam's son was Abijah** - Solomon had more than one son. The same is true of other men in the list. AT: "Solomon was the father of Rehoboam. Rehoboam was the father of Abijah"

- **Azariah** - This was another name for Uzziah, the better-known name for this king. Translators may decide to use “Uzziah” everywhere for this king.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 3:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Jotham's son was King Ahaz.

- Ahaz's son was King Hezekiah.
- Hezekiah's son was King Manasseh.
- ¹⁴ Manasseh's son was King Amon.
- Amon's son was King Josiah.
-

ULB:

¹³ Jotham's son was Ahaz. Ahaz's son was Hezekiah. Hezekiah's son was Manasseh. ¹⁴ Manasseh's son was Amon. Amon's son was Josiah.

translationWords:

- [Ahaz](#)
- [Hezekiah](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [Josiah](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list of David's descendants who became king. Form these sentences as you did starting in [3:10](#).
- **Amon** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 3:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Josiah's oldest son was Johanan. His other sons were Jehoiakim, Zedekiah, and Shallum.

- ¹⁶ Jehoiakim's son was Jehoiachin. The last king was Zedekiah.
-

ULB:

¹⁵ Josiah's sons were his firstborn Johanan, his second son Jehoiakim, his third son Zedekiah, and his fourth son Shallum. ¹⁶ Jehoiakim's sons were Jehoiachin and Zedekiah.

translationWords:

- [Josiah](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list of David's descendants who became king. Form these sentences as you did starting in [3:10](#).
- **Johanan ... Shallum ... Jehoiachin** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 3:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Jehoiachin was captured and taken to Babylon. His sons were Shealtiel, ¹⁸ Malkiram, Pedaiah, Shenazzar, Jekamiah, Hoshama, and Nedabiah.

-

ULB:

¹⁷ The sons of Jehoiachin, the captive, were Shealtiel, ¹⁸ Malkiram, Pedaiah, Shenazzar, Jekamiah, Hoshama, and Nedabiah.

translationWords:

- [captive, captivity](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jehoiachin** - Some versions have “Jeconiah,” which is a variation of “Jehoiachin.”
- **the captive** - This may be a title that was given to Jehoiachin because he was taken into captivity. However, some versions regard the word as “Assir,” the name of one of his sons.
- **Jehoiachin ... Shealtiel, Malkiram, Pedaiah, Shenazzar, Jekamiah, Hoshama, and Nedabiah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 3:19-21

UDB:

¹⁹ Pedaiah's sons were Zerubbabel and Shimei.

- Two of Zerubbabel's sons were Meshullam and Hananiah, and their sister was Shelomith. ²⁰ Zerubbabel's five other sons were Hashubah, Ohel, Berechiah, Hasadiah, and Jushab Hesed.
- ²¹ The sons of Hananiah were Pelatiah and Jeshaiiah. Jeshaiiah's son was Rephaiah. After him, other descendants of Hananiah were Arnan, Obadiah, and Shecaniah.
-

ULB:

¹⁹ Pedaiah's sons were Zerubbabel and Shimei. Zerubbabel's sons were Meshullam and Hananiah; Shelomith was their sister. ²⁰ His other five sons were Hashubah, Ohel, Berechiah, Hasadiah, and Jushab Hesed. ²¹ Hananiah's sons were Pelatiah and Jeshaiiah. His son was Rephaiah, and further descendants were Arnan, Obadiah, and Shecaniah.

translationWords:

- [Zerubbabel](#)
- [sister](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [Obadiah](#)

translationNotes:

- **Pedaiah ... Shimei ... Meshullam ... Hananiah ... Hashubah ... Ohel ... Berechiah ... Hasadiah ... Jushab Hesed ... Pelatiah ... Jeshaiiah ... Rephaiah ... Arnan ... Shecaniah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Shelomith** - This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Obadiah** - This man has the same name as the prophet Obadiah but is a different person. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **further descendants were Arnan, Obadiah, and Shecaniah** - Different versions put these people into different relationships with each other, because the Hebrew is not very clear about them.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 3:22-24

UDB:

²² Shecaniah's son was Shemaiah. Shemaiah's five sons were Hattush, Igal, Bariah, Neariah, and Shaphat.

- ²³ Neariah's three sons were Elioenai, Hizkiah, and Azrikam.
- ²⁴ Elioenai's seven sons were Hodaviah, Eliashib, Pelaiiah, Akkub, Johanan, Delaiah, and Anani.

ULB:

²² Shecaniah's son was Shemaiah. Shemaiah's sons were Hattush, Igal, Bariah, Neariah, and Shaphat. ²³ Neariah's three sons were Elioenai, Hizkiah, and Azrikam. ²⁴ Elioenai's seven sons were Hodaviah, Eliashib, Pelaiiah, Akkub, Johanan, Delaiah, and Anani.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **Shemaiah ... Hattush ... Igal ... Bariah ... Neariah ... Shaphat ... Elioenai ... Hizkiah ... Azrikam ... Hodaviah ... Eliashib ... Pelaiiah ... Akkub ... Johanan ... Delaiah ... Anani** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 03 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the other descendants of Judah.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 04:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 4:1-2

UDB:

¹ The descendants of Judah were Perez, Hezron, Carmi, Hur, and Shobal.

- ² Shobal's son was Reaiah. Reaiah was the father of Jahath, and Jahath was the father of Ahumai and Lahad. They were the ancestors of the Zorath people group.
-

ULB:

4 ¹ Judah's descendants were Perez, Hezron, Carmi, Hur, and Shobal. ² Shobal was the father of Reaiah. Reaiah was the father of Jahath. Jahath was the father of Ahumai and Lahad. These were the ancestors of the clans of the Zorathites.

translationWords:

- Judah
- descendant, descended from
- clan

translationNotes:

- **Perez ... Hezron ... Carmi ... Hur ... Shobal ... Reaiah ... Jahath ... Ahumai ... Lahad** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Zorathites** - This people group was named after the town of Zorah where they lived.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:3-4

UDB:

³ What follows are the names of the three men who started the clans that lived in the city of Etam: Jezreel, Ishma, and Idbash—and they had a sister named Hazzelelponi. ⁴ Hur was the firstborn son of Ephrathah; he founded the city of Bethlehem. Hur had these descendants: Penuel and Ezer. Penuel started the clans that lived in the city of Gedor, and Ezer started the clans living in the city of Hushah.

-

ULB:

³ These were the ancestors of the clans in the city of Etam: Jezreel, Ishma, and Idbash. Their sister's name was Hazzelelponi. ⁴ Penuel was the ancestor of the clans in the city of Gedor. Ezer was the originator of the clans in Hushah. These were descendants of Hur, the firstborn of Ephrathah and the originator of Bethlehem.

translationWords:

- [firstborn](#)
- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)

translationNotes:

- **These were the ancestors** - This refers back to the list in the previous verses. However, some versions regard these names as standing in a father-son relationship. In the same way, some versions regard Penuel as the father of Gedor, instead of as the originator of the clan of Gedor.
- **Etam ... Gedor ... Hushah** - These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Ishma ... Idbash ... Penuel ... Ezer ... Ephrathah** - These are the names of men.
- **Hazzelelponi** - This is the name of a woman.
- **These were descendants of Hur** - "Penuel and Ezer were descendants of Hur." This points forward to the list that will follow.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:5-8

UDB:

⁵ Hezron's son Ashhur, the father of Tekoa, had two wives whose names were Helah and Naarah.

- ⁶ The sons of Asshur and his wife Naarah were Ahuzzam, Hephher, Temeni, and Haahashtari.
- ⁷ The sons of Ashhur and his wife Helah were Zereth, Izhar, Ethnan, ⁸ and Koz. Koz was the father of Anub, Zobebah, and the ancestor of the clans descended from Aharhel. Aharhel was the son of Harum.

ULB:

⁵ Ashhur the father of Tekoa had two wives, Helah and Naarah. ⁶ Naarah bore him Ahuzzam, Hephher, Temeni, and Haahashtari. These were Naarah's sons. ⁷ Helah's sons were Zereth, Izhar, Ethnan, ⁸ and Koz, who became the father of Anub and Zobebah, and of the clans descended from Aharhel son of Harum.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **Ashhur ... Tekoa ... Ahuzzam ... Hephher ... Zereth ... Izhar ... Ethnan ... Koz ... Anub ... Zobebah ... Aharhel ... Harum** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Temeni ... Haahashtari** - These are understood here as the names of men. However, some versions understand them as the names of clans that were begun by the sons of Ashhur.
- **Helah ... Naarah** - These are the names of women.
- **bore him** - AT: "gave birth to his sons"
- **and of the clans descended from Aharhel son of Harum** - A new sentence can start here. AT: "Koz also became the ancestor of Harhum and the clans that descended from Harhum's son Aharhel"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:9-10

UDB:

⁹ There was another descendant of Judah whose name was Jabez. He was more respected than his brothers were. His mother named him Jabez which means ‘pain’ because she said, “I was enduring much pain when I gave birth to him.” ¹⁰ One day he prayed to God whom his fellow Israelites worshiped, saying, “Please greatly bless me and increase my land. Remain with me, and do not allow anyone to harm me. If you do that for me, I will not have any pain.” And God did what Jabez requested him to do.

-

ULB:

⁹ Jabez was more respected than his brothers. His mother called him Jabez. She said, “Because I bore him in pain.” ¹⁰ Jabez called out to the God of Israel and said, “If only you would truly bless me, expand my territory, and your hand will be with me. When you do this you will keep me from harm, so that I may be free from pain!” So God granted him his prayer.

translationWords:

- call, calling, called, call out
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- bless, blessed, blessing
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- pray, prayer

translationNotes:

- **Jabez** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **expand my territory** - AT: “give me more land”
- **your hand will be with me** - Possible meanings are that God’s hand represents 1) his guidance, 2) his power, or 3) his protection. AT: “guide me” or “make me prosper” or “protect me.” It can also be translated more generally as “be with me.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **granted him his prayer** - “did according to his prayer”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 04 General Notes
- 1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 4:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Another descendant of Judah was Shuhah. His younger brother Kelub was the father of Mehir. Mehir was the father of Eshton. ¹² Eshton was the father of Beth Rapha, Paseah, and Tehinnah. Tehinnah started the city of Nahash, but their families lived in a place called Recah.

-

ULB:

¹¹ Kelub brother of Shuhah became the father of Mehir, who was the father of Eshton. ¹² Eshton became the father of Beth Rapha, Paseah, and Tehinnah, who began the city of Nahash. These were men who lived in Recah.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **Kelub ... Shuhah ... Mehir ... Eshton ... Beth Rapha ... Paseah ... Tehinnah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Tehinnah, who began the city of Nahash** - “Tehinnah, the founder of the city of Nahash”
- **Nahash** - This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Recah** - This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:13-16

UDB:

13-15 Another descendant of Judah was Jephunneh. His son was Caleb. Caleb's sons were Iru, Elah, and Naam. Elah's son was Kenaz. The sons of Kenaz were Othniel and Seraiah.

- Othniel's sons were Hathath and Meonothai. Meonothai was the father of Ophrah.
- Seraiah was the father of Joab. Joab was the ancestor of the people who lived in Craftsmen's Valley. The valley was named that because many of the people who lived there were craftsmen.

¹⁶ Another descendant of Judah was Jehallelel. His sons were Ziph, Ziphah, Tiria, and Asarel.

ULB:

¹³ Kenaz's sons were Othniel and Seraiah. Othniel's sons were Hathath and Meonothai.[1]Most versions insert *Meonothai* into this verse, believing that it dropped out by a copyist's mistake. ¹⁴ Meonothai became the father of Ophrah, and Seraiah became the father of Joab, the originator of Ge Harashim, whose people were craftsmen. ¹⁵ The sons of Caleb son of Jephunneh were Iru, Elah and Naam. Elah's son was Kenaz. ¹⁶ Jehallelel's sons were Ziph, Ziphah, Tiria, and Asarel.

translationWords:

- **people group, peoples, the people, a people**
- **Caleb**

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - It may be helpful to create a verse bridge and to put verse 15 together with verse 13 since Kenaz was a descendant of Jephunneh and Caleb. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))
- **Kenaz ... Othniel ... Seraiah ... Hathath ... Meonothai ... Ophrah ... Joab ... Jephunneh ... Iru ... Elah ... Naam ... Jehallelel ... Ziph ... Ziphah ... Tiria ... Asarel** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Ge Harashim, whose people were craftsmen** - Ge Harashim means "Valley of Craftsmen." The meaning of the name can be translated or it can be made explicit with an explanation: "Ge Harashim, which means 'Craftsmen's Valley.' It was called this because its people were craftsmen." (UDB) (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **craftsmen** - people skilled at making or building things

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:17-18

UDB:

17-18 Another descendant of Judah was Ezrah. Ezrah's sons were Jether, Mered, Epher, and Jalon. Mered married Bithiah, who was the daughter of the king of Egypt. The children of Mered and Bithiah were Miriam, Shammai and Ishbah. Ishbah was the father of Eshtemoa. Mered had a wife from Judah. She gave birth to Jered, Heber, and Jekuthiel. Jered was the father of Gedor; Heber was the father of Soco, and Jekuthiel was the father of Zanoah.

-

ULB:

17-18 Ezrah's sons were Jether, Mered, Epher, and Jalon. Mered's Egyptian wife bore Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah, who became the father of Eshtemoa. These were the sons of Bithiah, daughter of Pharaoh, whom Mered married. Mered's Jewish wife bore Jered, who became the father of Gedor; Heber, who became the father of Soco; and Jekuthiel, who became the father of Zanoah.

translationWords:

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Jew, Jewish, Jews](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The information in [4:17-18](#) has been rearranged so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))
- **Ezrah ... Jether ... Mered ... Epher ... Jalon ... Miriam ... Shammai ... Ishbah ... Eshtemoa ... Jered ... Gedor ... Heber ... Soco ... Jekuthiel ... Zanoah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **These were the sons of Bithiah** - The word "these" refers to Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah. They were the sons Bithiah bore for her husband Mered.
- **Bithiah** - This is the name of a woman.
- **Mered's Jewish wife** - The Hebrew text says, "His Jewish wife," but most versions understand "his" to refer to Mered. This refers to a different wife of Mered, in addition to Bithiah.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)

- 1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 4:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Hodiah's wife was Naham's sister. Hodiah's wife was the mother of two sons. One of them was the father of Keilah, the ancestor of the Gar people group, and the other one was the father of Eshtemoa, the ancestor of the Maacath people group.

- ²⁰ Another descendant of Judah was Shimon. Shimon's sons were Amnon, Rinnah, Ben Hanan, and Tilon.
- Another descendant of Judah was Ishi. His descendants were Zoheth and Ben Zoheth.
-

ULB:

¹⁹ Of the two sons of Hodiah's wife, sister of Naham, one became the father of Keilah the Garmite. The other was Eshtemoa the Maacathite. ²⁰ The sons of Shimon were Amnon, Rinnah, Ben Hanan, and Tilon. The sons of Ishi were Zoheth and Ben Zoheth.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **Hodiah ... Naham ... Keilah ... Eshtemoa ... Shimon ... Amnon ... Rinnah ... Ben Hanan ... Tilon ... Ishi ... Zoheth ... Ben Zoheth** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Garmite** - someone from the Gar people group (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Maacathite** - someone from the region of Maacah, which is also called Maacath (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:21-23

UDB:

²¹ One of Judah's sons was Shelah. Shelah's descendants were Er the father of Lecah, Laadah the father of Mareshah and the families of those who made things from linen at Beth Ashbea, ²² Jokim, and the men of the city of Cozeba, and Joash and Saraph, two men who married women from the region of Moab and later lived in Bethlehem. All their names and a record of what they did are written in scrolls. ²³ Some of these descendants of Shelah made pottery for the king. Some of them lived in the city of Netaim, and some lived in the city of Gederah.

-

ULB:

²¹ The descendants of Shelah son of Judah, were Er father of Lecah, Laadah father of Mareshah and the clans of the linen workers at Beth Ashbea, ²² Jokim, the men of Cozeba, and Joash and Saraph, who had property in Moab, but who returned to Bethlehem. (This information is from ancient records.) ²³ Some of these people were the potters who lived in Netaim and Gederah and worked for the king.

translationWords:

- Judah
- clan
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- Bethlehem, Ephrathah
- king

translationNotes:

- **Shelah ... Er ... Lecah ... Laadah ... Mareshah ... Jokim ... Joash ... Saraph** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **linen** - a type of fabric
- **potters** - people who make containers out of clay
- **Beth Ashbea ... Cozeba ... Netaim ... Gederah** - These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:24-26

UDB:

²⁴ Simeon's sons were Nemuel, Jamin, Jarib, Zerah, and Shaul.

- ²⁵ Shaul's son was Shallum. Shallum's son was Mibsam. Mibsam's son was Mishma.
- ²⁶ Mishma's son was Hammuel. Hammuel's son was Zaccur. Zaccur's son was Shimei.

ULB:

²⁴ Simeon's descendants were Nemuel, Jamin, Jarib, Zerah, and Shaul. ²⁵ Shallum was Shaul's son, Mibsam was Shallum's son, and Mishma was Mibsam's son. ²⁶ Mishma's descendants were Hammuel his son, Zaccur his grandson, and Shimei his great-grandson.

translationWords:

- [Simeon](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)

translationNotes:

- **Nemuel ... Jamin ... Jarib ... Zerah ... Shaul ... Shallum ... Mibsam ... Mishma ... Hammuel ... Zaccur ... Shimei** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **grandson** - the son of a person's child.
- **great-grandson** - the son of a person's grandson or granddaughter.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:27-28

UDB:

²⁷ Shimei had sixteen sons and six daughters, but none of his brothers had many children. So the descendants of Simeon never were as many as the descendants of his younger brother Judah. ²⁸ The descendants of Simeon lived in these cities and towns: Beersheba, Moladah, Hazar Shual,

ULB:

²⁷ Shimei had sixteen sons and six daughters. His brothers did not have many children, so their clans did not increase greatly in numbers as the people of Judah did. ²⁸ They lived at Beersheba, Moladah, and at Hazar Shual.

translationWords:

- [clan](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Beersheba](#)

translationNotes:

- **sixteen sons and six daughters** - "16 sons and 6 daughters" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Moladah ... Hazar Shual** - These are the names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:29-31

UDB:

²⁹ Bilhah, Ezem, Tolad, ³⁰ Bethuel, Hormah, Ziklag, ³¹ Beth Marcaboth, Hazar Susim, Beth Biri, and Shaaraim. They lived in those places until David became king.

ULB:

²⁹ They also live at Bilhah, Ezem, Tolad, ³⁰ Bethuel, Hormah, Ziklag, ³¹ Beth Marcaboth, Hazar Susim, Beth Biri, and Shaaraim. These were their cities until the reign of David.

translationWords:

- [Bethuel](#)
- [reign](#)
- [David](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The list of the cities where Simeon's descendants lived continues.
- **Bilhah ... Ezem..Tolad ... Bethuel ... Hormah ... Ziklag ... Beth Marcaboth ... Hazar Susim ... Beth Biri ... Shaaraim** - These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:32-33

UDB:

³² They also lived in villages near those towns: Etam, Ain, Rimmon, Token, and Ashan. ³³ There were other villages where they lived, as far southwest as the city of Baalath. Those were the places where they lived, and they wrote down the names of their family members.

ULB:

³² Their five villages were Etam, Ain, Rimmon, Tochen, and Ashan, ³³ together with the outlying villages as far as Baal. These were their settlements, and they kept the genealogical records.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The list of places where Simeon's descendants lived continues.
- **Etam ... Ain ... Rimmon ... Tochen ... Ashan** - These are the names of villages. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **outlying** - far from a main population
- **Baal** - This is the name of a city. It is also called Baalath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:34-38

UDB:

34-38 The men in the following list were the leaders of their clans: Meshobab, Jamlech, Joshah son of Amaziah, Joel, and Jehu son of Joshibiah. Joshibiah was son of Seraiah and grandson of Asiel. Other clan leaders were Elioenai, Jaakobah, Jeshohaiah, Asaiah, Adiel, Jesimiel, Benaiah, and Ziza. Ziza was son of Shiphi and grandson of Allon son of Jedaiah, who was the son of Shimri, who was son of Shemaiah.

The members of those families became very numerous.

ULB:

³⁴ Clan leaders were Meshobab, Jamlech, Joshah son of Amaziah, ³⁵ Joel, Jehu son of Joshibiah son of Seraiah son of Asiel, ³⁶ Elioenai, Jaakobah, Jeshohaiah, Asaiah, Adiel, Jesimiel, Benaiah, ³⁷ and Ziza son of Shiphi son of Allon son of Jedaiah son of Shimri son of Shemaiah. ³⁸ These mentioned by name were leaders in their clans, and their clans increased greatly.

translationWords:

- [clan](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Benaiah](#)

translationNotes:

- **Meshobab ... Jamlech ... Joshah ... Amaziah ... Joel ... Joshibiah ... Seraiah ... Asiel ... Elioenai ... Jaakobah ... Jeshohaiah ... Asaiah ... Adiel ... Jesimiel ... Benaiah ... Ziza ... Shiphi ... Allon ... Jedaiah ... Shimri ... Shemaiah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **These mentioned by name were leaders** - “These men were leaders” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **their clans increased greatly** - “the number of people in their clans increased greatly” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:39-41

UDB:

³⁹ They went near the city of Gedor on the east side of the valley to look for pastureland for their flocks of sheep. ⁴⁰ They found good pastureland with plenty of grass. The place was peaceful and quiet.

Previously the descendants of Noah's son Ham had lived there. ⁴¹ But while Hezekiah was the king of Judah, those leaders of the tribe of Simeon came to Gedor and fought against the descendants of Ham and destroyed their tents. They also fought against the descendants of Meun who were living there and they killed all of them. So now there are no descendants of Meun living there. The descendants of Simeon started to live there, because there was good pastureland there for their sheep.

ULB:

³⁹ They went near Gedor, on the east side of the valley, to seek pasture for their flocks. ⁴⁰ They found abundant and good pasture. The land was broad, quiet, and peaceable. The Hamites had formerly lived there. ⁴¹ These just listed by name came in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah, and attacked the Hamite settlements and the Meunites, who were there also. They destroyed them completely and lived there because they found pasture for their flocks.

translationWords:

- flock, herd
- life, live, living, alive
- Hezekiah
- king
- Judah
- Ham

translationNotes:

- **Gedor** - This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **pasture** - an area of land where animals feed on the grass
- **abundant** - a large amount
- **Hamites** - descendants of Ham
- **Meunites** - This is the name of a people group. AT: "descendants of Meun" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 4:42-43

UDB:

⁴² Ishi's four sons Pelatiah, Neariah, Rephaiah and Uzziel led five hundred other descendants of Simeon and attacked the people who were living in the hill country of Edom. ⁴³ They killed the few descendants of Amalek who were still alive. From that time until now, the descendants of Simeon have lived in the region of Edom.

ULB:

⁴² Five hundred men from the tribe of Simeon went to Mount Seir, with their leaders Pelatiah, Neariah, Rephaiah, and Uzziel, the sons of Ishi. ⁴³ They defeated the rest of the Amalekite refugees, and have lived there to this day.

translationWords:

- [tribe](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [Amalek, Amalekite](#)

translationNotes:

- **Five hundred men** - “500 men” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Pelatiah ... Neariah ... Rephaiah ... Uzziel ... Ishi** - These are names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the rest of the Amalekite refugees** - “the remaining Amalekite refugees”
- **refugees** - people who are forced to leave their home country
- **to this day** - “from then until now” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 04 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of Jacob's sons who lived east of the Jordan River; Rueben, Gad and Manasseh.

This chapter indents some of the lines of 5:4-10, 14 because they are long lists.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 05:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 5:1-3

UDB:

¹ Reuben was the oldest son of Jacob. Therefore, he should have received the special rights that belonged to firstborn sons. But he slept with his father's slave wife, so his father gave those rights to the sons of his younger brother Joseph. And in the family records, Reuben is not mentioned first, as the firstborn sons always are. ² Although Judah became more influential than his brothers, and a ruler of Judah descended from him, Joseph's family received the rights that belonged to firstborn sons. ³ But Reuben was Jacob's oldest son.

- Reuben's sons were Hanoch, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi.
-

ULB:

⁵ ¹ The sons of Reuben the firstborn of Israel—now Reuben was Israel's firstborn, but his birthright was given to the sons of Joseph son of Israel because Reuben had defiled his father's couch. So he is not recorded as being the oldest son. ² Judah was the strongest of his brothers, and the leader would come from him. But the birthright was Joseph's— ³ the sons of Reuben, the firstborn of Israel were Hanoch, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi.

translationWords:

- Reuben
- firstborn
- Jacob, Israel
- birthright
- Joseph (OT)
- defile, be defiled
- Judah

translationNotes:

- **now Reuben** - The word “now” is used here to mark the change from the lists of descendants to background information about Reuben. (See: [Background Information](#))
- **but his birthright was given to the sons of Joseph son of Israel** - “but Israel gave Reuben's birthright to the sons of Joseph, another of Israel's sons” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Reuben had defiled his father's couch** - This is a polite way to speak about Reuben sleeping with father's secondary wife. The couch is the place where a man and his wife would have slept together. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metonymy](#))
- **So he is not recorded as being the oldest** - “So the family history does not list Reuben as the oldest son” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

- **Hanoch ... Pallu ... Hezron ... Carmi** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 5:4-6

UDB:

⁴ Another descendant of Reuben was Joel. Joel's son was Shemaiah. Shemaiah's son was Gog. Gog's son was Shimei. ⁵ Shimei's son was Micah. Micah's son was Reaiah. Reaiah's son was Baal. ⁶ Baal's son was Beerah. Beerah was a leader of the tribe of Reuben. But Tiglath Pileser king of Assyria captured him and took him to Assyria.

-

ULB:

⁴ The descendants of Joel were these: Joel's son was Shemaiah. Shemaiah's son was Gog. Gog's son was Shimei. ⁵ Shimei's son was Micah. Micah's son was Reaiah. Reaiah's son was Baal. ⁶ Baal's son was Beerah, whom Tilgath Pileser king of Assyria took into exile. Beerah was a leader in the tribe of Reuben.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from
- king
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- exile, the Exile
- tribe

translationNotes:

- **Joel ... Shemaiah ... Gog ... Shimei ... Micah ... Reaiah ... Baal ... Beerah ... Tilgath Pileser ... Beerah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Tilgath Pileser** - This name is also written as Tiglath Pileser in other parts of the Bible.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 5:7-9

UDB:

⁷ The names of these clans are listed here according to what is written in their family records.

- The names written were: Jeiel, then Zechariah, ⁸ and then Bela son of Azaz, son of Shema, son of Joel. Reuben's clan was very large. Some of them lived near the city of Aroer as far north as the city of Nebo and the city of Baal Meon. ⁹ Some of them lived further east, as far as the edge of the desert south of the Euphrates River. They went there because they had a huge amount of cattle, with the result that there was not enough pastureland for them in the region of Gilead.
-

ULB:

⁷ Beerah's relatives by their clans are the following, listed in their genealogical records: Jeiel the oldest, Zechariah, and ⁸ Bela son of Azaz son of Shema son of Joel. They lived in Aroer, as far as Nebo and Baal Meon, ⁹ and eastward to the start of the wilderness that extends to the Euphrates River. This was because they had many cattle in the land of Gilead.

translationWords:

- [clan](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Euphrates River](#)
- [Gilead](#)

translationNotes:

- **listed in their genealogical records** - This can start a new sentence: "Their genealogical records list them as" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **genealogical records** - records that show how people in a family are related to each other
- **Jeiel ... Zechariah ... Bela ... Azaz ... Shema** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Aroer ... Nebo ... Baal Meon** - These are the names of cities.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 5:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ When Saul was king of Israel, the men in the tribe of Reuben fought against the descendants of Hagar and defeated them. After that, they lived in the tents that the descendants of Hagar had lived in previously, in all the area east of the region of Gilead.

-

ULB:

¹⁰ In the days of Saul, the tribe of Reuben attacked the Hagrites and defeated them. They lived in the Hagrites' tents throughout all the land east of Gilead.

translationWords:

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [tent](#)

translationNotes:

- **the Hagrites** - This is a name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 5:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ The tribe of Gad lived near the tribe of Reuben; they lived in the region of Bashan, all the way east to the city of Salecah. ¹² Joel was their chief; Shapham was his assistant; other leaders were Janai and Shaphat.

- ¹³ Other members of the tribe belonged to seven clans, whose leaders were Michael, Meshullam, Sheba, Jorai, Jacan, Zia, and Eber.
-

ULB:

¹¹ The members of the tribe of Gad lived near them, in the land of Bashan as far as Salecah. ¹² Their leaders were Joel, who was a clan head, and Shapham was head of another clan, and Janai and Shaphat in Bashan. ¹³ Their relatives, by their fathers' families, were Michael, Meshullam, Sheba, Jorai, Jacan, Zia, and Eber—seven in all.

translationWords:

- Gad
- Bashan
- head

translationNotes:

- **Salecah** - This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Joel ... Shapham ... Janai ... Shaphat ... Michael ... Meshullam ... Sheba ... Jorai ... Jacan ... Zia ... Eber** - These are the names of men.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 5:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ They were descendants of Abihail. Abihail was son of Huri, Huri was the son of Jaroah, Jaroah was the son of Gilead, Gilead was son of Michael, Michael was the son of Jeshishi, Jeshishi was the son of Jahdo, and Jahdo was the son of Buz.

- ¹⁵ Ahi was Abdiel's son. Abdiel was Guni's son. Ahi was the leader of their clan.

ULB:

¹⁴ These persons named above were the descendants of Abihail, and Abihail was the son of Huri. Huri was the son of Jaroah. Jaroah was the son of Gilead. Gilead was the son of Michael. Michael was the son of Jeshishai. Jeshishai was the son of Jahdo. Jahdo was the son of Buz. ¹⁵ Ahi son of Abdiel son of Guni, was head of their fathers' family.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from
- ancestor, father, forefather
- family

translationNotes:

- **Abihail ... Huri ... Jaroah ... Gilead ... Michael ... Jeshishai ... Jahdo ... Buz ... Ahi ... Abdiel ... Guni** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 5:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ The descendants of Gad lived in the towns in the regions of Gilead and Bashan, and on all the pastureland on the Plain of Sharon. ¹⁷ All of those names were written in the records of the clans of Gad during the time that Jotham was the king of Judah and Jeroboam was the king of Israel.

ULB:

¹⁶ They lived in Gilead, in Bashan, in its towns, and in all the pasturelands of Sharon as far as its borders. ¹⁷ All these were listed by genealogical records in the days of Jotham king of Judah and of Jeroboam king of Israel.

translationWords:

- [Gilead](#)
- [Bashan](#)
- [Sharon, Plain of Sharon](#)
- [Jotham](#)
- [king](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **They lived** - AT: “The tribe of Gad lived”
- **pasturelands** - areas of land where animals feed on grass
- **All these were listed by genealogical records** - AT: “Genealogical records listed them all” or “The records of their family’s ancestry listed them all” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **All these** - It is not clear to how many of the preceding people this refers.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 5:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ There were 44,760 soldiers in the tribes of Reuben and Gad and the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh. They all carried shields and swords and bows and arrows. They were all trained to fight well in battles. ¹⁹ They attacked the descendants of Hagar and the people in the cities of Jetur, Naphish, and Nodab.

ULB:

¹⁸ The Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh had forty-four thousand soldiers trained for war, who carried shield and sword, and who drew the bow. ¹⁹ They attacked the Hagrites, Jetur, Naphish, and Nodab.

translationWords:

- [Reuben](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [shield](#)
- [sword](#)
- [bow and arrow](#)

translationNotes:

- **Reubenites** - This refers to the people from the tribe of Rueben. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Gadites** - This refers to the people from the tribe of Gad.
- **forty-four thousand soldiers** - “44,000 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **who carried shield and sword, and who drew the bow** - The soldiers are described as skilled in warfare by the weapons they carried. AT: “They were all trained to fight well in battles.” (See: [Metonymy Ellipsis](#))
- **Hagrites ... Jetur ... Naphish ... Nodab** - These are the names of people groups.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 5:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ The men from those three tribes prayed to God during the battles, requesting him to help them. So he helped them, because they trusted in him. He enabled them to defeat the descendants of Hagar and all those who were helping them. ²¹ They took the animals that belonged to the descendants of Hagar: They took fifty thousand camels, 250,000 sheep, and two thousand donkeys. They also captured 100,000 people. ²² But many descendants of Hagar were killed because God helped the people of the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and Manasseh. After that, those three tribes lived in that area until the army of Babylonia captured them and took them away to Babylon.

ULB:

²⁰ They received divine help against them. In this way, the Hagrites and all who were with them were defeated. This was because the Israelites cried out to God in the battle, and he responded to them, because they put their trust in him. ²¹ They captured their animals, including fifty thousand camels, 250,000 sheep, two thousand donkeys, and 100,000 men. ²² Because God fought for them, they killed many of the enemy. They lived in their land until the captivity.

translationWords:

- **divine**
- **God**
- **trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness**
- **camel**
- **sheep, ram, ewe**
- **donkey, mule**
- **adversary, enemy**
- **captive, captivity**

translationNotes:

- **the Israelites cried out to God** - AT: “the Israelites passionately prayed to God for help”
- **They captured their** - AT: “The Israelites captured the Hagrites”
- **fifty thousand camels** - “50,000 camels” (See: **Numbers**)
- **two thousand donkeys** - “2,000 donkeys”
- **Because God fought for them** - God’s help in battle is described like a soldier who fought in the battle. AT: “Because God helped them” (See **Personification**)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 5:23-24

UDB:

²³ There were many people who belonged to the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh. They lived in the region of Bashan east of the Jordan River, as far north as Baal Hermon, Senir, and Mount Hermon.

²⁴ Their clan leaders were Epher, Ishi, Eliel, Azriel, Jeremiah, Hodaviah, and Jahdiel. They were all strong, brave, and famous soldiers, and leaders of their clans.

ULB:

²³ The half tribe of Manasseh lived in the land of Bashan as far as Baal Hermon and Senir (that is, Mount Hermon). ²⁴ These were the leaders of their families: Epher, Ishi, Eliel, Azriel, Jeremiah, Hodaviah, and Jahdiel. They were strong and courageous men, famous men, leaders of their families.

translationWords:

- [Manasseh](#)
- [Bashan](#)
- [Mount Hermon](#)
- [family](#)

translationNotes:

- **Baal Hermon ... Senir** - These are the names of mountains. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Epher ... Ishi ... Eliel ... Azriel ... Jeremiah ... Hodaviah ... Jahdiel** - These are the names of men.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 5:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ But they sinned against God, the one whom their ancestors had worshiped. They began to worship the gods that the people of that region had worshiped, the people whom God had enabled them to destroy. ²⁶ So the God whom the Israelites worshiped incited Pul, the king of Assyria, to want to conquer those tribes. Pul's other name was Tiglath Pileser. His army captured the people of the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh, and took them to various places in Assyria: Halah, Habor, Hara and near the Gozan River. They have lived in those places from that time to the present time.

ULB:

²⁵ But they were unfaithful to their ancestors' God. Instead, they worshiped the gods of the peoples of the land, whom God had destroyed before them. ²⁶ The God of Israel stirred up Pul king of Assyria (also called Tilgath Pileser, king of Assyria). He took into exile the Reubenites, Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh. He took brought them to Halah, Habor, Hara, and to the river of Gozan, where they remain to this day.

translationWords:

- unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- God
- worship
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- king
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- exile, the Exile
- Reuben
- Gad
- Manasseh

translationNotes:

- **Pul ... Tilgath Pileser** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Reubenites ... Gadites** - These are the names of people groups.
- **Halah ... Habor ... Hara** - These are names of towns.
- **Gozan** - This is the name of a river.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 05 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of Levi.

This chapter indents some of the lines of 6:20-30, 33-47, 50-53 because they are long lists.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 06:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 6:1-3

UDB:

¹ Levi's sons were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

- ² Kohath's sons were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.
- ³ Amram's children were Miriam and her younger brothers Aaron and Moses.
- Aaron's sons were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

○

ULB:

6 ¹ The sons of Levi were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. ² The sons of Kohath were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. ³ The children of Amram were Aaron, Moses, and Miriam. The sons of Aaron were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

translationWords:

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Miriam](#)

translationNotes:

- **Gershon ... Kohath ... Merari ... Amram ... Izhar ... Hebron ... Uzziel ... Nadab ... Abihu ... Eleazar ... Ithamar** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:4-6

UDB:

⁴ Eleazar was the father of Phinehas.

- Phinehas was the father of Abishua.
- ⁵ Abishua was the father of Bukki.
- Bukki was the father of Uzzi.
- ⁶ Uzzi was the father of Zerahiah.
- Zerahiah was the father of Meraioth.
-

ULB:

⁴ Eleazar became the father of Phinehas, and Phinehas became the father of Abishua. ⁵ Abishua became the father of Bukki, and Bukki became the father of Uzzi. ⁶ Uzzi became the father of Zerahiah, and Zerahiah became the father of Meraioth.

translationWords:

- [Phinehas](#)

translationNotes:

- **Eleazar ... Abishua ... Bukki ... Uzzi ... Zerahiah ... Meraioth** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Meraioth was the father of Amariah.

- Amariah was the father of Ahitub.
- ⁸ Ahitub was the father of Zadok.
- Zadok was the father of Ahimaaz.
- ⁹ Ahimaaz was the father of Azariah.
- Azariah was the father of Johanan.
-

ULB:

⁷ Meraioth became the father of Amariah, and Amariah became the father of Ahitub. ⁸ Ahitub became the father of Zadok, and Zadok became the father of Ahimaaz. ⁹ Ahimaaz became the father of Azariah, and Azariah became the father of Johanan.

translationWords:

- [Azariah](#)

translationNotes:

- **Meraioth ... Amariah ... Ahitub ... Zadok ... Ahimaaz ... Johanan** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ Johanan was the father of Azariah. Azariah was a priest in the temple that Solomon commanded to be built in Jerusalem.

- ¹¹ Azariah was the father of Amariah.
- Amariah was the father of Ahitub.
- ¹² Ahitub was the father of Zadok.
- Zadok was the father of Shallum.
-

ULB:

¹⁰ Johanan became the father of Azariah, who served in the temple that Solomon built in Jerusalem. ¹¹ Azariah became the father of Amariah, and Amariah became the father of Ahitub. ¹² Ahitub became the father of Zadok, and Zadok became the father of Shallum.

translationWords:

- [Azariah](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **Amariah ... Ahitub ... Zadok ... Shallum** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:13-15

UDB:

¹³ Shallum was the father of Hilkiah.

- Hilkiah was the father of Azariah.
- ¹⁴ Azariah was the father of Seraiah.
- Seraiah was the father of Jehozadak. ¹⁵ Jehozadak was forced to leave his home when Yahweh sent King Nebuchadnezzar's army to capture many people in Jerusalem and other places in Judah and compel them to go to Babylonia.

ULB:

¹³ Shallum became the father of Hilkiah, and Hilkiah became the father of Azariah. ¹⁴ Azariah became the father of Seraiah, and Seraiah became the father of Jehozadak. ¹⁵ Jehozadak went into captivity when Yahweh exiled Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar.

translationWords:

- [Azariah](#)
- [captive, captivity](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)

translationNotes:

- **Hilkiah ... Seraiah ... Jehozadak** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **exiled Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar** - The power Nebuchadnezzar has through his army is described as the part of his body ("hand") he uses to direct his army. AT: "allowed Nebuchadnezzar's army to defeat the armies of Judah and Jerusalem and take the people into captivity." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ Levi's sons were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

- ¹⁷ Gershon's sons were Libni and Shimei.
- ¹⁸ Kohath's sons were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

ULB:

¹⁶ The sons of Levi were Gershom, Kohath, and Merari. ¹⁷ The sons of Gershom were Libni and Shimei. ¹⁸ The sons of Kohath were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

translationWords:

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Shimei](#)

translationNotes:

- **Gershom ... Kohath ... Merari** - See how you translated these names in [6:1](#).
- **Libni ... Shimei** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Amram ... Izhar ... Hebron ... Uzziel** - See how you translated these names in [6:2](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:19-21

UDB:

¹⁹ Merari's sons were Mahli and Mushi.

Here is a list of the descendants of Levi, who became leaders of their clans.

- ²⁰ Gershon's oldest son was Libni.
 - Libni's son was Jehath.
 - Jehath's son was Zimmah.
 - ²¹ Zimmah's son was Joah.
 - Joah's son was Iddo.
 - Iddo's son was Zerah.
 - Zerah's son was Jeatherai.

●

ULB:

¹⁹ The sons of Merari were Mahli and Mushi. These became the Levites' clans by their fathers' families. ²⁰ Gershom's descendants began with his son Libni. Libni's son was Jahath. His son was Zimmah. ²¹ His son was Joah. His son was Iddo. His son was Zerah. His son was Jeatherai.

translationWords:

- [clan](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [family](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)

translationNotes:

- **Merari ... Mahli ... Mushi ... Jahath ... Zimmah ... Joah ... Iddo ... Zerah ... Jeatherai** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:22-24

UDB:

²² Kohath's other son was Amminadab.

- Amminadab's son was Korah.
- Korah's son was Assir.
- ²³ Assir's son was Elkanah.
- Elkanah's son was Ebiasaph.
- Ebiasaph's son was Assir.
- ²⁴ Assir's son was Tahath.
- Tahath's son was Uriel.
- Uriel's son was Uzziah.
- Uzziah's son was Shaul.

ULB:

²² Kohath's descendants began with his son Amminadab. His son was Korah. His son was Assir. ²³ His son was Elkanah. His son was Ebiasaph. His son was Assir. ²⁴ His son was Tahath. His son was Uriel. His son was Uzziah. His son was Shaul.

translationWords:

- **Korah**

translationNotes:

- **Amminadab ... Korah ... Assir ... Elkanah ... Ebiasaph ... Tahath ... Uriel ... Uzziah ... Shaul**
- These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ Elkanah's other sons were Amasai and Ahimoth.

- ²⁶ Ahimoth's son was Elkanah.
- Elkanah's son was Zophai.
- Zophai's son was Nahath.
- ²⁷ Nahath's son was Eliab.
- Eliab's son was Jeroham.
- Jeroham's son was Elkanah.
- Elkanah's son was Samuel.

ULB:

²⁵ The sons of Elkanah were Amasai, Ahimoth, and Elkanah. ²⁶ The son of this second Elkanah was Zophai. His son was Nahath. ²⁷ His son was Eliab. His son was Jeroham. His son was Elkanah.

translationWords:**translationNotes:**

- **Elkanah ... Amasai ... Ahimoth ... Zophai ... Nahath ... Eliab ... Jeroham** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:28-30**UDB:**

²⁸ Samuel's oldest son was Joel; his other son was Abijah.

- ²⁹ Merari's oldest son was Mahli.
 - Mahli's son was Libni.
 - Libni's son was Shimei.
 - Shimei's son was Uzzah.
 - ³⁰ Uzzah's son was Shimea.
 - Shimea's son was Haggiah.
 - Haggiah's son was Asaiah.

ULB:

²⁸ The sons of Samuel were the firstborn, Joel, and Abijah, the secondborn. ²⁹ The son of Merari was Mahli. His son was Libni. His son was Shimei. His son was Uzzah. ³⁰ His son was Shimea. His son was Haggiah. His son was Asaiah.

translationWords:

- Samuel
- firstborn
- Abijah
- Shimei

translationNotes:

- Joel ... Merari ... Mahli ... Libni ... Shimei ... Uzzah ... Shimea ... Haggiah ... Asaiah - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- secondborn - "son born next"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:31-32

UDB:

³¹ After the sacred chest was brought to Jerusalem, King David appointed some of the men who were descendants of Levi to be in charge of the music in the place where the people worshiped Yahweh. ³² Those musicians first sang and played their instruments in the sacred tent, which was also called the tent of meeting, and they continued to do that until Solomon's workers built the temple of Yahweh in Jerusalem. In all their work, they obeyed the instructions that David had given them.

ULB:

³¹ These are the names of the men whom David put in charge of music in the house of Yahweh, after the ark came to rest there. ³² They served by singing before the tabernacle, the tent of meeting, until Solomon had built the house of Yahweh in Jerusalem. They fulfilled their duties according to the instructions given to them.

translationWords:

- [David](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [tent](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **the ark came to rest there** - "the people of Israel placed the ark there"
- **the tabernacle, the tent of meeting** - Possible meanings are 1) that "the tent of meeting" specifies the other name for "the tabernacle" (UDB) or 2) "the sanctuary of the tent of meeting." (See: [Doublet](#))
- **They fulfilled their duties according to the instructions given to them** - AT: "The singers obeyed David's instructions" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)

- 1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 6:33-35

UDB:

³³ Here is a list of the musicians and their sons:

- From Kohath's descendants there was Heman, the leader of the singers.
 - Heman was the son of Joel.
 - Joel was the son of Samuel.
 - ³⁴ Samuel was the son of Elkanah.
 - Elkanah was the son of Jeroham.
 - Jeroham was the son of Eliel.
 - Eliel was the son of Toah.
 - ³⁵ Toah was the son of Zuph.
 - Zuph was the son of Elkanah.
 - Elkanah was the son of Mahath.
 - Mahath was the son of Amasai.
 -

ULB:

³³ These were those who served with their sons. From the clans of the Kohathites came Heman the musician. Here were his ancestors, going back in time: Heman was the son of Joel. Joel was the son of Samuel. ³⁴ Samuel was the son of Elkanah. Elkanah was the son of Jeroham. Jeroham was the son of Eliel. Eliel was the son of Toa. ³⁵ Toa was the son of Zuph. Zuph was the son of Elkanah. Elkanah was the son of Mahath. Mahath was the son of Amasai. Amasai was son of Elkanah.

translationWords:

- son, son of
- clan
- Joel
- Samuel

translationNotes:

- **These were those** - "These were the musicians"
- **Kohathites** - This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **going back in time** - This means the list is going in order from the most recent to the oldest.
- **Heman ... Jeroham ... Eliel ... Toa ... Zuph ... Mahath** - These are the names of men.
- **Elkanah ... Amasai** - See how you translated these men's names in [6:25](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:36-38

UDB:

³⁶ Amasai was the son of another man whose name was Elkanah.

- Elkanah was the son of Joel.
- Joel was the son of Azariah.
- Azariah was the son of Zephaniah.
- ³⁷ Zephaniah was the son of Tahath.
- Tahath was the son of Assir.
- Assir was the son of Ebiasaph.
- Ebiasaph was the son of Korah.
- ³⁸ Korah was the son of Izhar.
- Izhar was the son of Kohath.
- Kohath was the son of Levi.
- Levi was the son of Jacob.

ULB:

³⁶ Elkanah was the son of Joel. Joel was the son of Azariah. Azariah was the son of Zephaniah. ³⁷ Zephaniah was the son of Tahath. Tahath was the son of Assir. Assir was the son of Ebiasaph. Ebiasaph was the son of Korah. ³⁸ Korah was the son of Izhar. Izhar was the son of Kohath. Kohath was the son of Levi. Levi was the son of Israel.

translationWords:

- [Azariah](#)
- [Zephaniah](#)
- [Korah](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **Tahath ... Assir ... Ebiasaph ... Izhar ... Kohath** - These are names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 06 General Notes
- **1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 6:39-43

UDB:

³⁹ Heman's helper was Asaph. His group stood at the right side of Heman.

- Asaph was the son of Berekiah.
- Berekiah was the son of Shimea.
- ⁴⁰ Shimea was the son of Michael.
- Michael was the son of Baaseiah.
- Baaseiah was the son of Malkijah.
- ⁴¹ Malkijah was the son of Ethni.
- Ethni was the son of Zerah.
- Zerah was the son of Adaiah.
- ⁴² Adaiah was the son of Ethan.
- Ethan was the son of Zimmah.
- Zimmah was the son of Shimei.
- ⁴³ Shimei was the son of Jahath.
- Jahath was the son of Gershon,
- and Gershon was the son of Levi.

ULB:

³⁹ Heman's colleague was Asaph, who stood at his right hand. Asaph was the son of Berechiah. Berechiah was the son of Shimea. ⁴⁰ Shimea was the son of Michael. Michael was the son of Baaseiah. Baaseiah was the son of Malchijah. ⁴¹ Malchijah was the son of Ethni. Ethni was the son of Zerah. Zerah was the son of Adaiah. ⁴² Adaiah was the son of Ethan. Ethan was the son of Zimmah. Zimmah was the son of Shimei. ⁴³ Shimei was the son of Jahath. Jahath was the son of Gershom. Gershom was the son of Levi.

translationWords:

- Asaph
- right hand

translationNotes:

- Berechiah ... Shimea ... Michael ... Baaseiah ... Malchijah ... Ethni ... Zerah ... Adaiah ... Ethan ... Zimmah ... Shimei ... Jahath ... Gershom - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- colleague - "fellow worker"

- **who stood at his right hand** - The authority of a person is described by where they stand. The right side of a person is the place where the person with the most authority stood. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:44-47**UDB:**

⁴⁴ A group of singers from Merari's family helped Heman and Asaph. They stood at the left of Heman. The leader of this group was Ethan son of Kishi.

- Kishi was the son of Abdi.
- Abdi was the son of Malluch.
- ⁴⁵ Malluch was the son of Hashabiah.
- Hashabiah was the son of Uzziah.
- Uzziah was the son of Hilkiyah.
- ⁴⁶ Hilkiyah was the son of Amzi.
- Amzi was the son of Bani.
- Bani was the son of Shemer.
- ⁴⁷ Shemer was the son of Mahli.
- Mahli was the son of Mushi.
- Mushi was the son of Merari,
- and Merari was the son of Levi.

ULB:

⁴⁴ At Heman's left hand were his colleagues the sons of Merari. They included Ethan son of Kishi. Kishi was the son of Abdi. Abdi was the son of Malluch. ⁴⁵ Malluch was the son of Hashabiah. Hashabiah was the son of Amaziah. Amaziah was the son of Hilkiyah. ⁴⁶ Hilkiyah was the son of Amzi. Amzi was the son of Bani. Bani was the son of Shemer. ⁴⁷ Shemer was the son of Mahli. Mahli was the son of Mushi. Mushi was the son of Merari. Merari was the son of Levi.

translationWords:

- son, son of
- Levite, Levi

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **At Heman's left hand** - AT: "Standing on Heman's left side"
- **colleagues** - "fellow workers"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:48

UDB:

⁴⁸ The other descendants of Levi were appointed to do other work in the sacred tent, the place where the people worshiped God.

ULB:

⁴⁸ Their associates, the Levites, were assigned to do all the work for the tabernacle, the house of God.

translationWords:

- [assign, assigned](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

translationNotes:

- **Their associates, the Levites, were assigned to do** - AT: "It was the duty of their fellow workers, the Levites, to do" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:49**UDB:**

⁴⁹ Aaron and his descendants were the ones who placed on the altar the sacrifices that were to be burned completely, and they burned incense on another altar. Those sacrifices were in order that Yahweh would no longer be angry with the people of Israel for having sinned. Those men also did other work in the very holy place in the sacred tent, obeying the instructions that Moses, who served God well, had given to them.

-

ULB:

⁴⁹ Aaron and his sons made the offerings on the altar for burnt offerings; and the offering on the incense altar for all the work on the most holy place. These offerings made atonement for Israel, according to all that Moses the servant of God had commanded.

translationWords:

- Aaron
- son, son of
- sacrifice, offering
- altar
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- altar of incense
- holy place, most holy place
- atonement, atone
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Moses
- servant, slave, slavery
- God
- command, to command, commandment

translationNotes:

- **These offerings made atonement for Israel** - AT: "These offerings were to make atonement for the sins of the people of Israel"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 06 General Notes
- **1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 6:50-53

UDB:

⁵⁰ These were the descendants of Aaron:

- Aaron's son was Eleazar.
- Eleazar's son was Phinehas.
- Phinehas's son was Abishua.
- ⁵¹ Abishua's son was Bukki.
- Bukki's son was Uzzi.
- Uzzi's son was Zerahiah.
- ⁵² Zerahiah's son was Meraioth.
- Meraioth's son was Amariah.
- Amariah's son was Ahitub.
- ⁵³ Ahitub's son was Zadok,
- and Zadok's son was Ahimaaz.

ULB:

⁵⁰ Aaron's descendants are reckoned as follows: Aaron's son was Eleazar. Eleazar's son was Phinehas. Phinehas's son was Abishua. ⁵¹ Abishua's son was Bukki. Bukki's son was Uzzi. Uzzi's son was Zerahiah. ⁵² Zerahiah's son was Meraioth. Meraioth's son was Amariah. Amariah's son was Ahitub. ⁵³ Ahitub's son was Zadok. Zadok's son was Ahimaaz.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from
- Phinehas
- Zadok

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Aaron's descendants are reckoned as follows** - AT: "These were the descendants of Aaron"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:54-56

UDB:

⁵⁴ Here is a list of the places where Aaron's descendants lived. Those who were descendants of Kohath were the first group to be allotted cities to live in.

⁵⁵ They were allotted the city of Hebron in Judah and the pastureland around the city,
⁵⁶ but the fields farther from the city and the villages near the city were given to Caleb's son of Jephunneh.

ULB:

⁵⁴ These are the locations where Aaron's descendents were assigned to live, that is, for the descendants of Aaron who were from the clans of the Kohathites (the first lot was theirs). ⁵⁵ To them they gave Hebron in the land of Judah and its pasturelands, ⁵⁶ but the fields of the city and its villages they gave to Caleb son of Jephunneh.

translationWords:

- [clan](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [Hebron](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Caleb](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **These are the locations where Aaron's descendents were assigned to live, that is, for the descendants of Aaron who were from the clans of the Kohathites (the first lot was theirs)** - AT: "These are the places where Aaron's descendants, the clans of the Kohathites, lived (lots were cast to determine where they would live)"
- **Kohathites** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 6:33](#).
- **To them they gave Hebron** - AT: "They gave Hebron to them"
- **but the fields of the city and its villages they gave to Caleb son of Jephunneh** - AT: "Caleb and his family went to live in the fields of Hebron and the surrounding villages"
- **pasturelands** - This is a grassy land where animals eat.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 06 General Notes
- 1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 6:57-58

UDB:

⁵⁷ The descendants of Aaron who were descendants of Kohath were allotted Hebron, one of the cities to which people could flee and be protected if they accidentally killed someone. They also were allotted the towns and pastureland near Libnah, Jattir, Eshtemoa, ⁵⁸ Hilan, Debir,

ULB:

⁵⁷ To the descendants of Aaron they gave: Hebron (a city of refuge), and Libnah with its pasturelands, Jattir, Eshtemoa with its pasturelands, ⁵⁸ Hilan with its pasturelands, and Debir with its pasturelands.

translationWords:

- [refuge, shelter](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:59-60

UDB:

⁵⁹ Ashan, Juttah, and Beth Shemesh. ⁶⁰ They were also allotted the cities of Gibeon, Geba, Alemeth, and Anathoth from the tribe of Benjamin.

Altogether, these clans descended from Kohath were allotted thirteen cities.

ULB:

⁵⁹ They gave the descendants of Aaron: Ashan with its pasturelands and Beth Shemesh with its pasturelands; ⁶⁰ and from the tribe of Benjamin they were given Geba with its pasturelands, Alemeth with its pasturelands, and Anathoth with its pasturelands. All their cities numbered thirteen.

translationWords:

- [Aaron](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **All their cities numbered thirteen** - AT: "They had a total of 13 cities" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:61-62

UDB:

⁶¹ The other clans descended from Kohath were allotted ten cities from the clans of the tribe of Manasseh that lived west of the Jordan River.

⁶² The descendants of Gershom were allotted thirteen cities and towns from the tribes of Issachar, Asher, Naphtali, and the part of the tribe of Manasseh that lived in the region of Bashan on the east side of the Jordan River.

ULB:

⁶¹ To the rest of Kohath's descendants they gave by lot ten cities from the half tribe of Manasseh.

⁶² To Gershom's descendants in their various clans were given thirteen cities from the tribes of Issachar, Asher, Naphtali, and the half tribe of Manasseh in Bashan.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from
- lots, casting lots
- Manasseh
- Issachar
- Asher
- Naphtali
- Bashan

translationNotes:

- **To Gershom's descendants in their various clans were given thirteen cities** - "The clans of Gershom's descendants gained 13 cities" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Kohath ... Gershom** - See how you translated these in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:63-65

UDB:

⁶³ The descendants of Merari were allotted twelve cities and towns from the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and Zebulun.

⁶⁴ The leaders of Israel allotted those towns and the nearby pasturelands to the descendants of Levi.

⁶⁵ They also allotted to them the cities and towns from the tribes of Judah, Simeon, and Benjamin that were listed previously.

ULB:

⁶³ To Merari's descendants they gave twelve cities, according to their clans, from the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and Zebulun. ⁶⁴ So the people of Israel gave these cities with their pasturelands to the Levites. ⁶⁵ They assigned by lot the towns mentioned earlier from the tribes of Judah, Simeon, and Benjamin.

translationWords:

- [Reuben](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Zebulun](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [assign, assigned](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Simeon](#)

translationNotes:

- **Merari** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).
- **the towns mentioned earlier from** - AT: "those towns from"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:66-69

UDB:

⁶⁶ Some of the descendants of Kohath were allotted towns from the tribe of Ephraim.

⁶⁷ They were allotted Shechem, which was one of the cities to which people could flee and be protected if they accidentally killed someone, along with the nearby pastureland in the hills of Ephraim. They were also allotted these towns and pastureland near them: Gezer, ⁶⁸ Jokmeam, Beth Horon, ⁶⁹ Aijalon, and Gath Rimmon.

ULB:

⁶⁶ To some of the Kohathite clans they gave cities from the tribe of Ephraim. ⁶⁷ They gave them: Shechem (a city of refuge) with its pasturelands in the hill country of Ephraim, Gezer with its pasturelands, ⁶⁸ Jokmeam with its pasturelands, Beth Horon with its pasturelands, ⁶⁹ Aijalon with its pasturelands, and Gath Rimmon with its pasturelands.

translationWords:

- [clan](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [refuge, shelter](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Kohathite** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 6:33](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:70**UDB:**

⁷⁰ The other descendants of Kohath were allotted the cities of Aner and Bileam and the nearby pastureland from the part of the tribe of Manasseh that lives west of the Jordan River.

ULB:

⁷⁰ The half tribe of Manasseh gave the Kohathites: Aner with its pasturelands and Bileam with its pasturelands. These became the possessions of the rest of the Kohathite clans.

translationWords:

- [tribe](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [clan](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:71-73

UDB:

⁷¹ The descendants of Gershom, who were part of the tribe of Manasseh, lived east of the Jordan River. They were allotted the cities and towns and pastureland near them: Golan in the regions of Bashan and Ashtaroth.

- ⁷² From the tribe of Issachar they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Kedesh, Daberath, ⁷³ Ramoth, and Anem.
-

ULB:

⁷¹ To Gershom's descendants out of the clans of the half tribe of Manasseh, they gave: Golan in Bashan with its pasturelands and Ashtaroth with its pasturelands. ⁷² The tribe of Issachar gave to Gershom's descendants: Kedesh with its pasturelands, Daberath with its pasturelands, ⁷³ Ramoth with its pasturelands, and Anem with its pasturelands.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from
- Manasseh
- Bashan
- Issachar
- Kedesh
- Ramoth

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Gershom** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:74-76**UDB:**

⁷⁴ From the tribe of Asher they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Mashal, Abdon,
⁷⁵ Hukok, and Rehob.

- ⁷⁶ From the tribe of Naphtali they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Kedesh in the region of Galilee, and the cities of Hammon and Kiriathaim.

ULB:

⁷⁴ Issachar received from the tribe of Asher: Mashal with its pasturelands, Abdon with its pasturelands, ⁷⁵ Hukok with its pasturelands, and Rehob with its pasturelands. ⁷⁶ They received from the tribe of Naphtali: Kedesh in Galilee with its pasturelands, Hammon with its pasturelands, and Kiriathaim with its pasturelands.

translationWords:

- [Asher](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [Galilee, Galilean](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 6:77-79

UDB:

⁷⁷ The other descendants of Levi, those descended from Merari, were allotted towns and pasturelands from the tribe of Zebulun near Jokneam, Kartah, Rimmono, and Tabor.

- **78-79** From the tribe of Reuben they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Bezer in the wilderness, Jahzah, Kedemoth, and Mephaath. The tribe of Reuben lived east of the Jordan River, across from Jericho.
-

ULB:

⁷⁷ To the rest of the Levites, Merari's descendants, were given from the tribe of Zebulun: Rimmono with its pasturelands and Tabor with its pasturelands. **78-79** To them were also given, on the other side of the Jordan at Jericho, on the river's east side: Bezer in the desert with its pasturelands, Jahzah with its pasturelands, Kedemoth with its pasturelands, and Mephaath with its pasturelands. These were given from the tribe of Reuben.

translationWords:

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Zebulun](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [Jericho](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Reuben](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Merari** - See how you translated this in [6:1](#).
- **Merari's ... pasturelands** - "the tribe of Zebulun gave Merari's descendants Rimmono with its pasturelands and Tabor with its pasturelands" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **To them were also given ... the tribe of Reuben** - The information in [6:78-79](#) has been rearranged so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))
- **To them were also given** - "They also gained"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 06 General Notes
- 1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 6:80-81

UDB:

⁸⁰ From the tribe of Gad, they were allotted cities and towns and pastureland near Ramoth in the region of Gilead, Mahanaim, ⁸¹ Heshbon, and Jazer.

ULB:

⁸⁰ The Levites received from the tribe of Gad: Ramoth in Gilead with its pasturelands, Mahanaim with its pasturelands, ⁸¹ Heshbon with its pasturelands, and Jazer with its pasturelands.

translationWords:

- [tribe](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Gilead](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 06 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the descendants of Issachar, Benjamin, Ephraim, Asher and Manasseh living west of the Jordan River.

This chapter indents some of the lines of 7:20-27 because they are long lists.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 07:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 7:1-3

UDB:

¹ Issachar's four sons were Tola, Puah, Jashub, and Shimron.

- ² Tola's sons were Uzzi, Rephaiah, Jeriel, Jahmai, Ibsam, and Samuel. They were all leaders of the clans descended from them.
 - In the record of Tola's descendants were the names of 22,600 men who were able to be in the army during the time that David was the king of Israel.
- ³ Uzzi's son was Izrahiah. Izrahiah's five sons were Michael, Obadiah, Joel, and Isshiah. Izrahiah and his sons were all leaders of their clans.
 -

ULB:

⁷ ¹ Issachar's four sons were Tola, Puah, Jashub, and Shimron. ² The sons of Tola were Uzzi, Rephaiah, Jeriel, Jahmai, Ibsam, and Shemuel. They were the heads of their fathers' houses, from the descendants of Tola and they were listed as mighty warriors among their generation. They numbered 22,600 in the days of David. ³ Uzzi's son was Izrahiah. His sons were Michael, Obadiah, Joel, and Isshiah, all five of them were clan leaders.

translationWords:

- [Issachar](#)
- [David](#)
- [Obadiah](#)
- [Joel](#)
- [clan](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#)
- **They numbered 22,600** - "There were twenty two thousand six hundred men"
- **in the days of David** - AT: "during David's life"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:4-5

UDB:

⁴ In the record of Izrahiah's descendants were the names of thirty-six thousand men who were able to be in the army because they had many wives and children.

- ⁵ In the records of the clans descended from Issachar were the names of eighty-seven thousand men able to be in the army.
 -

ULB:

⁴ Along with them they had thirty-six thousand troops for battle, according to the lists belonging to their ancestors' clans, for they had many wives and sons. ⁵ Their brothers, the tribe of Issachar, had eighty-seven thousand fighting men, according to the lists belonging to their ancestors' clans.

translationWords:

- [clan](#)
- [brother](#)
- [tribe](#)

translationNotes:

- **Along with them they had** - AT: "Among them were"
- **thirty-six thousand troops for battle** - "36,000 soldiers who were ready for battle" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:6-7

UDB:

⁶ These are the descendants of Benjamin. The three sons of Benjamin were Bela, Beker, and Jediel.

- ⁷ Bela's five sons were Ezbon, Uzzi, Uzziel, Jerimoth, and Iri. They were all leaders of clans.
 - In the records of the clans descended from Bela there were names of 22,034 men who were able to be in the army.
 -

ULB:

⁶ Benjamin's three sons were Bela, Becher, and Jediel. ⁷ Bela's five sons were Ezbon, Uzzi, Uzziel, Jerimoth, and Iri. They were soldiers and originators of clans. Their people numbered 22,034 fighting men, according to the lists belonging to their ancestors' clans.

translationWords:

- [Benjamin](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#)
- **originators** - "fathers" or "ancestors"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:8-10

UDB:

⁸ Beker's sons were Zemirah, Joash, Eliezer, Elioenai, Omri, Jeremoth, Abijah, Anathoth, and Alemeth.

- ⁹ In the records of the clans descended from Beker were the names of 20,200 men and leaders of the clans who were able to be in the army.

¹⁰ Jediael's son was Bilhan. Bilhan's sons were Jeush, Benjamin, Ehud, Kenaanah, Zethan, Tarshish, and Ahishahar.

ULB:

⁸ Becher's sons were Zemirah, Joash, Eliezer, Elioenai, Omri, Jeremoth, Abijah, Anathoth, and Alemeth. All these were his sons. ⁹ The lists of their clans numbered 20,200 family leaders and fighting men. ¹⁰ The son of Jediael was Bilhan. Bilhan's sons were Jeush, Benjamin, Ehud, Chenaanah, Zethan, Tarshish, and Ahishahar.

translationWords:

- [family](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ They were all leaders of clans descended from them.

- There were 17,200 of them who were able to be in the army.

¹² Shuppim and Huppim were also members of this clan.

One of the descendants of Dan was Hushim.

ULB:

¹¹ All these were sons of Jediael. Listed in their clan lists were 17,200 leaders and fighting men fit for military service. ¹² (Shuppim and Huppim were sons of Ir, and Hushim was a son of Aher.)

translationWords:

- [serve, service](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jediael ... Ir ... Aher** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Listed in their clan lists were 17,200** - “The clan lists contained seventeen thousand two hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Shuppim ... Huppim ... Hushim** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:13**UDB:**

¹³ These are the descendants of Naphtali. Naphtali's sons were Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem. They were all descendants of Jacob's slave wife Bilhah.

-

ULB:

¹³ Naphtali's sons were Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shallum. These were Bilhah's grandsons.

translationWords:

- [Naphtali](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shallum** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Bilhah's grandsons** - AT: "the sons of Bilhah's son"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ These are the descendants of Manasseh. Manasseh had a slave wife who was from Aram. She was the mother of Asriel and Makir.

- Makir was the father of Gilead.
 - ¹⁵ Makir had two wives. They were from the clans of Huppim and Shuppim.
 - One of Makir's wives was named Maacah.
 - Makir had another son whose name was Zelophehad. Zelophehad had no sons; he had only daughters.
 - ¹⁶ Makir's wife Maacah gave birth to two sons whom she named Peresh and Sheresh. Sheresh's sons were Ulam and Rakem.
 -

ULB:

¹⁴ Manasseh had a male child named Asriel, whom his Aramite concubine bore. She also gave birth to Machir, Gilead's father. ¹⁵ Machir took a wife from the Huppites and Shuppites. A sister's name was Maacah. Another of Manasseh's descendants was Zelophehad, who had only daughters. ¹⁶ Maacah wife of Machir, bore a son and she called him Peresh. His brother's name was Sheresh, and his sons were Ulam and Rakem.

translationWords:

- [Manasseh](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [concubine](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [name](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Aramite** - This refers to a person from Aram, a region of Syria.
- **Aramite concubine bore** - AT: "Aramite concubine gave birth to"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 07 General Notes
- 1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 7:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ Ulam's son was Bedan.

- Those were descendants of Gilead son of Makir and grandson of Manasseh.
- ¹⁸ Makir's sister was Hammoleketh, who was the mother of Ishdod, Abi Ezer, and Mahlah.
- ¹⁹ Another son of Gilead was Shemida, whose sons were Ahian, Shechem, Likhi, and Aniam.
-

ULB:

¹⁷ Ulam's son was Bedan. These were the descendants of Gilead son of Machir son of Manasseh.

¹⁸ Gilead's sister Hammolecheth bore Ishhod, Abi Ezer, and Mahlah. ¹⁹ The sons of Shemida were Ahian, Shechem, Likhi, and Aniam.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ These are the descendants of Ephraim.

- One son of Ephraim was Shuthelah.
- Shuthelah's son was Bered.
- Bered's son was Tahath.
- Tahath's son was Eleadah.
- Eleadah's son was also named Tahath.
- ²¹ Tahath's son was Zabad.
- Zabad's son was Shuthelah.

Ephraim's other sons, Ezer and Elead, went to the city of Gath to steal some cows and sheep. But they were both killed by some of the men from that city. ²² Their father Ephraim cried for them for many days, and his family came to comfort him.

ULB:

²⁰ The descendants of Ephraim were as follows: Ephraim's son was Shuthelah. Shuthelah's son was Bered. Bered's son was Tahath. Tahath's son was Eleadah. Eleadah's son was Tahath. ²¹ Tahath's son was Zabad. Zabad's son was Shuthelah. (Ezer and Elead were killed by men of Gath, natives in the land, when they went to steal their cattle. ²² Ephraim their father mourned for them many days, and his brothers came to comfort him.

translationWords:

- Ephraim
- Gath
- mourn, mourning
- comfort, comforter

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Ezer and Elead were killed by men of Gath, natives in the land** - AT: "Men of Gath, the natives in the land, killed Ezer and Elead"
- **they went to steal their cattle** - AT: "the brothers went to steal the cattle from the people of Gath"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Then he and his wife slept together again; she became pregnant and gave birth to a son. Ephraim named him Beriah which resembles the word ‘trouble’ because of the trouble that his family had experienced. ²⁴ Ephraim’s daughter was Sheerah. Her workers built three towns: Lower Beth Horon, Upper Beth Horon, and Uzen Sheerah.

-

ULB:

²³ He slept with his wife. She conceived and bore a son. Ephraim called him Beriah, because tragedy had come to his family. ²⁴ His daughter was Sheerah, who built Lower and Upper Beth Horon and Uzen Sheerah.)

translationWords:

- [sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking](#)

translationNotes:

- **She conceived and bore a son** - “She became pregnant and gave birth to a son”
- **called him** - “named him”
- **Beriah ... Sheerah** - These are names of people. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Upper Beth Horon and Uzen Sheerah** - These are the names of places.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:25-27

UDB:

²⁵ Another son of Ephraim was Rephah.

- Rephah's son was Resheph.
- Resheph's son was Telah.
- Telah's son was Tahan.
- ²⁶ Tahan's son was Ladan.
- Ladan's son was Ammihud.
- Ammihud's son was Elishama.
- ²⁷ Elishama's son was Nun.
- Nun's son was Joshua, the man who led the Israelites after Moses died.

ULB:

²⁵ His son was Rephah. Rephah's son was Resheph. Resheph's son was Telah. Telah's son was Tahan. ²⁶ Tahan's son was Ladan. Ladan's son was Ammihud. Ammihud's son was Elishama. ²⁷ Elishama's son was Nun. Nun's son was Joshua.

translationWords:

- [Joshua](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:28-29

UDB:

²⁸ This is a list of the cities and areas where the descendants of Ephraim lived:

- Bethel and the nearby villages;
- Naaran to the east;
- Gezer to the west and the nearby villages; and
- Shechem and the nearby villages. Those villages extended north as far as Ayyah and the nearby villages.
- ²⁹ Along the border of the area where the descendants of Manasseh lived were these towns: Beth Shan, Taanach, Megiddo, and Dor, and the nearby villages.

The people who lived in all those places were descendants of Jacob's son Joseph.

-

ULB:

²⁸ Their possessions and residences were Bethel and its surrounding villages. They extended eastward to Naaran and westward to Gezer and its villages, and to Shechem and its villages to Ayyah and its villages. ²⁹ On the border with Manasseh were Beth Shan and its villages, Taanach and its villages, Megiddo and its villages, and Dor and its villages. In these towns the descendants of Joseph son of Israel lived.

translationWords:

- possess, possession
- Bethel
- Shechem
- Manasseh
- Joseph (OT)
- Jacob, Israel
- life, live, living, alive

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **residences were** - AT: "homes were in"
- **In these towns the descendants of Joseph son of Israel lived** - AT: "The descendants of Joseph, son of Israel, lived in these towns"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:30-32

UDB:

³⁰ Asher's sons were Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah. Their sister was Serah.

- ³¹ Beriah's sons were Heber and Malkiel.
 - Malkiel was the father of Birzaith
 - ³² Heber was the father of Japhlet, Shomer, and Hotham. Their sister was Shua.

-

ULB:

³⁰ Asher's sons were Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah. Serah was their sister. ³¹ Beriah's sons were Heber and Malchiel, who was the father of Birzaith. ³² Heber's sons were Japhlet, Shomer, and Hotham. Shua was their sister.

translationWords:

- [Asher](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:33-35

UDB:

³³ Japhlet's sons were Pasach, Bimhal, and Ashvath.

- ³⁴ Japhlet's younger brother was Shomer. Shomer's sons were Rohgah, Hubbah, and Aram.
- ³⁵ Shomer's younger brother was Hotham. Hotham's sons were Zophah, Imna, Shelesh, and Amal.
-

ULB:

³³ Japhlet's sons were Pasach, Bimhal, and Ashvath. These were Japhlet's children. ³⁴ Shomer, Japhlet's brother, had these sons: Rohgah, Jehubbah, and Aram. ³⁵ Shemer's brother, Helem, had these sons: Zophah, Imna, Shelesh, and Amal.

translationWords:

- [children, child](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:36-38

UDB:

³⁶ Zophah's sons were Suah, Harnepher, Shual, Beri, Imrah, ³⁷ Bezer, Hod, Shamma, Shilshah, Ithran whose other name was Jether, and Beera.

- ³⁸ Jether's sons were Jephunneh, Pispah, and Ara.

ULB:

³⁶ Zophah's sons were Suah, Harnepher, Shual, Beri, Imrah, ³⁷ Bezer, Hod, Shamma, Shilshah, Ithran, and Beera. ³⁸ Jether's sons were Jephunneh, Pispah, and Ara.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 7:39-40

UDB:

³⁹ Another descendant of Asher was Ulla, whose sons were Arah, Hanniel, and Rizia.

⁴⁰ All those men were descendants of Asher, and they were all leaders of their clans. They were brave warriors and excellent leaders. In the record of the clans that are descended from Asher are the names of twenty-six thousand men who were able to be in the army.

ULB:

³⁹ Ulla's sons were Arah, Hanniel, and Rizia. ⁴⁰ All these were descendants of Asher. They were ancestors of the clans, leaders of their families, distinguished men, fighting men, and chief among the leaders. There were twenty-six thousand men listed who were fit for military service, according to their numbered lists.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from
- clan
- family
- chief

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **distinguished men** - "important men"
- **There were twenty-six thousand men listed who were fit for military service, according to their numbered lists** - AT: "According to the clan records, there were 26,000 men who were able to serve in the military" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 07 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the genealogy of Saul's family.

This chapter indents some of the lines of 8:14-28, 33-40 because they are long lists.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 08:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 8:1-5

UDB:

¹ Benjamin had five sons: Bela, Ashbel, Aharah, ² Nohah, and Rapha.

- ³ Bela's sons were Addar, Gera, Abihud, ⁴ Abishua, Naaman, Ahoah, ⁵ Gera, Shephuphan, and Hiram.

○

ULB:

8 ¹ Benjamin's five sons were Bela his firstborn, Ashbel, Aharah, ² Nohah, and Rapha. ³ Bela's sons were Addar, Gera, Abihud, ⁴ Abishua, Naaman, Ahoah, ⁵ Gera, Shephuphan, and Hiram.

translationWords:

- Benjamin
- firstborn

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 8:6-7

UDB:

⁶ One of Gera's sons was Ehud. The descendants of Ehud were leaders of their clans who lived in the city of Geba, but they were forced to move to the city of Manahath. ⁷ Ehud's sons were Naaman, Ahijah, and Gera.

- Gera was the one who led them when they moved to Manahath. Gera was the father of Uzza and Ahihud.

ULB:

⁶ These were the descendants of Ehud who were heads of clans for the inhabitants of Geba, who were compelled to move to Manahath: ⁷ Naaman, Ahijah, and Gera. The last, Gera, led them in their move. He was the father of Uzza and Ahihud.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from
- head
- clan
- Naaman

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **were compelled to move** - “needed to move” or “had to move”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 8:8-11

UDB:

8-11 Another descendant of Benjamin was Shaharaim. He and his wife Hushim had two sons, Abitub and Elpaal. In the region of Moab, Shaharaim divorced Hushim and his other wife Baara. Then he married a woman whose name was Hodesh, and they had seven sons: Jobab, Zibia, Mesha, Malcam, Jeuz, Sakia, and Mirmah. They were all leaders of their clans.

•

ULB:

⁸ Shaharaim became the father of children in the land of Moab, after he had divorced his wives Hushim and Baara. ⁹ By his wife Hodesh, Shaharaim became the father of Jobab, Zibia, Mesha, Malcam, ¹⁰ Jeuz, Shachia, and Mirmah. These were his sons, leaders in their clans. ¹¹ He had already become the father of Abitub and Elpaal by Hushim.

translationWords:

- ancestor, father, forefather
- children, child
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- divorce
- clan

translationNotes:

- **Shaharaim ... Jobab ... Zibia ... Mesha ... Malcam ... Jeuz ... Shachia ... Mirmah ... Abitub ... Elpaal** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Hushim ... Baara ... Hodesh** - These are names of women.
- **By his wife Hodesh, Shaharaim became the father of** - AT: "Shaharaim and his wife Hodesh had the following sons:"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 8:12-13

UDB:

12-13 Elpaal's sons were Eber, Misham, Shemed, Beriah, and Shema. Shemed built the cities of Ono and Lod and their nearby villages. Beriah and Shema were leaders of their clans, who lived in the city of Aijalon. They forced the people who lived in the city of Gath to leave their city.

-

ULB:

¹² Elpaal's sons were Eber, Misham, and Shemed (who built Ono and Lod with its surrounding villages). ¹³ There were also Beriah and Shema. They were heads of clans living in Aijalon, who drove out the inhabitants of Gath.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Gath](#)

translationNotes:

- **Elpaal ... Eber ... Misham ... Shemed ... Beriah ... Shema** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Ono ... Lod ... Aijalon** - These are names of places.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 8:14-18

UDB:

14-16 Beriah's sons were Ahio, Shashak, Jeremoth, Zebadiah, Arad, Eder, Michael, Ishpah, and Joha.

- **17-18** Other descendants of Elpaal were also named Zebadiah, Meshullam, Hizki, Heber,
- Ishmerai, Izliah, and Jobab.
-

ULB:

¹⁴ Beriah had these sons: Ahio, Shashak, Jeremoth, ¹⁵ Zebadiah, Arad, Eder, ¹⁶ Michael, Ishpah, and Joha. **17-18** Elpaal had these sons: Zebadiah, Meshullam, Hizki, Heber, Ishmerai, Izliah, and Jobab.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Elpaal ... and Jobab** - The information in [8:17-18](#) has been rearranged so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 8:19-21

UDB:

19-21 Another descendant of Benjamin was Shimei. Shimei's descendants included Jakim, Zicri, Zabdi, Elienai, Zillethai, Eliel, Adaiah, Beraiah, and Shimrath.

-

ULB:

19-21 Shimei had these sons: Jakim, Zichri, Zabdi, Elienai, Zillethai, Eliel, Adaiah, Beraiah, and Shimrath.

translationWords:

- [Shimei](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The information in [8:19-21](#) has been rearranged so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 8:22-25

UDB:

22-25 Shashak's sons were Ishpan, Eber, Eliel, Abdon, Zicri, Haran, Hananiah, Elam, Anthothijah, Iphdeiah, and Penuel.

-

ULB:

22-25 Shashak had these sons: Ishpan, Eber, Eliel, Abdon, Zichri, Hanan, Hananiah, Elam, Anthothijah, Iphdeiah, and Penuel.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - The information in [8:22-25](#) has been rearranged so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: [Verse Bridges](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 8:26-28**UDB:**

26-27 Another descendant of Benjamin was Jeroham, whose sons were Shamsherai, Shehariah, Athaliah, Jaareshiah, Elijah, and Zicri.

²⁸ In the records of these clans it is written that all those men were leaders of their clans, and they lived in Jerusalem.

-

ULB:

26-27 Jeroham had these sons: Shamsherai, Shehariah, Athaliah, Jaareshiah, Elijah, and Zichri. ²⁸ These were heads of clans and leaders who lived in Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [head](#)
- [clan](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **These were heads of clans and leaders** - The words “heads of clans” and “leaders” mean the same thing. (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 8:29-31

UDB:

²⁹ Another descendant of Benjamin was Jeiel. He lived in the city of Gibeon, and he was the leader of those who lived there. His wife was Maacah. ³⁰ His oldest son was Abdon. His other sons were Zur, Kish, Baal, Ner, Nadab, ³¹ Gedor, Ahio, Zeker, and Mikloth.

-

ULB:

²⁹ The father of Gibeon, Jeiel, whose wife's name was Maacah, lived in Gibeon. ³⁰ His firstborn was Abdon, followed by Zur, Kish, Baal, Nadab, ³¹ Gedor, Ahio, and Zecher.

translationWords:

- [Gibeon, Gibeonite](#)
- [firstborn](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **The father of Gibeon, Jeiel, whose wife's name was Maacah, lived in Gibeon** - Here "father of" refers to Jewels' status as the leading person in the city of Gibeon. AT: "Jeiel, the leader of Gibeon, lived in Gibeon. His wife's name was Maacah" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **His firstborn** - "Jeiel's firstborn"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 8:32-34

UDB:

³² Mikloth was the father of Shimeah. All these sons of Jeiel also lived near their relatives in Jerusalem.

- ³³ Ner was the father of Kish, and Kish was the father of King Saul.
- Saul was the father of Jonathan, Malchishua, Abinadab, and Ishbaal.
- ³⁴ Jonathan's son was Merib Baal.
- Merib Baal was the father of Micah.
-

ULB:

³² Another of Jeiel's sons was Mikloth, who became the father of Shimeah. They also lived near their relatives in Jerusalem. ³³ Ner was the father of Kish. Kish was the father of Saul. Saul was the father of Jonathan, Malchishua, Abinadab, and Ishbaal. ³⁴ The son of Jonathan was Merib Baal. Merib Baal was the father of Micah.

translationWords:

- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [Jonathan](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 8:35-37

UDB:

³⁵ Micah's sons were Pithon, Melech, Tarea, and Ahaz.

- ³⁶ Ahaz was the father of Jehoaddah.
- Jehoaddah was the father of Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri.
- Zimri was the father of Moza.
- ³⁷ Moza was the father of Binea.
- The son of Binea was Raphah.
- The son of Raphah was Eleasah.
- The son of Eleasah was Azel.
-

ULB:

³⁵ The sons of Micah were Pithon, Melech, Tarea, and Ahaz. ³⁶ Ahaz became the father of Jehoaddah. Jehoaddah was the father of Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri. Zimri was the father of Moza. ³⁷ Moza was the father of Binea. Binea was the father of Raphah. Raphah was the father of Eleasah. Eleasah was the father of Azel.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 8:38-40

UDB:

³⁸ Azel had six sons: Azrikam, Bokeru, Ishmael, Sheariah, Obadiah, and Hanan.

- ³⁹ Azel's younger brother was Eshek.
- Eshek's oldest son was Ulam. His other sons were Jeush and Eliphelet.
 - ⁴⁰ Ulam's sons were brave warriors and good archers. Altogether they had 150 sons and grandsons.

All these were the descendants of Benjamin.

ULB:

³⁸ Azel had six sons: Azrikam, Bocheru, Ishmael, Sheariah, Obadiah, and Hanan. All these were sons of Azel. ³⁹ The sons of Eshek, his brother, were Ulam his firstborn, Jeush the second, and Eliphelet the third. ⁴⁰ Ulam's sons were fighting men and archers. They had many sons and grandsons, a total of 150. All these belonged to the descendants of Benjamin.

translationWords:

- [Obadiah](#)
- [archer](#)
- [son, son of](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#)
- **Jeush the second, and Eliphelet the third** - AT: "Jeush the 2nd son, and Eliphelet the 3rd son" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **They had many sons and grandsons, a total of 150** - AT: "They had a total of one hundred fifty sons and grandsons"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 08 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the genealogy of the people who returned to Jerusalem after the exile and the family of Saul.

This chapter indents some of the lines of 9:39-44 because they are long lists.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 09:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 9:1-3**UDB:**

¹ The names of all the people of Israel were listed in the scroll named “The Record of the Kings of Israel.”

Many of the people of Judah were captured and forced to go to Babylon. That happened because of the sins they had committed. ² The first people who returned to Judah many years later and lived in their own land and in their own cities and towns were some Israelite priests, other descendants of Levi, and men who worked in the temple.

³ Other people from the tribes of Judah, Benjamin, Ephraim, and Manasseh also returned to Judah and lived in Jerusalem. What follows is a list of those people of the tribe of Judah.

-

ULB:

9 ¹ So all Israel was recorded in genealogies. They were recorded in the Book of the Kings of Israel. As for Judah, they were carried away in exile to Babylon because of their sin. ² The first to resettle in their cities were some Israelites, priests, Levites, and temple servants. ³ Some descendants of Judah, Benjamin, Ephraim, and Manasseh lived in Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- kingdom of Israel
- king
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- exile, the Exile
- Babylon, Babylonian
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- priest, priesthood
- Levite, Levi
- temple
- servant, slave, slavery
- descendant, descended from
- Judah
- Benjamin
- Ephraim
- Manasseh
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **So all Israel was recorded in genealogies** - A genealogy refers to a record of a family descendants or a persons ancestors.
- **the Book of the Kings of Israel** - This refers to a book that no longer exists.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:4-6

UDB:

⁴ The tribe of Judah: Uthai son of Ammihud; Ammihud son of Omri; Omri son of Imri; Imri son of Bani; Bani was a descendant of Perez; Perez son of Judah.

- ⁵ Asaiah and his sons were descendants of Shelah. Asaiah was the oldest son in his family.
- ⁶ Jeuel and others of his relatives in Zerah's clan. There were 690 people in this clan.
-

ULB:

⁴ The settlers included Uthai son of Ammihud son of Omri son of Imri son of Bani, one of the descendants of Perez son of Judah. ⁵ Among the Shilonites were Asaiah the firstborn and his sons. ⁶ Among the descendants of Zerah was Jeuel. Their descendants numbered 690.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from
- firstborn
- son, son of

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#)
- **Shilonites** - This is the name of a people group descended from Shelah. It is a spelling variation for the Shelanites.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:7-9

UDB:

⁷ From the tribe of Benjamin: Sallu son of Meshullam; Meshullam son of Hodaviah; Hodaviah son of Hassenuah;

- ⁸ Ibneiah son of Jeroham;
- Elah son of Uzzi; Uzzi son of Micri;
- Meshullam son of Shephatiah; Shephatiah son of Reuel; Reuel son of Ibnijah.

- ⁹ In other records of the people descended from Benjamin, there are the names of 956 people who were living in Jerusalem. All these were leaders of their clans.

ULB:

⁷ Among the descendants of Benjamin were Sallu son of Meshullam son of Hodaviah son of Hassenuah. ⁸ There were also Ibneiah son of Jeroham; Elah son of Uzzi son of Michri; and Meshullam son of Shephatiah son of Reuel son of Ibnijah. ⁹ Their relatives written in the genealogical lists numbered 956. All these men were leaders in their ancestors' clans.

translationWords:

- [Jethro, Reuel](#)
- [written](#)
- [clan](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Some of the priests who returned to Judah were:

- Jedaiah, Jehoiarib, Jakin,
- ¹¹ and Azariah son of Hilkiah.
 - Hilkiah son of Meshullam;
 - Meshullam son of Zadok,
 - Zadok son of Meraioth;
 - Meraioth son of Ahitub;
 - Ahitub, who was in charge of all the men who took care of the temple.

●

ULB:

¹⁰ The priests were Jedaiah, Jehoiarib, and Jachin. ¹¹ There was also Azariah son of Hilkiah son of Meshullam son of Zadok son of Meraioth son of Ahitub, the one in charge of the house of God.

translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:12-13

UDB:

¹² Adaiah son of Jeroham;

- Jerohamson of Pashhur;
- Pashhur son of Malchijah;

Maasai son of Adiel;

- Adiel son of Jahzerah;
- Jahzerah son of Meshullam;
- Meshullam son of Meshillemith;
- Meshillemith son of Immer.

¹³ Altogether there were 1760 priests who returned to Judah. They were leaders of their clans, and they all were responsible for doing work in the temple of God.

ULB:

¹² There was Adaiah son of Jeroham son of Pashhur son of Malchijah. There was also Maasai son of Adiel son of Jahzerah son of Meshullam son of Meshillemith son of Immer. ¹³ Their relatives, who were leaders in their ancestors' clans, numbered 1,760. They were very capable men in the work in the house of God.

translationWords:

- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#)
- **They were very capable men in the work in the house of God** - AT: "These capable men worked in the house of God"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ From the descendants of Levi who returned to Judah there was: Shemaiah son of Hasshub;

- Hasshub son of Azrikam;
- Azrikam son of Hashabiah;
- Hashabiah was a descendant of Levi's youngest son Merari.

¹⁵ Other descendants of Levi who returned to Judah were: Bakbakkar, Heresh, Galal, and Mattaniah son of Mica;

- Mica son of Zicri;
- Zicri son of Asaph;

¹⁶ There was also Obadiah son of Shemaiah;

- Shemaiah son of Galal;
- Galal son of Jeduthun;

There was also Berekiah son of Asa;

- Asa son of Elkanah, who lived in one of the villages where the Netophath people lived.

ULB:

¹⁴ Among the Levites, there was Shemaiah son of Hasshub son of Azrikam son of Hashabiah, among the descendants of Merari. ¹⁵ There were also Bakbakkar, Heresh, Galal, and Mattaniah son of Mica son of Zichri son of Asaph. ¹⁶ There were also Obadiah son of Shemaiah son of Galal son of Jeduthun; and Berechiah son of Asa son of Elkanah, who lived in the villages of the Netophathites.

translationWords:

- **Levite, Levi**
- **Asaph**
- **Obadiah**

translationNotes:

- **Shemaiah ... Elkanah** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **among the descendants** - "one of the descendants"
- **Netophathites** - This is the name of a people group.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ From the descendants of Levi who returned to Judah who guarded the temple gates there were Shallum, Akkub, Talmon, Ahiman, and some of their relatives. Shallum was their leader. ¹⁸ Those gatekeepers from the tribe of Levi stood at the King's Gate on the east side of the city:

- ¹⁹ Shallum son of Kore:
- Kore son of Ebiasaph;
- Ebiasaph son of Korah.

Shallum and his relatives were gatekeepers, and they were responsible to guard the gates of the temple of Yahweh, as their ancestors had done.

ULB:

¹⁷ The doorkeepers were Shallum, Akkub, Talmon, Ahiman, and their descendants. Shallum was their leader. ¹⁸ Previously they stood guard at the king's gate on the east side for the camp of Levi's descendants. ¹⁹ Shallum son of Kore son of Ebiasaph, who as son of Korah, and his relatives from the house of his father, the Korahites, were in charge of the work of the service, they guarded the door to the tent, as their ancestors had guarded the camp of Yahweh, and they also had guarded the entrance.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from
- king
- gate, gate bar
- Korah
- ancestor, father, forefather
- tent
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **doorkeepers** - “guards” or “gatekeepers”
- **they stood guard at the king's gate on the east side for the camp of Levi's descendants** - “Levi's descendants guarded the king's gate on the east side of their camp”
- **the door to the tent ... the entrance** - These phrases both refer to the entrance of the tent of meeting, or the tabernacle.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Previously Phinehas son of Eleazar, had supervised the gatekeepers, and Yahweh was with Phinehas.

- ²¹ Zechariah son of Meshelemiah was the gatekeeper at the entrance of the temple.

ULB:

²⁰ Phinehas son of Eleazar had been in charge of them in the past, and Yahweh had been with him.

²¹ Zechariah son of Meshelemiah was guard of the entrance to the temple, the “tent of meeting.”

translationWords:

- [Phinehas](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)

translationNotes:

- **in charge of them** - AT: “in charge of the guards”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:22-24

UDB:

²² Altogether, there were 212 men who were chosen to guard the gates. Their names were written in the records of the clans in their villages. King David and the prophet Samuel appointed those men because those men were dependable. ²³ The work of those gatekeepers and their descendants was to guard the gates of the temple of Yahweh. The temple was built to replace the sacred tent. ²⁴ There were gatekeepers on each of the four sides of the temple, toward the east, west, north, and south.

ULB:

²² All those who were chosen as gatekeepers at the entrances numbered 212. Their names were recorded in the people's records in their villages. David and Samuel the seer had placed them into their positions of trust. ²³ So they and their children guarded the gates of the house of Yahweh, the tabernacle. ²⁴ The gatekeepers were posted on all four sides, toward the east, west, north, and south.

translationWords:

- chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect
- name
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- David
- Samuel
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- children, child
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- tabernacle

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#))
- **Their names were recorded in the people's records in their villages** - AT: "The records in peoples' villages included the names of these men" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **their children** - "their descendants"
- **gatekeepers were posted** - AT: "men guarded the entrances"
- **on all four sides, toward the east, west, north, and south** - AT: "all around" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:25-27

UDB:

²⁵ Sometimes it was necessary for the relatives of the gatekeepers who lived in those villages to come and help them. Each time some of them came, they helped the gatekeepers for seven days. ²⁶ There were four descendants of Levi who worked every day, and they supervised the gatekeepers. They also took care of the storerooms and other rooms in the temple of God. ²⁷ They remained awake all during the night to guard the temple, and each morning they opened the gates.

ULB:

²⁵ Their brothers, who lived in their villages, came in for seven-day rotations, in turn. ²⁶ But the four leaders of the gatekeepers, who were Levites, were assigned to guard the rooms and storerooms in the house of God. ²⁷ They would spend the night in their posts all around the house of God, for they were responsible for guarding it. They would open it each morning.

translationWords:

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [assign, assigned](#)

translationNotes:

- **Their brothers** - “The guards’ brothers”
- **came in for seven-day rotations, in turn** - AT: “would come to help for 7-day periods, taking turns” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **were assigned to guard the rooms** - AT: “guarded the rooms”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:28-29

UDB:

²⁸ Some of the gatekeepers took care of the articles that were in the temple. They also took care of the flour, wine, olive oil, incense, and spices that were used in the sacrifices. ²⁹ Other gatekeepers were appointed to take care of the other things in the temple.

ULB:

²⁸ Some of them were in charge of the temple's equipment; they counted the articles when they were brought in and when they were taken out. ²⁹ Some of them also were assigned to take care of the holy things, the equipment, and the supplies, including the fine flour, the wine, the oil, the frankincense, and the spices.

translationWords:

- [temple](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [oil](#)
- [frankincense](#)

translationNotes:

- **Some of them** - "Some of the guards"
- **they counted the articles when they were brought in and when they were taken out** - AT: "they counted the articles that people took out to use, and they counted the articles when people brought them back"
- **were assigned to take care of** - AT: "took care of" or "cared for" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:30-32

UDB:

³⁰ But some of the priests had the work of mixing the spices. ³¹ There was a descendant of Levi named Mattithiah, the oldest son of Shallum, who was a descendant of Korah. He was very dependable so they gave him the work of baking the bread that was used in the offerings on the altar. ³² Some of the gatekeepers who were descended from Kohath prepared the new loaves of bread to display before God, the loaves that were placed on the table inside the temple every Sabbath day.

ULB:

³⁰ Some of the priests' sons mixed the spices. ³¹ Mattithiah, one of the Levites, who was the firstborn of Shallum the Korahite, was in charge of preparing bread for the offerings. ³² Some of their brothers, descendants of the Kohathites, were in charge of the bread of the presence, to prepare it every Sabbath.

translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [Korah](#)
- [bread](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [Sabbath](#)

translationNotes:

- **Mattithiah ... Shallum** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Korahite ... Kohathites** - These are names of people groups.
- **bread of the presence** - See the Translation Word page about “bread” for the specific definition of “bread of the presence.”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:33-34

UDB:

³³ Some of the descendants of Levi were musicians who worked in the temple. The leaders of those families stayed in the rooms of the temple. They did not do any other work in the temple because they they were responsible to serve as musicians day and night.

³⁴ Those are the names of the leaders of the clans descended from Levi. Their names were written in the records of the clans. They all lived in Jerusalem.

-

ULB:

³³ The singers and Levite family leaders lived in rooms at the sanctuary when they were free from work, because they had to carry out their assigned tasks day and night. ³⁴ These were family leaders among the Levites, as listed in their genealogical records. They lived in Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- family
- sanctuary
- free, freedom, liberty
- works, deeds, work, acts
- assign, assigned
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **they were free from work** - AT: “they did not have to do other work” (See: **Idiom**)
- **had to carry out their assigned tasks** - AT: “had to complete their assigned task”
- **day and night** - This means “at all times” and can be translated using a phrase or word from your language or culture that gives the same meaning. (See: **Merism**)
- **These were family leaders among the Levites, as listed in their genealogical records** - AT: “The family history lists included the names of these Levite family leaders”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:35-37

UDB:

³⁵ One of the descendants of Benjamin, Jeiel, lived in the city of Gibeon. He was the city leader. His wife's name was Maacah.

- ³⁶ His oldest son was Abdon.
- His other sons were Zur, Kish, Baal, Ner, Nadab, ³⁷ Gedor, Ahio, Zechariah, and Mikloth.
 -

ULB:

³⁵ The father of Gibeon, Jeiel, whose wife's name was Maacah, lived in Gibeon. ³⁶ His firstborn son was Abdon, then his sons Zur, Kish, Baal, Ner, Nadab, ³⁷ Gedor, Ahio, Zechariah, and Mikloth.

translationWords:

- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Gibeon** - The first reference to Gibeon is to the person but the second reference to Gibeon is the city.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:38-40

UDB:

³⁸ Mikloth was the father of Shimeam. Jeiel's family lived near their relatives in Jerusalem.

- ³⁹ Ner was the father of Kish. Kish was the father of King Saul. Saul was the father of Jonathan, Malchishua, Abinadab, and Ishbaal.
- ⁴⁰ Jonathan's son was Merib Baal. Merib Baal was the father of Micah.
-

ULB:

³⁸ Mikloth was the father of Shimeam. They also lived near their brothers in Jerusalem. ³⁹ Ner was the father of Kish. Kish was the father of Saul. Saul was the father of Jonathan, Malchishua, Abinadab, and Ishbaal. ⁴⁰ The son of Jonathan was Merib Baal. Merib Baal was the father of Micah.

translationWords:

- [brother](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [Jonathan](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 9:41-44

UDB:

⁴¹ Micah's sons were Pithon, Melech, Tahrea, and Ahaz.

- ⁴² Ahaz was the father of Jadah. Jadah was the father of Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri.
- Zimri was the father of Moza. ⁴³ Moza was the father of Binea.
- The son of Binea was Rephaiah. The son of Rephaiah was Eleasah. The son of Eleasah was Azel.
- ⁴⁴ Azel had six sons: Azrikam, Bokeru, Ishmael, Sheariah, Obadiah, and Hanan.

ULB:

⁴¹ The sons of Micah were Pithon, Melech, Tahrea, and Ahaz. ⁴² Ahaz was the father of Jarah. Jarah was the father of Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri. Zimri was the father of Moza. ⁴³ Moza was the father of Binea. Binea was the father of Rephaiah. Rephaiah was the father of Eleasah. Eleasah was the father of Azel. ⁴⁴ Azel's six sons were Azrikam, Bocheru, Ishmael, Sheariah, Obadiah, and Hanan. These were Azel's sons.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 09 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The death of Saul

Saul died because he disobeyed God.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 10:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 10:1-3

UDB:

¹ The army of Philistia again fought against the Israelites. The Israelite soldiers ran away from them, and many Israelites were killed on Mount Gilboa. ² The soldiers of Philistia caught up with Saul and his sons, and they killed his sons Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malchishua. ³ The fighting was very fierce around Saul, and the archers shot Saul and wounded him severely.

ULB:

10 ¹ Now the Philistines fought against Israel. Every man of Israel fled from before the Philistines and fell down dead on Mount Gilboa. ² The Philistines closely pursued Saul and his son. The Philistines killed Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malchishua, his sons. ³ The battle went heavily against Saul, and the archers overtook him. He was in severe pain because of the archers.

translationWords:

- [Philistines](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [Jonathan](#)
- [archer](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Every man of Israel fled from before** - AT: "The army of Israel ran away from" (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **fell down dead** - AT: "died"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 10:4

UDB:

⁴ Saul said to the man who was carrying his weapons, “Take out your sword and kill me with it, in order that these heathen Philistines will not be able to injure me further and make fun of me while I am dying.” But the man who was carrying Saul’s weapons was terrified and refused to do that. So Saul took his own sword and fell on it and died.

ULB:

⁴ Then said Saul to his armor bearer, “Draw your sword and thrust me through with it. Otherwise, these uncircumcised will come and abuse me.” But his armor bearer would not, for he was very afraid. So Saul took his own sword and fell on it.

translationWords:

- [armor](#)
- [sword](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **thrust me through with it** - AT: “kill me with it” (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **Otherwise, these uncircumcised will come** - The reference to the “uncircumcised” here is an insult, indicating that these people are foreign and have no relationship with God. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **fell on it** - AT: “killed himself with it”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 10:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ When the man carrying his weapons saw that Saul was dead, he also threw himself on his own sword and died. ⁶ So Saul and three of his sons all died, and none of his descendants ever became king.

ULB:

⁵ When his armor bearer saw that Saul was dead, he likewise fell on his sword and died. ⁶ So Saul died, and his three sons, so all his household members died together.

translationWords:

- [household](#)

translationNotes:

- **and his three sons** - AT: “and his 3 sons died” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 10:7-8

UDB:

⁷ When the Israelites who were living in the valley saw that their army had run away and that Saul and his three sons were dead, they left their towns and ran away. Then the soldiers from Philistia came and occupied those towns.

⁸ The next day, when the Philistines came to take away the weapons of the dead Israelite soldiers, they found the corpses of Saul and his three sons on Mount Gilboa.

ULB:

⁷ When every man of Israel in the valley saw that they had fled, and that Saul and his sons were dead, they abandoned their cities and fled. Then the Philistines came and lived in them. ⁸ It came about on the next day, when the Philistines came to strip the dead, that they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **When every man of Israel** - AT: "When the men of Israel" (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **lived in them** - "lived in the Israelite cities"
- **It came about** - This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.
- **to strip the dead** - AT: "to take anything of value off of the dead bodies"
- **Saul and his sons fallen** - "Saul and his sons dead" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 10:9-10

UDB:

⁹ They took the clothes off Saul's corpse and cut off his head and took it and Saul's armor. ¹⁰ Then they sent messengers throughout their land, to proclaim the news throughout their own area, to their idols and to the other people. They put Saul's armor in the temple where their idols were, and they hung Saul's head in the temple of their god Dagon.

ULB:

⁹ They stripped him and took his head and his armor. They sent messengers throughout Philistia to carry the news to their idols and to the people. ¹⁰ They put his armor in the temple of their gods, and fastened his head to the temple of Dagon.

translationWords:

- armor
- send, send out, sent
- messenger
- Philistia
- idol, idolatrous
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- temple
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess

translationNotes:

- **They stripped him** - AT: "The Philistines removed everything from Saul's body"
- **They put his armor** - "The Philistines put Saul's armor"
- **Dagon** - This is the name of a false god. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 10:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ All the people who lived in Jabesh in the region of Gilead heard what the Philistines had done to Saul's corpse. ¹² So the bravest men of Jabesh went and got the corpses of Saul and his sons and brought them back to Jabesh. They buried their bones under a large tree in Jabesh. Then the people of Jabesh fasted for seven days.

ULB:

¹¹ When all Jabesh Gilead heard of all that the Philistines had done to Saul, ¹² all the fighting men went and took away the body of Saul and those of his sons, and brought them to Jabesh. They buried their bones under the oak in Jabesh and fasted seven days.

translationWords:

- [Gilead](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [body](#)
- [bury, buried, burial](#)
- [oak](#)
- [fast](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#)
- **When all Jabesh Gilead heard of all that the Philistines** - AT: "When the people of Jabesh Gilead heard what the soldiers of the Philistine army" (See: [Hyperbole Synecdoche](#))
- **their bones** - AT: "their bodies" or "their remains" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 10:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Saul died because he did not faithfully obey what Yahweh told him to do. He even went to a woman who talks to the spirits of dead people and asked her what he should do, ¹⁴ instead of asking Yahweh what he should do. So Yahweh caused him to die, and he appointed David son of Jesse, to be the king of Israel.

ULB:

¹³ So Saul died because he was unfaithful to Yahweh. He did not obey Yahweh's instructions, but asked for advice from someone who talked with the dead. ¹⁴ He did not seek guidance from Yahweh, so Yahweh killed him and turned over the kingdom to David son of Jesse.

translationWords:

- death, die, dead
- unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- Yahweh
- obey, obedient, obedience
- seek, sought
- kingdom
- David
- Jesse

translationNotes:

- **advice** - This is an opinion or suggestion about what the person should do.
- **talked with the dead** - AT: "claimed to talk with those who have died"
- **guidance** - This is help or advice about what he should do.
- **handed over the kingdom** - AT: "gave control of the people of Israel over to" (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 10 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of David begins here and continues throughout the remainder of this book.

Special concepts in this chapter

King David the military leader

David was made the king of all Israel and was the leader of their army. He conquered Jerusalem and strengthened its defenses. He had many brave men in his army that did great deeds. (See: [works](#), [deeds](#), [work](#), [acts](#))

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 11:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 11:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then the people of Israel came to David at the city of Hebron and said to him, "Listen, we have the same ancestors that you have. ² In the past, when Saul was our king, it was you who led our Israelite soldiers in our battles. You are the one to whom our Yahweh our God promised, 'You will be the leader of my people; you will be their king.'"

³ So all the Israelite elders came to David at Hebron. There David made a sacred agreement with them while Yahweh was listening. They anointed him with olive oil to set him apart to be the king of the Israelite people. That is what Yahweh had previously told the prophet Samuel would happen.

ULB:

11 ¹ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone. ² In the recent past, when Saul was king over us, it was you who led the Israelite army. Yahweh your God said to you, 'You will shepherd my people Israel, and you will become a ruler over my people Israel.'" ³ So all the elders of Israel came to the king at Hebron, and David made a covenant with them before Yahweh. They anointed David king over Israel. In this way, the word of Yahweh that had been declared by Samuel came true.

translationWords:

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- David
- Hebron
- flesh
- Saul (OT)
- king
- Yahweh
- God
- shepherd, to shepherd
- people of God, my people
- ruler, rulers, rule
- elder
- covenant
- anoint, anointed
- true, truth, come true
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Samuel

translationNotes:

- **we are your flesh and bone** - AT: “we are your relatives” or “we have the same ancestors as you” (See: [Idiom](#))
- **the word of Yahweh** - “the message of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:4-6

UDB:

⁴ David and all the Israelite soldiers went to Jerusalem. At that time, Jerusalem was called Jebus, and the people who lived there were the Jebus people group. ⁵ They said to David, “Your soldiers will not be able to get inside our city!” But David’s soldiers captured the city, even though it had strong walls around it, and since then it has been called the city of David.

⁶ What happened was this: David said to his soldiers, “The one who leads our soldiers to attack the Jebus people group will become the commander of all my army.” Joab son of Zeruiah, led the soldiers, so he became the commander of all the army.

ULB:

⁴ David and all Israel went to Jerusalem (that is, Jebus). Now the Jebusites, the inhabitants of the land, were there. ⁵ The inhabitants of Jebus said to David, “You will not come in here.” But David took the stronghold of Zion, that is, the city of David. ⁶ David had said, “Whoever attacks the Jebusites first will become a commander.” So Joab son of Zeruiah attacked first, so he was made a commander.

translationWords:

- Jerusalem
- Jebusites, Jebus
- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- Zion, Mount Zion
- city of David
- commander, command
- Joab

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Jebus** - This was the temporary name for Jerusalem after Jebusites conquered the city, before the Israelites conquered it. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **But David took** - AT: “But David’s army defeated” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **that is, the city of David** - AT: “and they called it the city of David”
- **so he was made a commander** - AT: “so David made Joab a commander” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:7-9

UDB:

⁷ After they captured the city with its strong walls around it, David moved there. That is why they named it the city of David. ⁸ David's workers rebuilt the city, starting where the land was filled in and extending to the wall that was around the city. Joab's men repaired the other parts of the city. ⁹ David became more and more powerful because Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, was with him.

ULB:

⁷ Then David began to live in the stronghold. So they called it the city of David. ⁸ He fortified the city around from the Millo and back to the surrounding wall. Joab fortified the rest of the city. ⁹ David became greater and greater because Yahweh of hosts was with him.

translationWords:

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host](#)

translationNotes:

- **He fortified the city around** - AT: "The Israelites made the wall around the city stronger"
- **the Millo** - This refers to a fortress in Jerusalem, probably built by the Jebusites. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **was with him** - AT: "helped him" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Yahweh had promised that David would become the king. And all the Israelite people were happy that David was their king.

There were many soldiers who helped David's kingdom to remain strong. ¹¹ This is a list of David's most outstanding warriors:

Jashobeam was from the Hacmon clan. He was the leader of David's three most powerful soldiers. One time he fought against three hundred enemies and killed them all with his spear.

ULB:

¹⁰ These were the leaders David had, who showed themselves strong with him in his kingdom, together with all Israel, to make him king, obeying the word of Yahweh concerning Israel. ¹¹ This is a list of David's elite soldiers: Jashobeam, the son of a Hachmonite, was commander of the thirty. He killed three hundred men with his spear on one occasion.

translationWords:

- [kingdom](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [spear](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#)
- **the leaders David had** - AT: "the leaders under David"
- **who showed themselves strong with him in his kingdom** - AT: "who helped David's kingdom to remain strong"
- **the thirty** - AT: "the 30 mighty men" (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **on one occasion** - AT: "at one time"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:12-14

UDB:

¹² Next was Eleazar son of Dodo, from the clan of Ahoh. He was one of David's three mighty men.

¹³ One day he was with David at Pas Dammim when the soldiers of Philistia gathered there for the battle. There was a field of barley there. At first the Israelite soldiers ran away from the soldiers of Philistia, ¹⁴ but then David and Eleazar stopped in the middle of the field and fought to defend it and killed many of the soldiers of Philistia. Yahweh enabled them to win a great victory on that day.

ULB:

¹² After him was Eleazar son of Dodo, the Ahohite, who was one of the three mighty men. ¹³ He was with David at Pasdammim, and there the Philistines assembled together for battle, where there was a barley field and the army fled from the Philistines. ¹⁴ They stood in the middle of the field. They defended it and cut down the Philistines and Yahweh rescued them with a great victory.

translationWords:

- [mighty, might](#)
- [David](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [barley](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **and cut down the Philistines.** - “and killed many of the Philistines.” - (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ One time three of David's thirty greatest warriors came to David when he was camping next to the huge rock outside the cave near Adullam. At that same time, the army of Philistia had camped in the Valley of Rephaim. ¹⁶ David was in a fortress, and some of the soldiers of Philistia were occupying Bethlehem. ¹⁷ One day David very much wanted some water to drink and said, "I wish that someone would bring me some water from the well near the gate at Bethlehem!"

ULB:

¹⁵ Then three of the thirty leaders went down to the rock to David, to the cave of Adullam. The army of the Philistines was camped in the Valley of Rephaim. ¹⁶ At that time David was in his stronghold, a cave, while the Philistines had established their camp at Bethlehem. ¹⁷ David was longing for water and said, "If only someone would give me water to drink from the well at Bethlehem, the well that is by the gate!"

translationWords:

- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)
- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
- [well, cistern](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **three of the thirty** - "3 of the 30" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **At that time David was in his stronghold, a cave, while the Philistines had established their camp at Bethlehem** - AT: "David was in a safe place in a cave while the Philistines' soldiers were guarding Bethlehem"
- **the Philistines had established their camp at Bethlehem** - "the Philistines had stationed soldiers in Bethlehem"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ So the three greatest warriors forced through the camp of Philistia soldiers and drew some water from the well, and brought it to David. But he would not drink it. Instead, he poured it out on the ground to be an offering to Yahweh. ¹⁹ He said, “Yahweh, it would certainly not be right for me to drink this water! That would be like drinking the blood of these men who were willing to die for me!” So he refused to drink it.

That was one of the things that David’s three greatest warriors did.

ULB:

¹⁸ So these three mighty men broke through the army of the Philistines and drew water out of the well of Bethlehem, the well at the gate. They took the water and brought it to David, but he refused to drink it. Instead, he poured it out to Yahweh. ¹⁹ Then he said, “Far be it far from me, Yahweh, that I should drink this. Should I drink the blood of men who have risked their lives?” Because they had put their lives at risk, he refused to drink it. These are things the three mighty men did.

translationWords:

- [blood](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **three mighty men** - “3 mighty men” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **well of Bethlehem, the well at the gate** - These two phrases refer to the same well. The second specifies which well in Bethlehem. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **Far be it far from me, Yahweh, that I should drink this.** - AT: “God, please never allow me to drink such a sacrifice at the costs of my men!” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **Should I drink the blood of men who have risked their lives?** - David is saying with this question that the water is precious because of the sacrifice made by those who obtained it. AT: “I would not drink the blood of men who are willing to die for me” or “I will not drink water that men have risked their lives to get” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Joab's younger brother Abishai was the leader of the greatest warriors (called "The Three") and they gave him the great honor. One time Abishai fought three hundred enemy soldiers with his spear, and he killed them all. ²¹ So he became as famous as the three greatest warriors (called "The Three"). He became their commander, even though "The Three" did not count him in their number.

ULB:

²⁰ Abishai brother of Joab, was captain over the Three. He once used his spear against three hundred and killed them. He is mentioned along with the Three. ²¹ Of the Three, he was given double honor and became their captain. Even though he was not one of them.

translationWords:

- [Joab](#)
- [spear](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **the Three** - "the Three mighty warriors" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **was captain over the Three** - AT: "Abishai was a leader of the three mighty warriors" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **he was given double honor and became their captain** - AT: "the soldiers had great respected for Abishai and they made him their leader, even though they did not count him as one of the Three warriors"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:22-23

UDB:

²² Jehoiada's son Benaiah was a brave soldier from the city of Kabzeel who did great deeds. He killed two of the best warriors from the Moab people group. One day he went down into a pit when snow was falling on the ground and killed a lion there. ²³ He also killed a soldier from Egypt who was two and one-third meters tall. The soldier from Egypt carried a spear that was as long as a weaver's rod. Benaiah had only a club, but he grabbed the other man's spear and killed him with it.

ULB:

²² Benaiah son of Jehoiada was a strong man who did mighty feats. He killed the two sons of Ariel of Moab. He also went down into a pit and killed a lion while it was snowing. ²³ He even killed an Egyptian, a man five cubits tall. The Egyptian had a spear like a weaver's beam, but he went down to him with only a staff. He seized the spear out of the Egyptian's hand and killed him with his own spear.

translationWords:

- [mighty, might](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [pit](#)
- [lion](#)
- [snow](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [spear](#)
- [staff](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **feats** - These are acts that show courage, strength, or skill.
- **while it was snowing** - AT: "during a snow storm"
- **five cubits** - (See: [Biblical Distance](#))
- **he went down to him** - AT: "Benaiah met the Egyptian"
- **a spear like a weaver's beam** - AT: "a very large spear" (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 11 General Notes
- 1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 11:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ Those are some of the things that Benaiah did. So he became as famous as the three greatest warriors. ²⁵ He was more honored than the other members of the group of thirty great warriors, but he did not become a member of the group of three most outstanding warriors. David appointed him to be the leader of his bodyguards.

-

ULB:

²⁴ Benaiah son of Jehoiada did these feats, and he was named alongside the three mighty men. ²⁵ He was more highly regarded than the thirty soldiers in general, but he was not regarded quite as highly as the three most elite soldiers. Yet David put him in charge of his bodyguard.

translationWords:

- [David](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **he was named alongside the three mighty men** - “he was as famous as the 3 mighty men” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **He was more highly regarded than the thirty soldiers in general, but he was not regarded quite as highly as the three most elite soldiers** - AT: “The people respected him more than the 30 soldiers, but not as much as the 3 most highly skilled soldiers” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **bodyguard** - This is a person or a group of people responsible for protecting somebody important.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:26-29

UDB:

²⁶ These are the names of the great warriors:

- Asahel, younger brother of Joab;
- Elhanan son of Dodo, from Bethlehem;
- ²⁷ Shammah, from the Harod;
- Helez, from the Pelon;
- ²⁸ Ira son of Ikkesh, from Tekoa;
- Abi Ezer, from Anathoth;
- ²⁹ Sibbecai, from Hushah;
- Ilai from Ahoh;
-

ULB:

²⁶ The mighty men were Asahel brother of Joab, Elhanan son of Dodo of Bethlehem, ²⁷ Shammoth the Harorite, Helez the Pelonite, ²⁸ Ira son of Ikkesh the Tekoite, Abi Ezer the Anathothite, ²⁹ Sibbecai the Hushathite, Ilai the Ahohite,

translationWords:

- [mighty, might](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:30-33

UDB:

³⁰ Maharai, from Netophah;

- Heled, the son of Baanah, also from Netophah;
- ³¹ Ithai, son of Ribai, from Gibeah in the land that belonged to the tribe of Benjamin;
- Benaiah, from Pirathon town;
- ³² Hurai, from the valleys near Mount Gaash;
- Abiel from the clan of Arabah;
- ³³ Azmaveth, from Baharum;
- Eliahba, from Shaalbon;
-

ULB:

³⁰ Maharai the Netophathite, Heled son of Baanah the Netophathite, ³¹ Ittai son of Ribai of Gibeah of Benjamin's descendants, Benaiah the Pirathonite, ³² Hurai of the valleys of Gaash, Abiel the Arbathite, ³³ Azmaveth the Baharumite, Eliahba the Shaalbonite,

translationWords:

- [Benjamin](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:34-37

UDB:

³⁴ The sons of Hashem from Gizon;

- Jonathan son of Shagee from the Harar;
- ³⁵ Ahiam son of Sharar from Harar;
- Eliphal son of Ur;
- ³⁶ Hepher from the Mekerath clan;
- Ahijah from the Pelon;
- ³⁷ Hezro from Carmel;
- Naarai son of Ezbai;
-

ULB:

³⁴ the sons of Hashem the Gizonite, Jonathan son of Shagee the Hararite, ³⁵ Ahiam son of Sacar the Hararite, Eliphal son of Ur, ³⁶ Hepher the Mecherathite, Ahijah the Pelonite, ³⁷ Hezro the Carmelite, Naarai son of Ezbai,

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:38-41

UDB:

³⁸ Joel the younger brother of Nathan;

- Mibhar son of Hagri;
- ³⁹ Zelek from the Ammon people group;
- Naharai, the man who carried Joab's weapons, from Beeroth;
- ⁴⁰ Ira and Gareb from Jattir;
- ⁴¹ Uriah, Bathsheba's husband, from the Heth people group;
- Zabad son of Ahlai;
-

ULB:

³⁸ Joel brother of Nathan, Mibhar son of Hagri, ³⁹ Zelek the Ammonite, Naharai the Berothite (the armor bearer of Joab son of Zeruiah), ⁴⁰ Ira the Ithrite, Gareb the Ithrite, ⁴¹ Uriah the Hittite, Zabad son of Ahlai,

translationWords:

- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)
- [armor](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Uriah](#)
- [Hittite](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:42-44

UDB:

⁴² Adina son of Shiza, a leader from the tribe of Reuben, who had thirty soldiers with him;

- ⁴³ Hanan son of Maacah;
- Joshaphat from Mithna;
- ⁴⁴ Uzzia from Ashterath;
- Shama and Jeiel, sons of Hotham, from Aroer.
-

ULB:

⁴² Adina son of Shiza the Reubenite (a chief of the Reubenites) and thirty with him, ⁴³ Hanan son of Maacah, and Joshaphat the Mithnite, ⁴⁴ Uzzia the Ashterathite, Shama and Jeiel sons of Hotham the Aroerite,

translationWords:

- chief

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **thirty with him** - “30 men with him” (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 11:45-47**UDB:**

⁴⁵ Jediael son of Shimri

- and his younger brother Joha, from Tiz town;
- ⁴⁶ Eliel from Mahavah;
- Jeribai and Joshaviah, sons of Elnaam;
- Ithmah from the Moab;
- ⁴⁷ Eliel and Obed,
- and Jaasiel from Zobah.

ULB:

⁴⁵ Jediael son of Shimri, Joha (his brother the Tizite), ⁴⁶ Eliel the Mahavite, Jeribai and Joshaviah sons of Elnaam, Ithmah the Moabite, ⁴⁷ Eliel, Obed, and Jaasiel the Mezobaite.

translationWords:

- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 11 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“[They] could use both the right hand and the left”

These soldiers were very skilled. They were able to fight with either hand. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

King David

This chapter records all those who supported David as king over Saul. The extent of this record shows that there was nearly universal support for David.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 12:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 12:1-2

UDB:

¹ David went to the city of Ziklag to escape from King Saul. While he was there, many warriors came and joined him, and they helped him when he fought battles. ² They carried bows and arrows. They were able to shoot arrows and to sling stones. They could use either their right arms or their left arms to do that. They were relatives of Saul from the tribe of Benjamin.

ULB:

12 ¹ These were the men who came to David to Ziklag, while he was still banished from the presence of Saul son of Kish. They were among the soldiers, his helpers in battle. ² They were armed with bows and could use both the right hand and the left in slinging stones and in shooting arrows from the bow. They were Benjamites, Saul's fellow tribesmen.

translationWords:

- [David](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [bow and arrow](#)
- [stone, stoning](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [tribe](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **while he was still banished from the presence of** - AT: “during the time when he could not be in the presence of”
- **They were armed with bows and could use both the right hand and the left** - AT: “Their weapons included bows, and they could use the bow with their right or left hands” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **slinging stones** - The sling was strip of leather that allowed a person to throw a stone a great distance. A stone was placed in the middle while the person held the ends and swung it around in a circle. When one end was released, the stone flew toward the target.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:3-4

UDB:

³ Their leader was Ahiezer. Next in command was Joash. They were both sons of Shemaah from the city of Gibeah. These are the names of some of those warriors:

- Jeziel and Pelet, sons of Azmaveth;
- Beracah;
- Jehu from the city of Anathoth;
- ⁴ Ishmaiah from the city of Gibeon, who was the leader of the thirty greatest warriors;
- Jeremiah, Jahaziel, Johanan, and Jozabad from the city of Gederah;
-

ULB:

³ The chief was Ahi Ezer, then Joash, both sons of Shemaah the Gibeathite. There were Jeziel and Pelet, sons of Azmaveth. There were also Beracah, Jehu the Anathothite, ⁴ Ishmaiah the Gibeonite, a soldier among the thirty (and in command of the thirty); Jeremiah, Jahaziel, Johanan, Jozabad the Gederathite,

translationWords:

- [chief](#)
- [Joash](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [Gibeon, Gibeonite](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **the thirty** - AT: “the 30 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:5-7

UDB:

⁵ Eluzai, Jerimoth, Bealiah, Shemariah, and Shephatiah from the city of Haruph;

- ⁶ Elkanah, Isshiah, Azarel, Joezer and Jashobeam, who were descendants of Korah;
- ⁷ Joelah and Zebadiah, sons of Jeroham, from the city of Gedor.

ULB:

⁵ Eluzai, Jerimoth, Bealiah, Shemariah, Shephatiah the Haruphite, ⁶ the Korahites Elkanah, Isshiah, Azarel, Joezer, Jashobeam, and ⁷ Joelah and Zebadiah, sons of Jeroham of Gedor.

translationWords:

- [Korah](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:8

UDB:

⁸ Some men from the tribe of Gad east of the Jordan River joined David when he was at his fortress in the caves in the desert. They were brave warriors who were trained for fighting battles and able to use shields and spears well. They were as fierce as lions, and they could run as fast as deer on the hills.

-

ULB:

⁸ Some Gadites joined David at the stronghold in the wilderness. They were fighting men, men trained for battle, who could handle shield and spear; whose faces were as fierce as the faces of lions. They were as swift as gazelles on the mountains.

translationWords:

- Gad
- stronghold, fortress, fortified
- desert, wilderness
- shield
- spear
- face
- lion

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **whose faces were as fierce as the faces of lions** - AT: “who were very fierce” (See: [Simile](#) and [Synecdoche](#))
- **They were as swift as gazelles** - AT: “They were very fast” (See: [Simile](#))
- **gazelles** - These are small animals that are graceful and fast, similar to deer.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:9-13

UDB:

⁹ Ezer was their leader.

- Next in command was Obadiah.
- Next was Eliab.
- ¹⁰ Next was Mishmannah.
- Next was Jeremiah.
- ¹¹ Next was Attai.
- Next was Eliel.
- ¹² Next was Johanan.
- Next was Elzabad.
- ¹³ Next was another man whose name was Jeremiah.
- The last was Macbannai.

ULB:

⁹ There were Ezer the leader, Obadiah the second, Eliab the third, ¹⁰ Mishmannah the fourth, Jeremiah the fifth, ¹¹ Attai the sixth, Eliel the seventh, ¹² Johanan the eighth, Elzabad the ninth, ¹³ Jeremiah the tenth, Machbannai the eleventh.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **second ... eleventh** - This lists these men in order of leadership. "2nd ... 3rd ... 4th ... 5th ... 6th ... 7th ... 8th ... 9th ... 10th ... 11th" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Those men from the tribe of Gad were all army officers. Some of them commanded one thousand soldiers, and some of them commanded one hundred soldiers. ¹⁵ They crossed to the west side of the Jordan River during March, at the time of the year when the river was flooded. They chased from there all the people who lived in the valleys on both sides of the river.

ULB:

¹⁴ These sons of Gad were leaders of the army. The least led a hundred, and the greatest led a thousand. ¹⁵ They crossed the Jordan in the first month, when it overflowed its banks, and chased away all those living in the valleys, both toward the east and toward the west.

translationWords:

- [son, son of](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)

translationNotes:

- **The least led a hundred** - This means that the smallest group of the army that a leader lead was 100. (See: [Numbers](#))
- **the greatest led a thousand** - This means that the largest group of the army that a leader lead was 1,000.
- **first month** - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on Western calendars. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Some other men from the tribe of Benjamin and from Judah also came to David in his fortress. ¹⁷ David went out of the cave to meet them and said to them, “If you have come peacefully to help me, I am eager to have to join with me. But if you have come to enable my enemies to capture me, even though I have not done anything to harm you, I hope that the God whom our ancestors worshiped will see it and condemn you.”

ULB:

¹⁶ Some of the men of Benjamin and Judah came to the stronghold to David. ¹⁷ David went out to meet them and addressed them: “If you have come in peace to me to help me, you may join me. But if you have come to betray me to my adversaries, may the God of our ancestors see and rebuke you, since I have done no wrong.”

translationWords:

- Benjamin
- Judah
- David
- peace, peaceful
- betray, betrayer
- adversary, enemy
- God
- rebuke

translationNotes:

- **men of Benjamin and Judah** - AT: “men from the tribes of Benjamin and Judah”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:18

UDB:

¹⁸ Then God's Spirit came on Amasai, who was the leader of the thirty greatest warriors, and he said,

”David, we want to be with you;

you who are the son of Jesse, we will join you.

We know that things will go very well for you and for those who are with you,

because your God is helping you.”

ULB:

¹⁸ Then the Spirit came on Amasai, who was chief of the thirty. Amasai said, “We are yours, David. We are on your side, son of Jesse. Peace, may peace be to whoever helps you. May peace be to your helpers, for your God is helping you.” Then David received them and made them commanders over his men.

translationWords:

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord](#)
- [chief](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [commander, command](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **the Spirit came on** - AT: “The Spirit gave him power” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **the thirty** - AT: “the 30 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))
- **We are yours, David. We are on your side, son of Jesse** - These phrases share similar meanings and mphasize their commitment to follow David. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ So David welcomed those men, and he appointed them to be leaders of his soldiers. Some men from the tribe of Manasseh also joined David when he went with the soldiers of Philistia to fight against Saul's army. But David and his men did not really help the army of Philistia. After the leaders of Philistia talked about David and his soldiers, they sent David away. They said, "If David joins his master Saul again, we will all be killed." ²⁰ When David went to Ziklag, these were the men from the tribe of Manasseh who went with him: Adnah, Jozabad, Jedaiel, Michael, another man whose name was Jozabad, Elihu, and Zillethai. Each of them had been a commander of one thousand men in Saul's army.

ULB:

¹⁹ Some from Manasseh also deserted to David when he came with the Philistines against Saul to battle. Yet they did not help the Philistines, because the Philistine lords consulted with each other and sent David away. They said, "He will desert to his master Saul at the risk of our lives." ²⁰ When he went to Ziklag, the men of Manasseh who joined him were Adnah, Jozabad, Jedaiel, Michael, Jozabad, Elihu, and Zillethai, captains over thousands of Manasseh.

translationWords:

- [Manasseh](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [lord, master, sir](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **deserted to** - AT: "left their leaders to join"
- **over thousands of** - "over more than 1,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:21-22

UDB:

²¹ They were all brave soldiers, and they helped David to fight against the groups of men who roamed throughout the country, robbing people. So those men became commanders in David's army. ²² Every day more men joined David's men, and his army became large, like the army of God.

ULB:

²¹ They helped David fight against the roving bands, for they were fighting men. Later they became commanders in the army. ²² Day after day, men came to David to help him, until there was a great army, like the army of God.

translationWords:

- [commander, command](#)

translationNotes:

- **roving bands** - AT: "groups of men who robbed people across the country"
- **Day after day** - AT: "Each day" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **like the army of God** - This compares the size of David's army to the army of God's angels. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:23-25

UDB:

²³ These are the numbers of soldiers who were ready for battle who joined David at the city of Hebron. They came to help him to become the king of Israel instead of Saul, as Yahweh had promised would happen.

- ²⁴ There were 6,800 men from Judah, who carried shields and spears.
- ²⁵ There were 7,100 men from the tribe of Simeon. They were all strong warriors trained to fight battles.
-

ULB:

²³ This is the record of the armed soldiers for war, who came to David to Hebron, to turn the kingdom of Saul over to him, which carried out Yahweh's word. ²⁴ From Judah those who carried shield and spear were 6,800, armed for war. ²⁵ From the Simeonites there were 7,100 fighting men.

translationWords:

- David
- Hebron
- kingdom
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- Judah
- shield
- spear
- Simeon

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#)
- **to turn the kingdom of Saul over to him** - AT: "to give control of Saul's kingdom to David" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **carried out Yahweh's word** - AT: "made Yahweh's word true" or "fulfilled Yahweh's word"
- **From Judah** - AT: "From the tribe of Judah" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)

- 1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 12:26-28

UDB:

²⁶ There were 4,600 men from the tribe of Levi.

- ²⁷ Jehoiada, who was a leader descended from Aaron, was in that group of descendants of Levi, and there were 3,700 men with him.
- ²⁸ Zadok, a strong young soldier, was also in that group, and there were 22 other leaders from his clan who came with him.

ULB:

²⁶ From the Levites there were 4,600 fighting men. ²⁷ Jehoiada was the leader of Aaron's descendants, and with him were 3,700. ²⁸ With Zadok, a young, strong, and courageous man, were twenty-two leaders from his father's family.

translationWords:

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [family](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:29-31

UDB:

²⁹ There were three thousand men from the tribe of Benjamin who were Saul's relatives. Most of them had previously wanted one of Saul's descendants to be the king.

- ³⁰ There were 20,800 men from the tribe of Ephraim who were all brave warriors and trained for fighting battles and famous in their own clans.
- ³¹ There were eighteen thousand men from the half of the tribe of Manasseh that lived west of the Jordan River. They were all chosen to go and help David become the king.
-

ULB:

²⁹ From Benjamin, Saul's tribe, were three thousand. Most of them had remained loyal to Saul until this time. ³⁰ From the Ephraimites there were 20,800 fighting men, men famous in their fathers' families. ³¹ From the half tribe of Manasseh there were eighteen thousand famous men who came to make David king.

translationWords:

- Benjamin
- Saul (OT)
- tribe
- Ephraim
- Manasseh
- king

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#) and See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **From Benjamin, Saul's tribe** - AT: "From Saul's tribe, the tribe of Benjamin"
- **half tribe** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 05:18-19](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:32-33

UDB:

³² There were two hundred men who were leaders from the tribe of Issachar along with their relatives. They always knew what the Israelites should do, and they knew the right time to do it. Their relatives were with them, commanded by their leaders.

- ³³ There were fifty-five thousand men from the tribe of Zebulun. They were all experienced warriors and knew how to use all kinds of weapons well. They were completely loyal to David.
-

ULB:

³² From Issachar, there were two hundred leaders who had understanding of the times and knew what Israel ought to do. All their relatives were under their command. ³³ From Zebulun there were fifty thousand fighting men, prepared for battle, with all the weapons of war, and ready to give undivided loyalty.

translationWords:

- [Issachar](#)
- [understand, understanding](#)
- [time](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [Zebulun](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:34-35

UDB:

³⁴ There were one thousand officers from the tribe of Naphtali. With them were thirty-seven thousand soldiers, each carrying shields and spears.

- ³⁵ There were 28,600 soldiers from the tribe of Dan, all trained to fight battles.
-

ULB:

³⁴ From Naphtali there were one thousand officers, and with them thirty-seven thousand men with shields and spears. ³⁵ From the Danites there were 28,600 men prepared for battle.

translationWords:

- [Naphtali](#)
- [shield](#)
- [spear](#)
- [Dan](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:36-37

UDB:

³⁶ There were forty-seven thousand experienced soldiers from the tribe of Asher, all trained to fight battles.

- ³⁷ There were also 120,000 soldiers from the area east of the Jordan River who joined David. They were from the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh. They had all kinds of weapons.

ULB:

³⁶ From Asher there were forty thousand men prepared for battle. ³⁷ From the other side of the Jordan, from the Reubenites, Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh, there were 120,000 men armed with all kinds of weapons for battle.

translationWords:

- [Asher](#)
- [Jordan River](#)
- [Reuben](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))
- **armed with all kinds of weapons** - AT: “carrying all kinds of weapons” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 12:38-40**UDB:**

³⁸ All those men were soldiers who volunteered to be in David's army. They came to Hebron wanting very much to enable David to be the king of all of the Israelite people. ³⁹ The men spent three days there with David, eating and drinking, because their families had given them food to take with them. ⁴⁰ Also, their fellow Israelites came from as far away as the area where the tribes of Issachar, Zebulun, and Naphtali lived, bringing food on donkeys, camels, mules, and oxen. They brought a lot of flour, fig cakes, raisins, wine, olive oil, cattle and sheep. And throughout Israel, the people were very joyful.

ULB:

³⁸ All these soldiers, equipped for battle, came to Hebron with firm intentions to make David king over all Israel. All the rest of Israel were in agreement to make David king also. ³⁹ They were there with David three days, eating and drinking, for their relatives had sent them with provisions. ⁴⁰ In addition, those who were near to them, as far as Issachar and Zebulun and Naphtali, brought bread on donkeys, camels, mules, and oxen, and cakes of figs, clusters of raisins, wine, oil, oxen, and sheep, for Israel was celebrating.

translationWords:

- Hebron
- David
- king
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Issachar
- Zebulun
- Naphtali
- bread
- donkey, mule
- camel
- ox, oxen
- fig
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- oil
- sheep, ram, ewe

translationNotes:

- **firm intentions** - AT: "plans"

- **equipped for battle** - AT: “with their weapons for battle”
- **three days** - “3 days” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **raisins** - These are dried grapes, a small fruit that grows on a vine (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 12 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 13 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Ark of the covenant

David tried to bring the ark to Jerusalem on an ox cart instead of being carried by priests as the law said to do. The ox stumbled and Uzzah touched the ark to keep it from falling and he immediately died because of this. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#) and [covenant](#))

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 13:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 13:1-4

UDB:

¹ One day David talked with all his army officers. Some of them were commanders of one hundred soldiers and some were commanders of one thousand soldiers. ² Then he summoned the other Israelite leaders and said to all of them, "If it seems to you to be a good thing for us to do, and if it is what Yahweh our God wants, let us send a message to our fellow Israelites in all the areas of our country, including the priests and descendants of Levi who are living among them in their towns and in the nearby pasturelands, to come and join us, ³ because we want to bring the sacred chest of our God back to us. While Saul was the king, we did not ask God what we should do." ⁴ All the people agreed with David, because they all thought that it was the right thing to do.

ULB:

13 ¹ David consulted with the commanders of thousands and of hundreds, with every leader. ² David said to all the assembly of Israel, "If it seems good to you, and if this comes from Yahweh our God, let us send messengers everywhere to our brothers who remain in all the regions of Israel, and to the priests and Levites who are in their cities. Let them be told to join us. ³ Let us bring the ark of our God back to ourselves, for we did not seek his will in the days of Saul's reign." ⁴ The whole assembly agreed to do these things, because they seemed right in the eyes of all the people.

translationWords:

- David
- commander, command
- assembly, assemble
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Yahweh
- God
- send, send out, sent
- messenger
- brother
- priest, priesthood
- Levite, Levi
- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- will of God
- Saul (OT)
- reign
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

translationNotes:

- **thousands and of hundreds** - The army had commanders who lead groups of soldiers of different sizes. AT: “more than 1,000 men and more than 100 men” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **they seemed right in the eyes of all the people** - Here “eyes” represent the thoughts and opinions of the people. AT: “all the people thought these were the right things to do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 13:5-6

UDB:

⁵ So David gathered all the Israelite people, from the Shihor River in Egypt to the city of Lebo Hamath in the north, and told them that he wanted them to help bring the sacred chest of God back to Jerusalem from the city of Kiriath Jearim. ⁶ David went with all the Israelite people to the city of Baalah, which is another name for Kiriath Jearim, to get the sacred chest. The people believed that God ruled from between the statues of winged creatures that was above the lid of the sacred chest, and the sacred chest belongs to Yahweh.

ULB:

⁵ So David assembled all Israel together, from the Shihor River in Egypt to Lebo Hamath, to bring the ark of God from Kiriath Jearim. ⁶ David and all Israel went up to Baalah, that is, Kiriath Jearim, which belongs to Judah, to bring up from there the ark of God, which is called by Yahweh's name, Yahweh, who sits enthroned over the cherubim.

translationWords:

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [name](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **Baalah** - This is another name for Kiriath Jearim.
- **who sits enthroned over the cherubim** - AT: "who rules from between the statues of winged creatures on the ark of the covenant" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 13:7-8

UDB:

⁷ The people put the sacred chest on a new cart and carried it from Abinadab's house. Uzzah and Ahio were guiding the oxen that were pulling the cart. ⁸ David and all the Israelite people were celebrating in God's presence. They were singing with all their strength, and playing lyres, harps, tambourines, and cymbals, and blowing trumpets.

ULB:

⁷ So they set the ark of God on a new cart. They brought it out of Abinadab's house. Uzza and Ahio were guiding the cart. ⁸ David and all Israel were celebrating before God with all their might. They were singing with stringed instruments, tambourines, cymbals, and trumpets.

translationWords:

- [mighty, might](#)
- [trumpet](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **a new cart** - This is a wheeled vehicle pulled by an animal that has never been used before.
- **tambourines** - musical instruments with a head like a drum that can be hit and with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instruments are shaken (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **cymbals** - two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 13:9-11

UDB:

⁹ But when David's men came to the place where Kidon threshed grain, the oxen stumbled. So Uzzah reached out with his hand to prevent the sacred chest from falling off the cart. ¹⁰ Yahweh immediately became very angry with Uzzah, and as he was watching, he suddenly killed Uzzah. This was because Uzzah had put his hand on the sacred chest, although Yahweh had commanded that only the descendants of Levi who help the priests should touch the sacred chest.

¹¹ David was angry because Yahweh had punished Uzzah. And now that place where Uzzah died is called "The Punishment of Uzzah."

ULB:

⁹ When they came to the threshing floor of Kidon, Uzzah reached out with his hand to grab the ark, because the oxen stumbled. ¹⁰ Then the anger of Yahweh burned against Uzzah, and Yahweh killed him because Uzzah had reached out with his hand to the ark. He died there before God. ¹¹ David was angry because Yahweh had attacked Uzzah. That place is called Perez Uzzah to this day.

translationWords:

- thresh, threshing
- ox, oxen
- stumble
- angry, anger
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **the anger of Yahweh burned against Uzzah** - AT: "Yahweh was very angry with Uzzah" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **before God** - AT: "in the presence of God"
- **David was angry** - David was angry at Yahweh. (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **to this day** - See how you translated this in [4:43](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 13:12-14

UDB:

¹² That day, David was afraid of God. He asked himself, "How can I bring God's sacred chest to my city?" ¹³ So the men with David did not take the sacred chest to Jerusalem. Instead, they took it to the house of Obed Edom, who was from the city of Gath. ¹⁴ The sacred chest stayed with Obed Edom's family in his house for three months. During that time Yahweh blessed Obed Edom's family and everything that he owned.

ULB:

¹² David was afraid of God that day. He said, "How can I bring the ark of God home to me?" ¹³ So David did not move the ark to the city of David, but put it aside in the house of Obed Edom the Gittite. ¹⁴ The ark of God remained in Obed Edom's household in his house for three months. So Yahweh blessed his house and all that he possessed.

translationWords:

- David
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- God
- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- city of David
- house
- household
- Yahweh
- bless, blessed, blessing
- possess, possession

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **How can I bring the ark of God home to me?** - David is expressing his anger about Uzza's death when he was trying to get the ark back to his city. AT: "I cannot possibly bring the ark of God back to my city" or "Tell me what are the Laws about how to move the ark, I do not know how to do this"
- **three months** - "3 months" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 13 General Notes
- **1 Chronicles 13 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 14 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

David asked for help from God and because of this, God enabled him to defeat the Philistines when they tried to capture him.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 14:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 14:1-2

UDB:

¹ One day Hiram, the king of the city of Tyre, sent some messengers to David to talk about making an agreement between their countries. Then Hiram sent cedar logs, bricklayers, and carpenters to build a palace for David. ² When that happened, David knew that Yahweh had truly caused him to be the king of Israel, and that he had caused his kingdom to be greatly respected. Yahweh did this because he loved his Israelite people.

ULB:

14 ¹ Then Hiram king of Tyre sent messengers to David, and cedar trees, carpenters, and masons. They built a house for him. ² David knew that Yahweh had established him as king over Israel, and that his kingdom was exalted on high for the sake of his people Israel.

translationWords:

- king
- Tyre, Tyrians
- send, send out, sent
- messenger
- David
- cedar
- know, knowledge, make known
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- kingdom
- exalt, exaltation
- people of God, my people

translationNotes:

- **Hiram** - This is the name of the king. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **carpenters** - These are people whose job is to make things with wood.
- **masons** - These are people whose job is to make things with stone or brick.
- **established him as** - AT: “made him”
- **his kingdom was exalted on high for the sake of his people Israel** - AT: “Yahweh gave honor to David’s kingdom to help the people of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 14 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 14:3-7

UDB:

³ David married more women in Jerusalem, and those women gave birth to more sons and daughters for him. ⁴ The names of the children that were born to him there in Jerusalem are Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, Solomon, ⁵ Ibhar, Elishama, Elpelet, ⁶ Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia, ⁷ Elishama, Beeliada, and Eliphelet.

ULB:

³ In Jerusalem, David took more wives, and he became the father of more sons and daughters. ⁴ These were the names of the children who were born to him in Jerusalem: Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, Solomon, ⁵ Ibhar, Elishama, Elpelet, ⁶ Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia, ⁷ Elishama, Beeliada, and Eliphelet.

translationWords:

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [Solomon](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 14 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 14:8-9

UDB:

⁸ When the army of Philistia heard that David has been appointed to be king of all of Israel, they went to try to capture him. But David heard that they were coming, so he and his soldiers went out to fight against them. ⁹ The army of Philistia had attacked the people in the Valley of Rephaim southwest of Jerusalem and had robbed them.

ULB:

⁸ Now when the Philistines heard that David had been anointed as king over all Israel, they all went out looking for him. But David heard about it and went out against them. ⁹ Now the Philistines had come and made a raid in the Valley of Rephaim.

translationWords:

- [Philistines](#)
- [anoint, anointed](#)

translationNotes:

- **David had been anointed as king over all Israel** - AT: “the people of Israel had anointed David as their king” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Valley of Rephaim** - This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 14 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 14:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ David asked God, “Should my men and I go and attack the army of Philistia? If we go, will you enable us to defeat them?”

Yahweh replied, “Yes, go, and I will enable you to defeat them.”

¹¹ So David and his men went up to a town where the soldiers of Philistia were staying and defeated the soldiers of Philistia. Then David said, “Yahweh has completely defeated my enemies by using me and my army.” So they named that place “Baal Perazim,” which means “Yahweh breaks through.” ¹² As the soldiers of Philistia fled, they left their idols there. So David commanded his soldiers to burn those idols.

ULB:

¹⁰ Then David asked for help from God. He said, “Should I attack the Philistines? Will you give victory over them?” Yahweh said to him, “Attack, for I will certainly give them to you.” ¹¹ So they came up to Baal Perazim, and there he defeated them. He commented, “Yahweh has burst through my enemies by my hand like a bursting flood of water.” So the name of that place became Baal Perazim. ¹² The Philistines abandoned their gods there, and David gave an order that they should be burned.

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [false god, foreign god, god, goddess](#)

translationNotes:

- **give them to you** - AT: “give you victory over them” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Baal Perazim** - This is the name a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **by my hand** - This refers to David’s resources. AT: “using my army” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **like a bursting flood of water** - The power and victory of David’s army is compared to a bursting flood of water. AT: “easily” (See: [Simile](#))
- **that they should be burned** - AT: “to burn their false gods” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 14 General Notes
- **1 Chronicles 14 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 14:13-14

UDB:

¹³ But soon the army of Philistia attacked the people in that valley again. ¹⁴ So again David prayed to God to ask him what he should do, and God replied, saying "Do not attack the army of Philistia from the front. Instead, go around them, and attack them from the rear in front of the balsam trees.

ULB:

¹³ Then the Philistines raided the valley yet again. ¹⁴ So David asked for help from God again. God said to him, "You must not attack their front, but rather circle around behind them and come on them through the balsam woods.

translationWords:

- [David](#)

translationNotes:

- **the valley** - "the Valley of Rephaim"
- **attack their front** - AT: "attack from the front"
- **circle around behind them and come on them through the balsam woods** - AT: "go through the forest of balsam trees and attack them from behind"
- **balsam** - This is a type of tree. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 14 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 14:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ When you hear something in the tops of the balsam trees that sounds like soldiers marching, attack them. I, God, will have gone ahead of you to enable you to defeat the army of Philistia.” ¹⁶ So David did what God commanded him to do, and he and his army defeated the army of Philistia, all the way from the city of Gibeon west to the city of Gezer.

¹⁷ So David became famous in all the nearby countries, and Yahweh caused the leaders of all the nations to be afraid of him.

ULB:

¹⁵ When you hear the sound of marching in the wind blowing through the balsam treetops, then attack with force. Do this because God will have gone out before you to attack the army of the Philistines.” ¹⁶ So David did as God had commanded him. He defeated the army of the Philistines from Gibeon all the way to Gezer. ¹⁷ Then David’s fame went out into all lands, and Yahweh caused all nations to fear him.

translationWords:

- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [Gibeon, Gibeonite](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [nation](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God continues his answer to David’s question.
- **gone out before you** - AT: “gone out ahead of you to fight for you” (See: [Ellipsis Personification](#))
- **Gezer** - This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **David’s fame went out into all lands** - AT: “People far away heard about David’s victory over the Philistines” (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 14 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapters 15 and 16 explains how David organized the priests and Levites. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

This chapter indents some of the lines of 5:5-15 because it contains a long list and instructions.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 15:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 15:1-3

UDB:

¹ David commanded his workers to build houses for himself in Jerusalem. He also told them to set up a tent in which to put the sacred chest. ² He said, “Only the descendants of Levi are permitted to carry God’s sacred chest, because they are the ones whom Yahweh chose to carry it and to serve him forever.”

³ David summoned all the people of Israel to come to Jerusalem. He wanted the sacred chest of Yahweh to be put in the place that he had made for it.

ULB:

15 ¹ David built houses for himself in the city of David. He prepared a place for the ark of God and set up a tent for it. ² Then David said, “Only the Levites may carry the ark of God, for they had been chosen by Yahweh to carry the ark of Yahweh, and to serve him forever.” ³ Then David assembled all Israel at Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of Yahweh to the place he had prepared for it.

translationWords:

- David
- city of David
- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- tent
- Levite, Levi
- Yahweh
- serve, service
- forever
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Jerusalem

translationNotes:

- **David built houses for himself** - AT: “The people built houses for David” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **prepared a place** - AT: “commanded that a special place be made” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **assembled all Israel** - AT: “commanded that all the people of Israel should come together”
- **to bring up the ark** - AT: “to celebrate as the Levites carry the ark” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 15 General Notes
- 1 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 15:4-6

UDB:

⁴ He summoned the descendants of Aaron, who was the first high priest, and the descendants of Levi.

- ⁵ 120 descendants of Kohath, who was Levi's second son, came, with Uriel their leader.
- ⁶ There were 220 descendants of Merari, Levi's third son, who came, with Asaiah their leader.
-

ULB:

⁴ David gathered together Aaron's descendants and the Levites. ⁵ From the descendants of Kohath, there was Uriel the leader and his relatives, 120 men. ⁶ From the descendants of Merari, there was Asaiah the leader and his relatives, 220 men.

translationWords:

- [Aaron](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#)
- **relatives** - people who are part of the same family or tribe

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 15:7-10

UDB:

⁷ There were 130 descendants of Gershon, Levi's first son, who came, with Joel their leader.

- ⁸ Also, there were 200 people from Elizaphan's clan who came, with Shemaiah their leader.
- ⁹ There were 80 people from Hebron's clan who came, with Eliel their leader.
- ¹⁰ And there were 112 people from Uzziel's clan who came, with Amminadab their leader.

ULB:

⁷ From the descendants of Gershom, there was Joel the leader and his relatives, 130 men. ⁸ From the descendants of Elizaphan, there was Shemaiah the leader and his relatives, 200 men. ⁹ From the descendants of Hebron, there was Eliel the leader and his relatives, eighty men. ¹⁰ From the descendants of Uzziel, there was Amminadab the leader and his relatives, 112 men.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 15:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ David summoned the priests Zadok and Abiathar and these descendants of Levi: Uriel, Asaiah, Joel, Shemaiah, Eliel, and Amminadab. ¹² David said to them, "You are the leaders of the clans descended from Levi. You and the other descendants of Levi must purify yourselves, in order to be able to do this special work for Yahweh. You must bring the sacred chest of Yahweh, the God of us Israelites, up to the place that I have made for it here in Jerusalem.

ULB:

¹¹ David called for Zadok and Abiathar the priests, and the Levites Uriel, Asaiah, Joel, Shemaiah, Eliel, and Amminadab. ¹² He said to them, "You are the leaders of the Levite families. Consecrate yourselves, both you and your brothers, so that you may bring up the ark of Yahweh, the God of Israel, to the place that I have prepared for it.

translationWords:

- [Zadok](#)
- [Abiathar](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [family](#)
- [consecrate](#)
- [brother](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **I have prepared** - AT: "I have commanded the Levites to prepare" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 15:13-15

UDB:

¹³ The first time that we tried to bring it, we did not ask Yahweh how we should carry it. You descendants of Levi were not the ones who carried it, so Yahweh our God punished us.”

¹⁴ Then the priests and the descendants of Levi performed the rituals to purify themselves, in order that it would be proper for them to do the work of carrying the sacred chest of Yahweh, the God of the Israelite people. ¹⁵ The descendants of Levi fastened poles to the sacred chest so that they could carry it by fastening poles to it and putting it on their shoulders, as Moses had commanded, and as Yahweh had said that they should.

ULB:

¹³ You did not carry it the first time. That is why Yahweh our God broke out against us, for we did not seek him or obey his decree.” ¹⁴ So the priests and the Levites consecrated themselves so they could bring up the ark of Yahweh, the God of Israel. ¹⁵ So the Levites carried the ark of God on their shoulders with the poles, as Moses had commanded—following the rules given by the word of Yahweh.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- seek, sought
- obey, obedient, obedience
- decree
- Levite, Levi
- consecrate
- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Moses
- command, to command, commandment
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

translationNotes:

- **You did not carry it the first time** - “You did not carry the ark before”
- **we did not seek him** - AT: “we did not ask him for instructions” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **broke out against us** - AT: “punished us”
- **the Levites consecrated themselves so they could bring up** - AT: “Levites made themselves clean in order to carry”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 15:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ David told the leaders of the descendants of Levi to appoint some of their relatives to sing and play lyres, harps, and cymbals, and to sing joyful songs while they were carrying the sacred chest.

¹⁷ So they appointed Heman and his relatives Asaph and Ethan. Heman son of Joel; Asaph son of Berekiah. Ethan son of Kushaiah, was a descendant of Merari. ¹⁸ There was also another group of descendants of Levi who were appointed: Zechariah,[1]Some ancient copies add the name “Ben,” perhaps the name of Zechariah’s father was omitted. Jaaziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Benaiah, Maaseiah, Mattithiah, Eliphelehu, Mikneiah, and two of the temple gatekeepers, Obed Edom and Jeiel.

ULB:

¹⁶ David spoke to the leaders of the Levites to assign their brothers to be musicians with musical instruments, stringed instruments, harps and cymbals, playing loudly and joyfully lifting up their voices. ¹⁷ So the Levites appointed Heman son of Joel and one of his brothers, Asaph son of Berechiah. They also appointed kinsmen from Merari’s descendants and Ethan son of Kushaiah. ¹⁸ With them were their kinsmen of second rank: Zechariah,[1]Some ancient copies add the name or prefix, “ben,” assuming perhaps the name of Zechariah’s father was omitted. Jaaziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Benaiah, Maaseiah, Mattithiah, Eliphelehu, Mikneiah, Obed Edom, and Jeiel, the gatekeepers.

translationWords:

- David
- assign, assigned
- harp
- joy, joyful
- appoint, appointed
- Asaph
- kin, kinsman
- descendant, descended from

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **cymbals** - See how you translated this in [13:8](#).
- **lifting up their voices** - AT: “singing”
- **second rank** - AT: “a lower position of power” or “2nd rank” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **gatekeepers** - people who guard gates

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 15:19-21

UDB:

¹⁹ Heman, Asaph and Ethan sang, but also played bronze cymbals. ²⁰ Zechariah, Aziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Maaseiah, and Benaiah played lyres. ²¹ Mattithiah, Eliphelehu, Mikneiah, Obed Edom, Jeiel and Azaziah played harps.

ULB:

¹⁹ The musicians Heman, Asaph, and Ethan were appointed to play loud bronze cymbals. ²⁰ Zechariah, Aziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Maaseiah, and Benaiah played the stringed instruments, set to Alamothe. ²¹ Mattithiah, Eliphelehu, Mikneiah, Obed Edom, Jeiel, and Azaziah led the way with harps set to the Sheminith.

translationWords:

- [bronze](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **cymbals** - See how you translated this in [13:8](#).
- **Alamothe ... Sheminith** - The meaning of these words is not clear but may refer to a style of music.
- **led the way** - “led the other musicians” or “led the procession”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 15:22-24

UDB:

²² Kenaniah, the leader of the descendants of Levi, directed the singing because he was very capable of doing that.

²³ Berekiah and Elkanah were two of the men who guarded the sacred chest. ²⁴ The priests Shebaniah, Joshaphat, Nethanel, Amasai, Zechariah, Benaiah, and Eliezer were appointed to blow trumpets in front of the sacred chest. Obed Edom and Jehiah also guarded the sacred chest.

ULB:

²² Kenaniah, leader of the Levites, he was the director of the singing because he was a teacher of music. ²³ Berechiah and Elkanah were guards for the ark. ²⁴ Shebaniah, Joshaphat, Nethanel, Amasai, Zechariah, Benaiah, and Eliezer, the priests, were to blow the trumpets before the ark of God. Obed Edom and Jehiah were guards for the ark.

translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [trumpet](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 15:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ David and the Israelite leaders and the officers who commanded one thousand soldiers went to get the sacred chest. They went to bring it from Obed Edom's house. They went very joyfully. ²⁶ God helped the descendants of Levi who carried the sacred chest of Yahweh; therefore David and the leaders sacrificed seven bulls and seven rams to thank him.

ULB:

²⁵ So David, the elders of Israel, and the commanders over thousands went to bring up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh out of Obed Edom's house with rejoicing. ²⁶ While God helped the Levites who carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh, they sacrificed seven bulls and seven rams.

translationWords:

- [elder](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [commander, command](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [God](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)

translationNotes:

- **over thousands** - AT: "of more than 1,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Obed Edom** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 15:27-28

UDB:

²⁷ All the descendants of Levi who carried the sacred chest, all the singers, and Kenaniah, the man who directed those who sang, all wore robes of fine white linen and sacred vests made of fine linen. David also wore a waistcloth made of white linen. ²⁸ So all the of Israelite people joined in bringing the sacred chest up to Jerusalem. They shouted, blew horns and trumpets, and played cymbals, lyres, and harps.

ULB:

²⁷ David was clothed with a robe of fine linen, as were the Levites who carried the ark, the singers, and Kenaniah, the leader of the song with the singers. David was wearing a linen ephod. ²⁸ So all Israel brought up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh with joyful shouting, and with the sound of horns, with cymbals, and with stringed instruments and harps.

translationWords:

- [David](#)
- [clothe, clothed](#)
- [robe](#)
- [ephod](#)
- [horn, horns](#)
- [harp](#)

translationNotes:

- **David was clothed with a robe of fine linen, as were the Levites who carried the ark, the singers, and Kenaniah, the leader of the song with the singers** - AT: “David, the Levites, and the singers all wore fine linen robes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **linen** - This is a type of smooth, strong cloth.
- **Kenaniah** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **So all Israel brought up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh** - AT: “So a great crowd of Israelites brought the ark of the covenant of Yahweh from the house of Obed Edom to Jerusalem” (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **cymbals** - See how you translated this in [13:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)

- 1 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 15:29

UDB:

²⁹ While they were bringing the sacred chest into Jerusalem, Saul's daughter Michal watched them, looking out of a window. When she saw King David dancing and celebrating, she despised him.

ULB:

²⁹ But as the ark of the covenant of Yahweh came to the city of David, Michal daughter of Saul, looked out the window. She saw King David dancing and celebrating. Then she despised him in her heart.

translationWords:

- [city of David](#)
- [Saul \(OT\)](#)
- [king](#)
- [heart](#)

translationNotes:

- **the ark of the covenant of Yahweh came to the city of David** - AT: "the people brought the ark of the covenant of Yahweh to the city of David" (See: [Personification](#))
- **Michal** - This is the name of David's wife. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **despised him in her heart** - AT: "deeply disrespected him in her thinking" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 15 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapters 15 and 16 tell how David organized the priests and Levites. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

This chapter indents some of the lines of 16:8-36 because it is a psalm or song.

Special concepts in this chapter

David's psalm

As David organized the priests in their work in the tent, he wrote a psalm of praise to Yahweh.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 16:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 16:1-3

UDB:

¹ They brought the sacred chest to Jerusalem and put it inside the sacred tent that David had told his workers to set up. Then they brought offerings to be completely burned on the altar and offerings to enable them to promise friendship with God. ² When David had finished presenting all those offerings, he asked Yahweh to bless the people. ³ He gave a loaf of bread, some dates, and some raisins to every Israelite man and woman who was there.

ULB:

16 ¹ They brought in the ark of God and put it in the middle of the tent that David had set up for it. Then they offered burnt offerings and fellowship offerings before God. ² When David had finished sacrificing the burnt offering and the fellowship offerings, he blessed the people in the name of Yahweh. ³ He distributed to every Israelite, both to men and women, a loaf of bread, and a piece of meat, and a cake of raisins.

translationWords:

- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- tent
- David
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- fellowship offering
- God
- bless, blessed, blessing
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- name
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- bread

translationNotes:

- **They brought in the ark** - AT: "The Israelites brought in the ark"
- **loaf of bread** - one portion of baked, leavened bread
- **raisins** - These are dried grapes, a small fruit that grows on a vine. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:4-6

UDB:

⁴ Then David appointed some of the descendants of Levi to stand in front of the sacred tent in which the sacred chest had been placed, to lead the people who worshiped and thanked and praised Yahweh, the God of the Israelite people. ⁵ Asaph, who played the cymbals, was their leader. Zechariah was his assistant. The other descendants of Levi who helped Asaph were Jaaziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Mattithiah, Eliab, Benaiah, Obed Edom, and Jeiel. They played lyres and harps. ⁶ Benaiah and Jahaziel were priests who blew trumpets frequently in front of the sacred tent in which was the sacred chest.

ULB:

⁴ David appointed certain Levites to serve before the ark of Yahweh, and to celebrate, thank and praise Yahweh, the God of Israel. ⁵ These Levites were Asaph the leader, and second to him Zechariah, Jeiel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Mattithiah, Eliab, Benaiah, Obed Edom, and Jeiel. These were to play with stringed instruments and with harps. Asaph was to sound the cymbals, sounding loudly. ⁶ Benaiah and Jahaziel the priests were to blow the horns regularly, before the ark of the covenant of God.

translationWords:

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [praise](#)
- [Asaph](#)
- [harp](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [horn, horns](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **cymbals** - See how you translated this in [13:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:7-9

UDB:

⁷ On that day, David gave to Asaph and his helpers this psalm to praise Yahweh:

⁸ Thank Yahweh and pray to him.

Tell the people of all nations what he has done.

⁹ Sing to him; sing songs to praise him.

Tell about all his miraculous deeds.

ULB:

⁷ Then on that day David first appointed Asaph and his brothers to sing this song of thanksgiving to Yahweh.

⁸ Give thanks to Yahweh, call on his name;
make known his deeds among the nations.

⁹ Sing to him, sing praises to him;
speak of all his marvelous deeds.

translationWords:

- [brother](#)
- [call, calling, called, call out](#)
- [name](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [nation](#)
- [marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished](#)

translationNotes:

- **Then on that day** - This refers to the day the ark of the covenant was moved from the house of Obed Edom to Jerusalem.
- **song of thanksgiving** - AT: "song giving thanks"
- **call on his name** - AT: "pray to Yahweh" (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Be glad that you belong to him.

Those who want to know Yahweh better should rejoice.

¹¹ Trust in Yahweh and in his power;
continually seek to get help from him.

ULB:

¹⁰ Boast in his holy name;
let the heart of those who seek Yahweh rejoice.

¹¹ Seek Yahweh and his strength;
seek his presence continually.

translationWords:

- [boast, boastful](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [heart](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [strength, strengthen](#)

translationNotes:

- **in his holy name** - AT: “in who God is” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **let the heart of those who seek Yahweh** - AT: “let those who want to know Yahweh better” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Seek Yahweh and his strength; seek his presence continually** - These phrases share similar meanings and are used for emphasis. AT: “Seek Yahweh and his power; seek to be near him always” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Do not forget the wonderful things that he has done,

the miracles and the just laws that he has decreed for us.

¹³ We people are the descendants of his servant Jacob;

we are the people of Israel whom he has chosen.

¹⁴ Yahweh is our God.

His just laws are known by people throughout the world.

ULB:

¹² Recall the marvelous things he has done,

his miracles and the decrees from his mouth,

¹³ you descendants of Israel his servant,

you people of Jacob, his chosen ones.

¹⁴ He is Yahweh, our God.

His decrees are on all the earth.

translationWords:

- miracle, wonder, sign
- decree
- descendant, descended from
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- servant, slave, slavery
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Jacob, Israel
- chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect
- Yahweh
- God
- earth, earthly

translationNotes:

- **Recall the marvelous things** - AT: "Remember the wonderful things"

- **from his mouth** - AT: “that he spoke” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **you descendants of Israel his servant, you people of Jacob, his chosen ones** - These phrases share similar meanings and are used for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))
- **His decrees are on all the earth** - AT: “His laws are for all the people of the earth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:15-18**UDB:**

- ¹⁵ He never forgets the covenants that he has made;
he made a promise that will last for a thousand generations.
- ¹⁶ That is the covenant that he made with Abraham,
and he repeated that covenant to Isaac.
- ¹⁷ It was an covenant for the Israelite people,
and he wanted that covenant to endure forever.
- ¹⁸ What he said was, "I will give the region of Canaan to you,
to belong to you and your descendants forever."

ULB:

- ¹⁵ Keep his covenant in mind forever,
the word that he commanded for a thousand generations.
- ¹⁶ He calls to mind the covenant that he made with Abraham,
and his oath to Isaac.
- ¹⁷ This is what he confirmed to Jacob as a statute,
and to Israel as an everlasting covenant.
- ¹⁸ He said, "I will give you the land of Canaan
as your share of your inheritance."

translationWords:

- covenant
- mind
- forever
- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- command, to command, commandment
- generation
- Abraham, Abram
- oath, swear, swear by
- Isaac

- [confirm, confirmation](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [everlasting, eternal, eternity](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)

translationNotes:

- **Keep his covenant in mind** - AT: “Remember the covenant of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))
- **a thousand generations** - “1,000 generations” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **He calls to mind** - AT: “Yahweh remembers”
- **as your share** - “as your part”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:19-22**UDB:**

- ¹⁹ He said that to them when there were only a few of them,
a tiny group of people who were living in that land like strangers;
²⁰ they continued to wander from one place to another,
from one kingdom to another.
²¹ But he did not allow others to oppress them,
and he warned kings by saying to them,
²² "Do not harm the people whom I have chosen!
Do not harm my prophets!"

ULB:

- ¹⁹ I said this when you were only few in number,
so very few, and were strangers in the land.
²⁰ They went from nation to nation,
from one kingdom to another.
²¹ He did not allow anyone to oppress them;
he punished kings for their sakes.
²² he said, "Do not touch my anointed ones,
and do not harm my prophets."

translationWords:

- nation
- kingdom
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- punish, punishment
- king
- anoint, anointed
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

translationNotes:

- **I said this when you were only few in number, so very few** - AT: “Yahweh said this when the Israelites were a very small group of people”
- **strangers in the land** - “foreigners in the land”
- **from nation to nation, from one kingdom to another** - These phrases share similar meanings and emphasize how far the Israelites had wandered. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **He did not allow** - “Yahweh did not permit”
- **for their sakes** - “for them”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:23-24

UDB:

²³ You people throughout the world, sing to Yahweh.

Every day proclaim to others that he has saved us.

²⁴ Tell among the nations that he is great;

tell all the people groups the marvelous things that he has done.

ULB:

²³ Sing to Yahweh, all the earth;

announce his salvation day after day.

²⁴ Declare his glory among the nations,

his marvelous deeds among all the nations.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [declare, declaration](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Parallelism](#)
- **all the earth** - Everything on earth brings glory to God. (See: [Personification](#))
- **day after day** - AT: “every day” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ Yahweh is great, and he deserves to be praised very much.

He should be revered more than all the gods,

²⁶ because all the gods that the other people groups worship are only idols,

but Yahweh is truly great; he created the skies.

²⁷ He is glorious and majestic;

he is very powerful and joyful in his temple.

ULB:

²⁵ For Yahweh is great and is to be praised greatly,

and he is to be feared above all other gods.

²⁶ For all the gods of the nations are idols,

but it is Yahweh who made the heavens.

²⁷ Splendor and majesty are in his presence.

Strength and joy are in his place.

translationWords:

- praise
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- false god, foreign god, god, goddess
- idol, idolatrous
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- splendor
- majesty
- strength, strengthen
- joy, joyful

translationNotes:

- **Splendor and majesty are in his presence** - AT: "Splendor and majesty are all around him."
- **Strength and joy are in his place.** - AT: "Yahweh clearly shows his power and joy." (See: *Metonymy*)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ You people in nations all over the world, praise Yahweh!

Praise Yahweh for his glorious power!

²⁹ Praise Yahweh in his glorious temple.

Come before him with offerings to give to him.

ULB:

²⁸ Ascribe to Yahweh, you clans of peoples,
ascribe to Yahweh glory and strength;

²⁹ Ascribe to Yahweh the glory due to his name.
Bring an offering and come before him.

Bow down to Yahweh in his holy splendor.

translationWords:

- [clan](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [name](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [splendor](#)

translationNotes:

- **Ascribe to Yahweh** - "Give praise to Yahweh for"
- **due to his name** - "he deserves or he is worthy to receive" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:30-31

UDB:

³⁰ Be very afraid in his presence, because he is good and powerful, completely different than you.

He put the earth firmly in its place; and nothing ever will be able to move it.

³¹ Everything in the sky and on the earth should be happy.

People everywhere should say, "Yahweh is our king!"

ULB:

³⁰ Tremble before him, all the earth.

The world also is established; it cannot be shaken.

³¹ Let the heavens be glad, and let the earth rejoice;

let them say among the nations, "Yahweh reigns."

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- world, worldly
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- rejoice
- nation
- reign

translationNotes:

- **Tremble before him** - AT: "Show respectful fear at the thought of Him" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Let the heavens be glad, and let the earth rejoice** - AT: "Let everyone everywhere be glad." (See: [Personification](#) and [Merism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:32-33

UDB:

³² The oceans and all the creatures that are in the oceans should shout;
the fields and everything that is in them should rejoice.

³³ When they do that, it will be as though the trees in the forest will sing joyfully in front of Yahweh.

That will happen when he comes to judge everyone on the earth.

ULB:

³² Let the sea roar, and that which fills it shout with joy.

Let the fields be joyful, and all that is in them.

³³ Then let the trees in the forest shout for joy before Yahweh,
for he is coming to judge the earth.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)

translationNotes:

- **Let the sea roar** - AT: "The sea will make a very loud shout." (See: [Personification](#))
- **that which fills it** - AT: "the sea creatures"
- **let the trees in the forest shout for joy** - This speaks about the trees as if they were people who could shout for joy. (See: [Personification](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:34-35

UDB:

³⁴ Thank Yahweh, because everything that he does is good.

He faithfully loves us forever.

³⁵ Say to him, "God, you are the one who rescues us,

so gather us together and save us from the armies of other nations.

When you do that, we will thank you ,

and we will be happy to praise you."

ULB:

³⁴ Give thanks to Yahweh, for he is good,

for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.

³⁵ Then say, "Save us, God of our salvation.

Gather us together and rescue us from the other nations,

so that we may give thanks to your holy name

and glory in your praises."

translationWords:

- good, goodness
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- endure, endurance
- forever
- God
- salvation
- name
- glory, glorious
- praise

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:36

UDB:

³⁶ Praise Yahweh, the God of us Israelite people,

He has always existed, and he will exist forever.

After the people finished singing that song, they all said “Amen!”, and they praised Yahweh.

This is a description of worship at Jerusalem and Gibeon.

ULB:

³⁶ May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be praised
from everlasting to everlasting.

All the people said, “Amen” and praised Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [everlasting, eternal, eternity](#)
- [amen, truly](#)

translationNotes:

- **from everlasting to everlasting** - AT: “forever”
- **All the people** - AT: “The people” or “Everyone who is there” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:37-39

UDB:

³⁷ Then David left Asaph and the other members of his clan there in front of the tent in which Yahweh's sacred chest had been placed. He told them that they must do their work there every day. ³⁸ David also left Obed Edom and 68 other descendants of Levi to work with them. Hosah and Obed Edom guarded the entrances of the sacred tent.

³⁹ David also told Zadok the high priest and the other priests who worked with him to remain in front of Yahweh's sacred tent, at the place where the Israelite people worshiped Yahweh there in the city of Gibeon.

ULB:

³⁷ So David left Asaph and his brothers there before the ark of the covenant of Yahweh, to serve continually before the ark, as every day's work required. ³⁸ Obed Edom with those sixty-eight relatives were included. Obed Edom son of Jeduthun, along with Hosah, were to be gatekeepers. ³⁹ Zadok the priest and his fellow priests were to serve before the tabernacle of Yahweh at the high place in Gibeon.

translationWords:

- David
- Asaph
- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- gate, gate bar
- Zadok
- priest, priesthood
- serve, service
- tabernacle
- high places
- Gibeon, Gibeonite

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#)
- **as every day's work required** - AT: "as was required everyday in the Mosaic law"
- **to serve before the tabernacle** - AT: "to serve in or near the tabernacle"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:40-41

UDB:

⁴⁰ Every morning and every evening they burned offerings on the altar, obeying the rules that had been written by Moses, rules that Yahweh had given to the Israelite people. ⁴¹ With them were Heman and Jeduthun and other descendants of Levi. They were chosen to sing songs to praise Yahweh because he faithfully loves his people forever.

ULB:

⁴⁰ They were to offer burnt offerings to Yahweh on the altar for burnt offerings continually morning and evening, according to all that is written in the law of Yahweh, which he gave as a command to Israel. ⁴¹ Heman and Jeduthun were with them, together with the rest who were chosen by name, to give thanks to Yahweh, because his covenant faithfulness endures forever.

translationWords:

- burnt offering, offering by fire
- Yahweh
- altar
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- command, to command, commandment

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **They** - "The priests"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 16:42-43

UDB:

⁴² Heman and Jeduthun were appointed to play the trumpets and cymbals when the other descendants of Levi sang sacred songs. The sons of Jeduthun were appointed to guard the gates of the sacred tent.

⁴³ Then all the people left. They all returned to their homes, and David returned home to ask Yahweh to bless his family.

ULB:

⁴² Heman and Jeduthun were in charge of those who played trumpets, cymbals, and the other instruments for the sacred music. The sons of Jeduthun guarded the gate. ⁴³ Then all the people returned to their homes, and David returned to bless his own household.

translationWords:

- trumpet
- sacred
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- bless, blessed, blessing
- household

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [How to Translate Names](#)
- **cymbals** - See how you translated this in [13:8](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 16 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 17 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Building the temple

David wanted to build a temple for God but God would not allow him to. Instead he promised that his son, Solomon, would build the temple and he promised David would have descendant who would be king forever. (See: [temple](#), [promise](#) and [forever](#))

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 17:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 17:1-2

UDB:

¹ After David began to live in his palace, he said to the prophet Nathan, “It does not seem right that I am here living in a palace made of cedar wood, but Yahweh’s sacred chest is kept inside a tent!”

² Nathan replied to David, “Whatever you are thinking about doing, do it, because God is with you.”

ULB:

17 ¹ It happened that after the king had settled in his house, he said to Nathan the prophet, “Look, I am living in a house of cedar, but the ark of the covenant of Yahweh is staying under a tent.” ² Then Nathan said to David, “Go, do what is in your heart, for God is with you.”

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [cedar](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [tent](#)
- [David](#)
- [heart](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **settled** - to be comfortable and happy, without the desire to move or change.
- **a house of cedar** - The wood from cedar trees was considered the best wood for construction.
- **do what is in your heart** - David is referred to by the part of the body associated with emotions. AT: “do what you would like to do” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **God is with you** - Being in agreement with God is like working together with him because God will help you succeed. AT: “God agrees with what you want to do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 17:3-6

UDB:

³ But that night God spoke to Nathan. He said,

⁴ "Go and tell my servant David that this is what I, Yahweh, am saying to him: 'You are not the one who should build a temple for me to live in. ⁵ I have not lived in any building, from the day that I brought the people of Israel up out of Egypt until now. Instead, I have lived in my sacred tent, moving from one place to another when the Israelites moved to other places. ⁶ Wherever I went with all the Israelites as they traveled, I never said to any of their leaders whom I appointed to lead them, "Why have you not built me a temple made of cedar wood?"~'

ULB:

³ But that same night the word of God came to Nathan and said, ⁴ "Go and tell David my servant, 'This is what Yahweh says: You will not build me a house in which to live. ⁵ For I have not lived in a house from the day that I brought up Israel to this present day. Instead, I have been living in a tent, a tabernacle, in various places. ⁶ In all places I have moved among all Israel, did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders whom I appointed to shepherd my people, saying, "Why have you not built me a house of cedar?"'"

translationWords:

- word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture
- servant, slave, slavery
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- tabernacle
- shepherd, to shepherd

translationNotes:

- **the word of God came** - "God spoke his word" (See: **Idiom**)
- **that I brought up Israel** - AT: "that I brought the Israelites to the promised land from the land of Egypt" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information**)
- **a tent, a tabernacle** - Both the words "tent" and "tabernacle" describe the same thing and emphasize that he had lived in a place that was not a permanent building. (See: **Doublet**)
- **Why have you not built me a house of cedar?** - AT: "You should have built me a house with expensive wood." (See: **Rhetorical Question**)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 17:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Therefore, this is what you should say to my servant David: 'I, Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, took you from a pasture where you were taking care of sheep, and I appointed you to be the ruler of my Israelite people. ⁸ I have been with you wherever you have gone, and I have gotten rid of all your enemies who were in front of you. And now I will cause you to become very famous, as well known as the names of the greatest men who have ever lived on the earth.

ULB:

⁷ "Now then, tell my servant David, 'This is what Yahweh of hosts says: I took you from the pasture, from following the sheep, so that you would be ruler over my people Israel. ⁸ I have been with you wherever you went and have cut off all your enemies from before you, and I will make you a name, like the name of the great ones who are on the earth.

translationWords:

- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- sheep, ram, ewe
- ruler, rulers, rule
- people of God, my people
- cut off
- adversary, enemy
- name
- earth, earthly

translationNotes:

- **I took you from the pasture** - David's job as a shepherd is referred to by the place he watched his sheep. AT: "I took you from your job as a shepherd" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **pasture** - See how you translated this word in [4:40](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 17:9-10

UDB:

9-10 Formerly, during the time that I appointed leaders for my Israelite people, many violent groups oppressed them. But this will not happen anymore. I have chosen a place where my Israelite people can live peacefully and no one will disturb them anymore. I will give them rest from being attacked by their enemies. And I will defeat all your enemies.

I declare to you that I, Yahweh, will enable your descendants to rule after you die.

ULB:

⁹ I will appoint a place for my people Israel and will plant them there, so that they may live in their own place and be troubled no more. No longer will wicked people oppress them, as they did before, ¹⁰ as they were doing from the days that I commanded judges to be over my people Israel. Then I will subdue all your enemies. Moreover I tell you that I, Yahweh, will build you a house.

translationWords:

- appoint, appointed
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- oppress, oppression, oppressor
- command, to command, commandment
- judge
- house

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - God continues to speak the message Nathan is supposed to give to David.
- **will plant them there** - God refers to putting Israel in the promised land like a plant he has put in the ground. AT: “I will settle them there” (See: **Metaphor**)
- **from the days that I commanded** - A time period of many generations is referred to by days. AT: “when I commanded” or “from the generations that I commanded” (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **to be over my people Israel** - To be in authority is referred to as being over someone. AT: “to command my people Israel” (See: **Idiom**)
- **all your enemies ... I tell you** - The words “your” and “you” refer to David.
- **subdue** - to make a person or animal unable to attack.
- **will build you a house** - Yahweh refers to giving David many descendants to rule over Israel as building him a house. (See: **Idiom**)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 17:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ When your life ends and you die and go to be with your ancestors who have died, I will appoint one of your sons to become king, and I will enable his kingdom to be strong. ¹² He is the one who will arrange for a temple to be built for me. And I will make the rule of one of his descendants so strong that it will last forever.

ULB:

¹¹ It will come about that when your days are fulfilled for you to go to your fathers, I will raise up your descendant after you, and for one of your own descendants, I will establish his kingdom. ¹² He will build me a house, and I will establish his throne forever.

translationWords:

- [fulfill](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [throne](#)
- [forever](#)

translationNotes:

- **when your days are fulfilled** - Life is referred to as a certain number of days. AT: “when you die” (See: [figs_euphemism](#))
- **go to your fathers** - This phrase refers to death as a place where David's ancestors are because they are already dead. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **I will raise up your descendant** - To put someone in leadership is referred to as raising them higher. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **I will establish his throne** - The right to rule as king is described by the place where a king sits. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 17:13-15

UDB:

¹³ I will be like a father to him, and it will be as though he is a son to me. I stopped loving Saul, the one who was the king before you became king, but I will never stop loving your son. ¹⁴ I will cause him to rule over my people and his kingdom will endure forever.”

¹⁵ So Nathan reported to David everything that Yahweh had revealed to him.

ULB:

¹³ I will be a father to him, and he will be my son. I will not take my covenant faithfulness away from him, as I took it from Saul, who ruled before you. ¹⁴ I will set him over my house and in my kingdom forever, and his throne will be established forever.” ¹⁵ Nathan spoke to David and reported to him all these words, and he told him about the entire vision.

translationWords:

- ancestor, father, forefather
- son, son of
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- Saul (OT)
- ruler, rulers, rule
- house
- Nathan
- David
- vision

translationNotes:

- **and his throne** - A king's right to rule is referred to by the place a king sits. AT: “and his right to rule” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **reported to him** - “told him”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 17:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ Then David went into the sacred tent and sat in the presence of Yahweh, and prayed this:

”Yahweh my God, I am certainly not worthy for you to have done of all these things for me, and my family is not worthy, either.

¹⁷ And O God, now, in addition to everything else, you have spoken about what will happen to my descendants in the future for many generations. Yahweh my God, you have acted toward me as though I was the most important man on the earth!

¹⁸ What more can I, David, say to you for honoring me? Yahweh, you know what kind of person I am.

ULB:

¹⁶ Then David the king went in and sat before Yahweh; he said, ”Who am I, Yahweh God, and what is my family, that you have brought me to this point? ¹⁷ For this was a small thing in your sight, God. You have spoken of your servant’s family for a great while to come, and have shown me future generations, Yahweh God. ¹⁸ What more can I, David, say to you? You have honored your servant. You have given your servant special recognition.

translationWords:

- Yahweh
- God
- family
- servant, slave, slavery
- generation
- honor, to honor

translationNotes:

- **he said** - “David said”
- **Who am I, Yahweh God, and what is my family, that you have brought me to this point?** - David asks this question to express his gratitude that God has chosen to bless him even though he does not deserve it. (See: **Rhetorical Question**)
- **this was a small thing** - Something that is not important is described as being small. (See: **Idiom**)
- **in your sight** - Yahweh’s sight is used to refer to his understanding. AT: “to you” (See: **Idiom**)

- **What more can I, David, say to you?** - David uses this question to express that he cannot fully express his thankfulness to God. AT: “If I could say more to express my gratitude then I would but I do not know what else to say. ” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **your servant** - David refers to himself as Yahweh’s servant.
- **You have honored your servant. You have given your servant special recognition** - Both of these phrases have the same meaning. If your language only has one way to express “honor” and “recognition” then this can be translated as one phrase. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 17:19-21

UDB:

¹⁹ You have done all this, Yahweh, and because it is what you wanted to do. You have done these great things for me and you have revealed to me these things that you have promised to do for me, because you love me.

²⁰ Yahweh, you are great. There is no one like you. Only you are God, which is what we have always heard. ²¹ And there is no nation in the world like Israel. Israel is the only nation on the earth whose people you went out to rescue. You performed great and awesome miracles, rescuing our ancestors from being slaves in Egypt, expelling the people of other people groups who were in Canaan.

ULB:

¹⁹ Yahweh, for your servant's sake, and to fulfill your own purpose, you have done this great thing to reveal all your great deeds. ²⁰ Yahweh, there is none like you, and there is no God besides you, just as we have always heard. ²¹ For what nation on earth is like your people Israel, whom you, God, rescued from Egypt as a people for yourself, to make a name for yourself by great and awesome deeds? You drove out nations from before your people, whom you rescued from Egypt.

translationWords:

- reveal, revelation
- works, deeds, work, acts
- nation
- earth, earthly
- chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Egypt, Egyptian
- name
- awe, awesome

translationNotes:

- **your servant's sake** - AT: "my benefit"
- **you rescued from Egypt** - AT: "rescued from slavery in Egypt. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))"
- **great and awesome deeds** - The words "great" and "awesome" mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of greatness. AT: "very awesome deeds." (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 17:22-24

UDB:

²² You have caused us your Israelite people to belong to you forever, and you, Yahweh, have become our God!

²³ And now Yahweh, I pray that you will cause the things that you have promised about me and my descendants to be fulfilled forever, and do the things that you have said that you would do. ²⁴ When that happens, you will be famous forever. And people will exclaim, 'Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, is the God who rules Israel!' And you will cause that forever there will be descendants of mine who will rule.

ULB:

²² You made Israel your own people forever, and you, Yahweh, became their God. ²³ So now, Yahweh, may the promise that you made concerning your servant and his family be established forever. Do as you have spoken. ²⁴ May your name be established forever and be great, so the people will say, 'Yahweh of hosts is the God of Israel,' while the house of me, David, your servant is established before you.

translationWords:

- forever
- promise
- Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host
- house
- David

translationNotes:

- **be established forever** - AT: "continue forever"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 17:25-27

UDB:

²⁵ You, my God, have revealed to me that you will cause some of my descendants to become kings. So I am brave enough to pray like this to you. ²⁶ Yahweh, you are God! You have promised to do these good things for me. ²⁷ And now you, Yahweh, have promised to bless my descendants, in order that they will continue to rule forever. That will happen because you, Yahweh, are the one who has blessed them, and you will keep blessing them forever.”

ULB:

²⁵ For you, my God, have revealed to your servant that you will build him a house. That is why I, your servant, have found courage to pray to you. ²⁶ Now, Yahweh, you are God, and have made this good promise to your servant: ²⁷ Now it has pleased you to bless your servant’s house, that it may continue forever before you. You, Yahweh, have blessed it, and it will be blessed forever.”

translationWords:

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [house](#)
- [courage, courageous](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [forever](#)

translationNotes:

- **will build him a house** - To have children and develop a large family is described as building a house. (See: [Idiom](#))
- **have found courage** - AT: “become courageous enough”
- **blessed it, and it will be blessed forever** - Means the same thing, repeated here for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 17 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 18 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

David's victories

David conquered all kingdoms neighboring Israel. The gold, silver and bronze he received from these victories, he saved for building the temple. This may indicate that he believed that the victory were because of Yahweh and therefore the goods received in victory belong to him. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 18:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 18:1-2

UDB:

¹ Some time later, David's army attacked the army of Philistia and defeated them. They captured the city of Gath and the surrounding villages.

² His army also defeated the army of the Moab people group. The people were forced to accept David to be their ruler, and also to pay money each year to David's government, in order that David's army would protect them.

ULB:

18 ¹ After this it came about that David attacked the Philistines and defeated them. He took Gath and its villages out of the Philistines' control. ² Then he defeated Moab, and the Moabites became servants to David and paid him tribute.

translationWords:

- [David](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Gath](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [tribute](#)

translationNotes:

- **After this** - "After God's promise to bless David"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 18:3-4

UDB:

³ David's army also fought against the army of Hadadezer, the king of the region of Zobah in Aram near the city of Hamath, when Hadadezer was trying to establish control over the area near the Euphrates River. ⁴ David's army captured one thousand of Hadadezer's chariots, seven thousand chariot drivers, and twenty thousand soldiers. They hamstrung most of their horses; there were only one hundred horses that they did not cripple.

ULB:

³ David then defeated Hadadezer, king of Zobah at Hamath, as Hadadezer was traveling to establish his rule by the Euphrates River. ⁴ David captured from him a thousand chariots, seven thousand horsemen, and twenty thousand footmen. David hamstrung all the chariot horses, but reserved enough of them for a hundred chariots.

translationWords:

- [Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [Euphrates River](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [horsemen](#)

translationNotes:

- **Hadadezer** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Zobah** - This is the name of a country.
- **a thousand chariots** - "a 1,000 chariots" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **seven thousand horsemen** - These are soldiers who rode on horses. "7,000 horsemen"
- **twenty thousand footmen** - These are soldiers who walked. "20,000 footmen"
- **hamstrung** - to cripple a person or animal by cutting the hamstring muscle on the back of the thigh
- **reserved** - to keep for a special use
- **a hundred chariots** - "100 chariots"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 18:5-6

UDB:

⁵ When the army of Aram came from the city of Damascus to help Hadadezer's army, David's soldiers killed twenty-two thousand of them. ⁶ Then David stationed groups of his soldiers in Damascus, and the people of Aram were forced to accept David to be their ruler, and to pay to David's government each year the payment that he demanded. And Yahweh enabled David's army to win battles everywhere they went.

ULB:

⁵ When the Arameans of Damascus came to help Hadadezer king of Zobah, David killed twenty-two thousand Aramean men. ⁶ Then David put garrisons in Aram of Damascus, and the Arameans became servants to him and brought him tribute. Yahweh gave victory to David wherever he went.

translationWords:

- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [tribute](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **killed twenty-two thousand** - "killed 22,000". (See: [Numbers](#))
- **garrisons** - groups of soldiers assigned to a particular area.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 18:7-8

UDB:

⁷ David soldiers took the gold shields that were carried by the officers of Hadadezer's army and brought them to Jerusalem. ⁸ They also brought from Tebah and Cun, two cities that belonged to Hadadezer, a lot of bronze, which David's son Solomon later used to make the huge bronze basin and the pillars and other bronze items for the temple.

ULB:

⁷ David took the golden shields that were on Hadadezer's servants and brought them to Jerusalem. ⁸ From Tibhath and Cun, cities of Hadadezer, David took very much bronze. It was with this bronze that Solomon later made the bronze sea, the pillars, and the bronze equipment.

translationWords:

- gold
- shield
- Jerusalem
- bronze
- Solomon
- pillar, column

translationNotes:

- **Hadadezer** - See how you translated his name in [18:1](#).
- **Tibhath ... Cun** - These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the bronze sea** - This a large bronze bowl, about 5 meters across, that was kept in the temple for ceremonial washing.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 18:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ When Tou, the king of the city of Hamath in Aram, heard that David's army had defeated the entire army of King Hadadezer, ¹⁰ he sent his son Hadoram to King David, to greet him and congratulate him about his defeating Hadadezer's army, which had been fighting the army of Tou. Hadoram brought to David many items made of gold, silver, and bronze.

¹¹ King David dedicated those things to Yahweh, like he had done with the silver and gold that his soldiers had taken from the Edom and Moab people groups, and from the Ammon people group and from the people of Philistia, and from the descendants of Amalek.

ULB:

⁹ When Toi, king of Hamath, heard that David had defeated all the army of Hadadezer king of Zobah, ¹⁰ Toi sent Hadoram his son to King David to greet him and to bless him, because David had fought against Hadadezer and defeated him, and because Hadadezer had waged war against Toi. Hadoram brought with himself objects of silver, gold, and bronze. ¹¹ King David set these objects apart to Yahweh, together with the silver and the gold that he carried away from all the nations: Edom, Moab, the people of Ammon, the Philistines, and Amalek.

translationWords:

- king
- Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites
- David
- bless, blessed, blessing
- silver
- Yahweh
- nation
- Edom, Edomite, Idumea
- Moab, Moabite, Moabites
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites
- Philistines
- Amalek, Amalekite

translationNotes:

- **Toi ... Hadoram** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **fought against** - "been at war with"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 18:12-13

UDB:

¹² The army of David's army commander Abishai, whose mother was Zeruah, killed eighteen thousand soldiers from Edom in the Valley of Salt. ¹³ Then David stationed groups of his soldiers there in Edom, and the people of Edom were forced to accept David to be their king and to pay money to David's government every year. And Yahweh enabled David's army to win battles wherever they went.

ULB:

¹² Abishai son of Zeruah killed eighteen thousand Edomites in the Valley of Salt. ¹³ He placed garrisons in Edom, and all the Edomites became David's servants. Yahweh gave victory to David wherever he went.

translationWords:

- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **Abishai ... Zeruah** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **eighteen thousand Edomites** - "18,000 Edomites" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Valley of Salt** - This is the name of a valley between Edom and Judah that was used as a battlefield.
- **garrisons** - groups of soldiers assigned to a particular area.
- **all the Edomites became David's servants** - "the people of Edom were forced to accept David to be their king and to pay money to David's government every year" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 18:14-17**UDB:**

¹⁴ David ruled over all the Israelite people, and he always did for them what was just and fair. ¹⁵ Joab son of Zeruiah was the chief army commander. Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was the record keeper. ¹⁶ Zadok son of Ahitub and Ahimelech son of Abiathar were the high priests. Shavsha was the official secretary. ¹⁷ Benaiah son of Jehoiada ruled over the Kereth and Peleth groups who were David's bodyguards. And David's sons were his most important officials.

ULB:

¹⁴ David reigned over all Israel, and he administered justice and righteousness to all his people. ¹⁵ Joab son of Zeruiah was the commander of the army, and Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was recorder. ¹⁶ Zadok son of Ahitub and Ahimelech son of Abiathar were priests, and Shavsha was scribe. ¹⁷ Benaiah son of Jehoiada was over the Cherethites and Pelethites, and David's sons were the king's leading advisors.

translationWords:

- reign
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- administration, administrator
- just, justice, justly
- righteous, righteousness
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Joab
- son, son of
- commander, command
- Jehoshaphat
- Zadok
- priest, priesthood
- scribe, expert in the Jewish law
- king
- counsel, counselor, advice, advisor

translationNotes:

- **Zeruiah ... Ahilud ... Ahitub ... Abiathar ... Shavsha ... Benaiah ... Jehoiada** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **recorder** - the person who writes down details of special events.

- **Ahimelech** - This spelling represents a correction of the spelling “Abimelech,” which some versions follow. The corrected spelling makes this verse agree with 2 Sam. 8:17.
- **Zadok son of Ahitub and Ahimelech son of Abiathar were priests** - Some versions correct this to say that Ahitub and Ahimelech were high priests.
- **Cherethites ... Pelethites** - These are the names of people groups.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 18 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the beginning of the story about the war against the Ammonites. This story continues in the first part of the next chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Insults

The young king of Ammon insulted David when he had David's servants shaved and cut off their garments. Knowing David was going to attack him for this, he hired mercenaries from Aram to help him. Israel was able defeated the Aramean mercenaries.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 19:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 19:1-3

UDB:

¹ Some time later, Nahash, the king of the Ammon people group, died. Then his son Hanun became their king. ² When David heard about that, he thought to himself, “Nahash was kind to me, so I will be kind to his son.” So David sent some officials there, to tell Hanun that he was sorry to hear that Hanun’s father had died.

But when David’s officials came to Hanun in the land where the Ammonite lived, ³ the leaders of the Ammon people group said to Hanun, “Do you think that David is really to honor your father that King David is sending these men to say that he is sorry that your father died? We think that his men have come to look around our city in order to determine how his army can conquer us.”

ULB:

19 ¹ It came about later that Nahash, king of the people of Ammon, died, and that his son became king in his place. ² David said, “I will show kindness to Hanun son of Nahash, because his father showed kindness to me.” So David sent messengers to console him concerning his father. David’s servants entered the land of the Ammonites and went to Hanun, in order to console him. ³ But the Ammonites princes said to Hanun, “Do you think that David is honoring your father because he has sent men to comfort you? Do not his servants come to you to explore and examine the land in order to overthrow it?”

translationWords:

- king
- Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess
- death, die, dead
- son, son of
- David
- messenger
- ancestor, father, forefather
- servant, slave, slavery

translationNotes:

- **Nahash ... Hanun** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **I will show kindness ... showed kindness** - AT: “I will be kind ... was kind”
- **console** - “comfort”
- **Do you think that David is honoring your father because he has sent men to comfort you?** - AT: “You should not think that David is honoring your father because he has sent men to comfort you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

- **Do not his servants come to you to explore and examine the land in order to overthrow it?** - AT: “Surely his servants come to you to explore the land in order to overthrow it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 19:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Hanun believed what they said; so he commanded some soldiers who seized the officials whom David had sent, and shaved off their beards, and insulted them by cutting off the lower part of their robes, and then sent them away.

⁵ The officials were greatly humiliated. When David found out about what had happened to his officials, he sent some messengers to them to tell them, “Stay at Jericho until your beards have grown again, and then return home.”

ULB:

⁴ So Hanun seized David’s servants, shaved them, cut off their garments to the waist, up to their buttocks, and sent them away. ⁵ When they explained this to David, he sent to meet with them, for the men were deeply ashamed. The king said, “Stay at Jericho until your beards have grown back, and then return.”

translationWords:

- [seize](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [Jericho](#)

translationNotes:

- **garments** - “clothes”
- **he sent to meet with them** - “he sent some messengers to encourage them” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **deeply ashamed** - Shame is described as deep to show that it has greatly affected them. AT: “very ashamed” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 19:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Then the leaders of the Ammon people group realized that they had greatly insulted David. So Hanun and some of his officials sent thirty-four thousand kilograms of silver to hire chariots and chariot drivers from the regions of Aram Naharaim, Aram Maacah and Zobah northeast of Israel. ⁷ They hired thirty-two thousand chariots and chariot drivers, as well as the kings of the region of Maacah and their armies. They came and set up their tents near the city of Medeba in the region of Moab. The soldiers from the Ammon people group also marched out and stood in their positions at the entrance to their capital city, Rabbah.

ULB:

⁶ When the Ammonites saw that they had become a stench to David, Hanun and the Ammonites sent a thousand talents of silver to hire Aramean chariots and horsemen from Naharaim, Maacah, and Zobah. ⁷ They hired them thirty-two thousand chariots with the king of Maacah and his people, who came and encamped before Medeba. The Ammonites gathered themselves together from their cities, and came out for war.

translationWords:

- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [horsemen](#)

translationNotes:

- **become a stench to David** - The word “stench” refers to a bad smell. This describes the Ammonites as something unpleasant and unwanted. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **a thousand talents** - “1,000 talents” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **talents** - (See: [Biblical Money](#))
- **Naharaim ... Maacah ... Zobah ... Medeba** - These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 19:8-9

UDB:

⁸ When David heard about that, he sent Joab and all his army. ⁹ The soldiers of the Ammon people group came out of their city and lined up for battle at the entrance to their capital city, Rabbah. Meanwhile, the other kings who had come with their armies stood in their positions in the open fields.

ULB:

⁸ When David heard of it, he sent Joab and his entire army to meet them. ⁹ The people of Ammon came out and lined up for battle at the city gate, while the kings who had come were by themselves in the field.

translationWords:

- [Joab](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [king](#)

translationNotes:

- **heard of it** - “heard that the Ammonites were coming out for war”
- **to meet them** - “to fight against them”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 19:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Joab saw that there were groups of enemy soldiers in front of his troops and behind his troops. So he selected some of the best Israelite troops and put them in positions to fight against the soldiers of Aram. ¹¹ He appointed his older brother Abishai to be the commander of his other soldiers and he told them to stand in their positions in front of the army of the Ammon people group.

ULB:

¹⁰ When Joab saw the battle lines facing him both in front and behind, he chose some of Israel's best fighters and arranged them against the Arameans. ¹¹ As for the rest of the army, he gave it into the command of Abishai his brother, and he put them into battle lines against the army of Ammon.

translationWords:

- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)

translationNotes:

- **Abishai** - This is the name of Joab's brother. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 19:12-13

UDB:

¹² Joab said to them, "If the soldiers from Aram are too strong for us to defeat them, then your soldiers must come and help us. But if the soldiers from the Ammon people group are too strong for you to defeat them, then my soldiers will come and help your men. ¹³ We must be strong and fight hard to defend our people and our cities that belong to our God. I will pray that Yahweh will do what he considers to be good."

ULB:

¹² Joab said, "If the Arameans are too strong for me, then you, Abishai, must rescue me. But if the army of Ammon is too strong for you, then I will come and rescue you. ¹³ Be strong, and let us show ourselves to be strong for our people and for the cities of our God, for Yahweh will do what is good for his purpose."

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **Be strong** - "Be brave"
- **let us show ourselves to be strong** - AT: "let us behave boldly".

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 19:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ So Joab and his troops advanced to fight the army of Aram , and the soldiers from Aram ran away from them. ¹⁵ And when the soldiers of the Ammon people group saw that the soldiers from Aram were running away, they also started to run away from Abishai and his army, and they retreated back inside the city. So Joab and his army returned to Jerusalem.

ULB:

¹⁴ So Joab and the soldiers of his army advanced to the battle against the Arameans, who were forced to flee before the army of Israel. ¹⁵ When the army of Ammon saw that the Arameans had fled, they also fled from Joab's brother Abishai and went back into the city. Then Joab returned from the people of Ammon and went back to Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [Joab](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **advanced to the battle** - AT: “moved forward to the battle” or “approached the enemy soldiers in the battle”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 19:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ After the leaders of the army of Aram realized that they had been defeated by the army of Israel, they sent messengers to another part of Aram on the east side of the Euphrates river, and brought troops from there to the battle area, with Shophach, the commander of Hadadezer's army, leading them.

¹⁷ When David heard about that, he gathered all the Israelite soldiers, and they crossed the Jordan River. They advanced and took their battle positions to attack the army of Aram.

ULB:

¹⁶ When the Arameans saw that they were being defeated by Israel, they sent for reinforcements from beyond the Euphrates River, with Shophach the commander of Hadadezer's army. ¹⁷ When David was told this, he gathered all Israel together, crossed the Jordan, and came upon them. He arranged the army for battle against the Arameans, and they fought him.

translationWords:

- [Euphrates River](#)
- [commander, command](#)
- [Jordan River](#)

translationNotes:

- **the Arameans saw** - "the Arameans understood" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **reinforcements** - "more soliders"
- **Shophach ... Hadadezer** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **When David was told this** - AT: When his messengers told David this (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **arranged** - "organized"
- **they fought him** - "the Arameans fought David and his soldiers"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 19:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ But the army of Aram ran away from the soldiers of Israel. However, David's soldiers killed seven thousand of their chariot drivers and forty thousand other soldiers. They also killed Shophach, their army commander.

¹⁹ When the kings who had been ruled by Hadadezer realized that they had been defeated by the Israelite army, they made peace with David, and agreed to allow him to rule them.

So the rulers of Aram did not want to help the rulers of the Ammon people group anymore.

ULB:

¹⁸ The Arameans fled from Israel, and David killed seven thousand Aramean charioteers and forty thousand foot soldiers. He also killed Shophach, the commander of the army. ¹⁹ When all the kings who were servants of Hadadezer saw that they were defeated by Israel, they made peace with David and served them. So the people of Aram were no longer willing to help the Ammonites.

translationWords:

- [Aram, Aramean, Aramaic](#)
- [David](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [commander, command](#)
- [king](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess](#)

translationNotes:

- **killed seven thousand** - "killed 7,000" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **forty thousand foot soldiers** - "40,000 foot soldiers"
- **Shophach ... Hadadezer** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 19 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the story of the war with Ammon and tells of giants being killed by David's soldiers.

Special concepts in this chapter

"When kings normally go to war"

It was advantageous for kings to go to war in the springtime. This was possibly due to the weather being neither too hot or too cold.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"It came about"

This is a phrase repeated used to indicate the next event in a series. It can often be translated as "after," "then" or "next."

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 20:01 Notes](#)

springti

1 Chronicles 20:1

UDB:

¹ In that region, kings usually went with their armies to fight their enemies in the springtime. But the following year, David did not do that. Instead, he stayed in Jerusalem, and he sent his commander Joab to lead the army. Joab took his troops. They crossed the Jordan River and ruined the land of the Ammon people group. Then they went to Rabbah, the capital city, and surrounded it. David stayed in Jerusalem for a while. But later he took more troops and went to help Joab. Their armies attacked Rabbah and destroyed it.

ULB:

20 ¹ It came about in the springtime, at the time when kings normally go to war, that Joab led the army into battle and devastated the land of the Ammonites. He went and besieged Rabbah. David remained in Jerusalem. Joab attacked Rabbah and defeated it.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonites](#)
- [siege, besiege](#)
- [Rabbah](#)
- [David](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

translationNotes:

- **devastated the land** - “destroyed the land” This refers to when an army will ruin the land where their enemies grow food.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 20:2-3

UDB:

² Then David took the crown from the head of the king of Rabbah and put it on his own head. It was very heavy; it weighed thirty-four kilograms, and it had many very valuable stones. They also took many other valuable things from the city. ³ Then they brought the people out of the city and forced them to work for their army, using saws and iron picks and axes. David's soldiers did this in all the cities of the Ammon people group. Then David and all of his army returned to Jerusalem.

ULB:

² David took the crown of their king from off his head, and he found that it weighed a talent of gold, and in it were precious stones. The crown was set on David's head, and he brought out the plunder of the city in large quantities. ³ He brought out the people who were in the city and forced them to work with saws and iron picks and axes. David required all the cities of the people of Ammon to do this labor. Then David and all the army returned to Jerusalem.

translationWords:

- [crown, to crown](#)
- [gold](#)
- [precious](#)
- [labor, laborer](#)

translationNotes:

- **talent** - (See: [Biblical Money](#))
- **The crown was set on David's head** - AT: "David's men placed the crown on his head" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **plunder** - valuable items taken in war.
- **David required all the cities of the people** - The people are referred to by their city. AT: "David required all the peoples of the cities" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 20:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Later, David's army fought a battle with the army of Philistia, at the city of Gezer. During the battle Sibbecai, from Hushah clan, killed Sippai, one of the descendants of the of the Rapha giants. So the armies of Philistia were defeated.

⁵ In another battle against the soldiers of Philistia, Elhanan son of Jair, killed Lahmi, the younger brother of the giant Goliath from the city of Gath, who had a spear which was as thick as a weaver's rod.

ULB:

⁴ It came about after this that there was a battle at Gezer with the Philistines. Sibbecai the Hushathite killed Sippai, one of the descendants of the Rephaim, and the Philistines were subdued.

⁵ It came about again in a battle with the Philistines at Gob, that Elhanan son of Jari the Bethlehemite killed Lahmi brother of Goliath the Gittite, the staff of whose spear was like a weaver's beam.

translationWords:

- [Philistines](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
- [Goliath](#)
- [spear](#)

translationNotes:

- **Gezer ... Gob** - These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Sibbecai ... Sippai ... Elhanan ... Jari ... Lahmi** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Hushathite ... Rephaim ... Bethlehemite ... Gittite** - These are the names of people groups.
- **subdued** - to control someone or something through the use of force.
- **staff** - a long and thin pole.
- **a weaver's beam** - a piece of wood used to stretch strings as the threads of a rug are weaved together around them.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 20 General Notes
- **1 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 20:6-8

UDB:

⁶ There was another battle near Gath. A huge man was there who had six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot. He was descended from the Rapha giants. ⁷ When he made fun of the soldiers of Israel, Jehonadab son of Shimea killed him. Shimea was David's older brother.

⁸ Those were some of the descendants of the Rapha giants who had lived in Gath, who were killed by David and his soldiers.

ULB:

⁶ It came about in another battle at Gath that there was a man of great height who had six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot. He also was descended from the Rephaim. ⁷ When he mocked the army of Israel, Jehonadab son of Shimea, David's brother, killed him. ⁸ These were descendants of the Rephaim of Gath, and they were killed by the hand of David and by the hand of his soldiers.

translationWords:

- [Gath](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [David](#)
- [brother](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

translationNotes:

- **Rephaim** - This is the name given to a race of people who were very tall and strong. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Jehonadab ... Shimea** - These are the names of men.
- **they were killed by the hand of David and by the hand of his soldiers** - David and his soldiers are referred to by the part of their bodies used to hold a sword. AT: "David and his soldiers killed the descendants of the Rephaim" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 20 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust

To trust in one's own power instead of God's protection is a sin. David had been trusting God to protect him; but now he counted the men of military age so he could know the strength of his army. (See: [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 21:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 21:1-3

UDB:

¹ Satan decided to cause the Israelite people to have trouble. So he incited David to find out how many men in Israel were able to be in the army.

² So David commanded Joab and the other army commanders, “Count all the men in Israel who are able to be in the army. Start at Beersheba in the south and go all the way to Dan in the north. Then come back and report to me, in order that I may know how many men there are.”

³ But Joab replied, “Your Majesty, I hope that Yahweh will make our army a hundred times larger than it is now. But we all serve you. So you should not commit this sin and make Israel suffer for it.”

ULB:

21 ¹ An adversary arose against Israel and incited David to count Israel. ² David said to Joab and to the commanders of the army, “Go, count the people of Israel from Beersheba to Dan and report back to me, that I may know their number.” ³ Joab said, “May Yahweh make his army a hundred times greater than it is. But my master the king, do they not all serve my master? Why does my master want this? Why bring guilt on Israel?”

translationWords:

- adversary, enemy
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- David
- Joab
- commander, command
- Beersheba
- Dan
- Yahweh
- lord, master, sir
- king
- serve, service
- guilt, guilty

translationNotes:

- **An adversary arose against Israel** - To become higher describes becoming more powerful. AT: “An enemy of Israel became more powerful” (See: **Idiom**)
- **incited** - To have caused someone to act.

- **from Beersheba to Dan** - The Israelites considered these two cities their most southern and most northern cities. David uses these cities to refer to all of Israel. (See: [Merism](#))
- **a hundred times greater than it is** - Joab expresses the desire for an army the size of 100 armies to say he would like the army to have more soldiers and be more powerful. (See: [Hyperbole](#))
- **But my master the king, do they not all serve my master? Why does my master want this? Why bring guilt on Israel?** - AT: But my master the king, they all serve you already. My master should not request this. You will only bring guilt on the people of Israel by your desire for military power.” (See: [Rhetorical Question Ellipsis](#))
- **Why does my master want this?** - The word “this” refers to David’s plan to count all the men of Israel.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 21:4-5

UDB:

⁴ But David would not change his mind. So Joab and his soldiers went everywhere in Israel and in Judah, and counted the people. Then they returned to Jerusalem, ⁵ and they reported to David that there were 1,100,000 men in Israel who could be in the army, and 470,000 in Judah.

ULB:

⁴ But the king's word was final against Joab. So Joab left and went throughout all Israel. Then he came back to Jerusalem. ⁵ Then Joab reported the total of the count of the fighting men to David. There were in Israel 1,100,000 men who drew the sword. Judah alone had 470,000 soldiers.

translationWords:

- [word](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [sword](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [warrior, soldier](#)

translationNotes:

- **the king's word was final** - This phrase refers to king David's order to be final because he would not change his order after it was given. AT: "the king's order was not going to change" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **men who drew the sword** - The soldiers in Israel are described by the action of pulling out a sword to fight with. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 21:6-8

UDB:

⁶ However, Joab did not count the men from the tribes of Levi and Benjamin, because he was disgusted with what the king had commanded.

⁷ David's command to count the people caused God to become angry, so he told David that he had decided to punish the people of Israel. ⁸ Then David prayed to God. He said to him, "What I did was very foolish. I have sinned greatly by what I have done. So now I plead with you, please forgive me."

ULB:

⁶ But Levi and Benjamin were not counted among them, for the king's command had disgusted Joab. ⁷ God was offended by this action, so he attacked Israel. ⁸ David said to God, "I have greatly sinned by doing this. Now take away your servant's guilt, for I have acted very foolishly."

translationWords:

- Levite, Levi
- Benjamin
- command, to command, commandment
- God
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- servant, slave, slavery
- guilt, guilty
- fool, foolish, folly

translationNotes:

- **But Levi and Benjamin were not counted among them** - AT: "But Joab did not count the men from the tribes of Levi and Benjamin" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **by this action** - "this action" refers to David's plan to count all the men of Israel who are able to fight.
- **take away your servant's guilt** - Forgiveness is described as having guilt taken away. AT: "forgive me" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **your servant's guilt** - David refers to himself as God's servant. AT: "my guilt" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 21 General Notes
- 1 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 21:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Then Yahweh said to Gad, David's prophet, ¹⁰ "Go and tell this to David: 'I am allowing you to choose one of three things to punish you. I will do whichever one you choose.'"

ULB:

⁹ Yahweh told Gad, David's prophet, ¹⁰ "Go say to David, 'This is what Yahweh says: I am giving you three choices. Choose one of them.'"

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 21:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ So Gad went to David and said to him, "This is what Yahweh says: 'You can choose one of these punishments: ¹² three years of famine in Israel, or three months during which your armies will run away from their enemies who will attack them with swords, or three days during which I will send my angel to cause many people in the country to die because of a plague.' So you must decide what I will say to answer Yahweh, the one who sent me."

ULB:

¹¹ So Gad went to David and said to him, "Yahweh says this, 'Choose one of these: ¹² either three years of famine, three months being pursued by your enemies and being caught by their swords, or else three days of Yahweh's sword, that is, a plague in the land, with the angel of Yahweh destroying throughout all the land of Israel.' Now then, decide what answer I should take to the one who sent me."

translationWords:

- [famine](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [sword](#)
- [plague](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)

translationNotes:

- **being caught by their swords** - This phrase is a mild way to describe being killed by the enemy. (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **Yahweh's sword** - This phrase describes Yahweh's method of killing by the tool a soldier would use to kill. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **destroying** - AT: "killing"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 21:13-15

UDB:

¹³ David replied to Gad, "I am very distressed. But allow Yahweh to punish me, because he is very merciful. Do not allow humans to punish me, because they will not be merciful."

¹⁴ So Yahweh sent a plague on the people of Israel, and seventy thousand of them died because of it.

¹⁵ And God sent an angel to destroy the people in Jerusalem by the plague. But when the angel was standing at the ground where Ornan, from the Jebus people group, threshed grain, Yahweh saw all the suffering that the people had endured, and he was grieved. So he said to the angel, "Stop what you are doing! That is enough!"

ULB:

¹³ Then David said to Gad, "I am in deep trouble. Let me fall into the hand of Yahweh rather than into the hand of man, for his merciful actions are very great." ¹⁴ So Yahweh sent a plague on Israel, and seventy thousand people died. ¹⁵ God sent an angel to Jerusalem to destroy it. As he was about to destroy it, Yahweh watched and changed his mind about the harm. He said to the destroying angel, "Enough! Now draw back your hand." At that time the angel of Yahweh was standing at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite.

translationWords:

- David
- trouble, troubles, troubled
- Yahweh
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- mercy, merciful
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- death, die, dead
- angel, archangel
- Jerusalem
- thresh, threshing
- Jebusites, Jebus

translationNotes:

- **I am in deep trouble** - AT: "I am in a great amount of trouble" (See: **Idiom**)
- **Let me fall into the hand of Yahweh rather than into the hand of man, for his merciful actions are very great** - AT: "Let me come under the control of Yahweh, rather than under the control of people, for Yahweh is very merciful." (See: **Metonymy**)
- **and seventy thousand people died** - "and 70,000 people died" (See: **Numbers**)

- **changed his mind** - To change a decision. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **draw back your hand** - Yahweh tells the destroying angel to stop killing the people. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **the angel of Yahweh was standing** - The angel of Yahweh is described as something that would stand as a person would stand. (See: [Personification](#))
- **Ornan** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 21:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ David looked up and saw the angel whom Yahweh had sent, standing between the sky and the ground. The angel had a sword in his hand that was pointed toward Jerusalem. Then David and the elders of the city, who were wearing clothes made of rough sackcloth, prostrated themselves on the ground.

¹⁷ David said to God, “I am the one who ordered the men who could be in the army to be counted. I am the one who has sinned and done what is very wrong, but these people are as innocent as sheep. They have certainly not done anything that is wrong. So Yahweh my God, punish me and my family, but do not allow this plague to continue to cause your people to become sick and die.”

ULB:

¹⁶ David looked up and saw the angel of Yahweh standing between earth and heaven, having a drawn sword in his hand raised over Jerusalem. Then David and the elders, clothed in sackcloth, lay facedown on the ground. ¹⁷ David said to God, “Is it not I that commanded that the army be numbered? I did this wicked thing. But these sheep, what have they done? Yahweh my God! Let your hand strike me and my family, but do not let the plague remain on your people.”

translationWords:

- earth, earthly
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- Jerusalem
- elder
- sackcloth
- God
- command, to command, commandment
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- sheep, ram, ewe
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- family
- plague

translationNotes:

- **having a drawn sword in his hand** - AT: “ready to attack” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **Is it not I that commanded that the army be numbered?** - AT: “I am the one who commanded that the army be numbered.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

- **But these sheep** - David describes the people of Israel as a type of animal that will trust and follow a leader. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **what have they done?** - AT: “They certainly have done nothing that deserves punishment.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 21:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ Then the angel who was sent by Yahweh told Gad to go up to the place where Ornan threshed grain and tell David to build an altar to worship Yahweh there. ¹⁹ So after Gad told David, he obeyed the message that Yahweh had given to Gad, and he went up there.

²⁰ While Ornan was threshing some wheat, he turned and saw the angel. His four sons who were with him also saw the angel, and they hid themselves.

ULB:

¹⁸ So the angel of Yahweh commanded Gad to say to David, that David should go up and build an altar for Yahweh at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite. ¹⁹ So David went up as Gad instructed him to do in the name of Yahweh. ²⁰ While Ornan was threshing wheat, he turned and saw the angel. He and his four sons with him hid themselves.

translationWords:

- [angel, archangel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [altar](#)
- [thresh, threshing](#)
- [Jebusites, Jebus](#)
- [name](#)
- [wheat](#)

translationNotes:

- **Ornan** - See how you translated his name in [21:15](#).
- **as Gad instructed him to do in the name of Yahweh** - AT: “as Gad, speaking with Yahweh’s authority, had told David to do.”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 21:21-22

UDB:

²¹ Then David approached. When Ornan saw him, he left the place where he was threshing grain and prostrated himself, with his face touching the ground.

²² David said to him, "Please sell me this place for threshing in order that I can build an altar here to worship Yahweh, in order that he will stop this plague. I will pay the full price."

ULB:

²¹ When David came to Ornan, Ornan looked and saw David. He left the threshing floor and bowed to David with his face to the ground. ²² Then David said to Ornan, "Sell me this threshing floor, so I can build an altar for Yahweh. I will pay the full price, so that the plague may be removed from the people."

translationWords:

- [thresh, threshing](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [altar](#)
- [plague](#)

translationNotes:

- **with his face to the ground** - This phrase describes that Ornan bowed far forward. To bow before someone is a way to show humility and respect. A deeper bow shows greater humility and respect.
- **full price** - AT: "I will pay the full price this threshing floor is worth"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 21:23-24

UDB:

²³ Ornan replied, “Take it! Your Majesty, do whatever you want to. I will give you the oxen that thresh the grain for an offering to be completely burned on the altar. And I will give you the threshing boards to use as wood on the altar, and I will give you flour for a flour offering. I will give all those things to you.”

²⁴ But the king said to Ornan, “No, I will not take these things as a gift. I will pay you the full price for it. I will not take what belongs to you, and offer sacrifices that have cost me nothing and offer them to Yahweh to be completely burned on the altar.”

ULB:

²³ Ornan said to David, “Take it as your own, my master the king. Do with it what is good in your sight. Look, I will give you oxen for burnt offerings, threshing sledges for wood, and wheat for the grain offering; I will give it all to you.” ²⁴ King David said to Ornan, “No, I insist on buying it for the full price. I will not take what is yours and offer it as a burnt offering to Yahweh if it costs me nothing.”

translationWords:

- lord, master, sir
- king
- ox, oxen
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- thresh, threshing
- grain offering

translationNotes:

- **Take it as your own** - AT: “Take it as a gift” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **what is good in your sight** - David’s understanding is described as his sight. AT: “what seems good to you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **threshing sledges** - a wooden sled with rocks or metal fitted underneath, used to separate grain from its stalks by pulling it over wheat placed on the threshing floor. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 21 General Notes
- **1 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 21:25-27

UDB:

²⁵ So David paid to Ornan six and one-half kilograms of gold for the whole area. ²⁶ David built an altar to worship Yahweh there, and he offered sacrifices to be completely burned on the altar and sacrifices to restore fellowship with Yahweh. David prayed to Yahweh, and Yahweh answered by sending a fire from heaven to burn up the offerings on the altar.

²⁷ Then Yahweh spoke to the angel, and told him to put his sword back into its sheath. So the angel did that.

ULB:

²⁵ So David paid six hundred shekels of gold for the place. ²⁶ David built an altar for Yahweh there and offered on it burnt offerings and fellowship offerings. He called on Yahweh, who answered him with fire from heaven on the altar for burnt offerings. ²⁷ Then Yahweh gave an order to the angel, and the angel put his sword back into its sheath.

translationWords:

- [David](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [fellowship offering](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [angel, archangel](#)
- [sword](#)

translationNotes:

- **six hundred shekels of gold** - “600 shekels of gold” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **shekels** - (See: [Biblical Money](#))
- **He called on Yahweh** - “he prayed to Yahweh for help”
- **the angel put his sword back into its sheath** - AT: the angel stopped killing people.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **sheath** - a cover for a sword or knife.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 21:28-30

UDB:

²⁸ And when David saw that Yahweh had answered him there at the place where Ornan threshed grain and had ended the plague, he offered sacrifices there. ²⁹ Yahweh's sacred tent, which Moses had commanded to be set up in the wilderness, and the altar for burning sacrifices completely, were at that time on a hill at the city of Gibeon. ³⁰ But David did not want to go there to request God to tell him what he wanted David to do, because he was afraid that the angel sent from Yahweh might strike him with his sword; he realized that this was the place that Yahweh now wanted sacrifices to be made.

ULB:

²⁸ When David saw that Yahweh had answered him at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite, he performed the sacrifice there at that same time. ²⁹ Now at that time, Yahweh's tabernacle, which Moses had made in the wilderness, and the altar for burnt offerings, were at the high place at Gibeon. ³⁰ However, David could not go there to ask for God's direction, because he was afraid of the sword of the angel of Yahweh.

translationWords:

- thresh, threshing
- Jebusites, Jebus
- sacrifice, offering
- tabernacle
- Moses
- desert, wilderness
- altar
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- high places
- Gibeon, Gibeonite
- God
- fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh
- sword

translationNotes:

- **Ornan** - See how you translated his name in [21:15](#).
- **God's direction** - AT: God to tell him what he should do"
- **afraid of the sword of the angel of Yahweh** - AT: "afraid he would be killed by the angel of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 21 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a new section lasting for the remainder of the book. David begins preparing the things needed for building the temple. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Solomon

In addition to preparing for the construction of the temple by gathering supplies, David also prepares his son, Solomon, to build the temple. David instructs Solomon to obey God. This is what is most necessary.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 22:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 22:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then David said, “Here, at the edge of Jerusalem, is where we will build the temple for our God Yahweh, and where we will make the altar for burning the offerings that the Israelite people will bring.”

² So David commanded that the foreigners who lived in Israel must gather together. When they did that, he appointed some of those men to cut huge stones from the quarries and to smooth their surfaces, to be used to build the temple of God.

ULB:

22 ¹ Then David said, “This is where the house of Yahweh God will be, with the altar for the burnt offerings of Israel.”

² So David ordered his servants to gather together the foreigners living in the land of Israel. He assigned them to be stonecutters, to cut stone blocks, in order to build God’s house.

translationWords:

- [David](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [God](#)
- [altar](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)

translationNotes:

- **stonecutters** - These are persons who gathered large stones and cut them to the correct size so builders could use the rocks in walls and buildings.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 22:3-5

UDB:

³ David provided a large amount of iron for making nails and hinges for the doors in the gates of the temple. He also provided a huge amount of bronze for making various utensils; and because there was a huge amount of it, no one could weigh it all. ⁴ He also provided money for buying a large amount of cedar logs. Because there was a huge number of them, no one counted them. Those were logs that men from Tyre and Sidon cities sent to David.

⁵ David provided all those things because he thought, “My son Solomon is still young and he does not know what he needs to know about building buildings, and the temple of Yahweh must be magnificent. It must be a glorious building that will become famous, and people throughout the world must consider it to be glorious. So now I will begin to prepare for it to be built, and Solomon will be responsible for finishing it.” So David collected a great amount of building materials before he died.

ULB:

³ David supplied a large amount of iron for the nails for the doors to go in the gateways, and for braces. He also supplied more bronze than could be weighed, ⁴ and more cedar trees than could be counted. (The Sidonians and the Tyrians brought too many cedar logs to David to count.) ⁵ David said, “My son Solomon is young and inexperienced, and the house that is to be built for Yahweh must be especially magnificent, so that it will be famous and glorious in all other lands. So I will prepare for its building.” So David made extensive preparations before his death.

translationWords:

- gate, gate bar
- bronze
- cedar
- Sidon, Sidonians
- Tyre, Tyrians
- Solomon
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- glory, glorious
- death, die, dead

translationNotes:

- **braces** - “clamps” or “hinges.” This are items that connect two things together.
- **than could be weighed** - AT: “than anyone could weigh” (See: [Active or Passive Hyperbole](#))
- **than could be counted** - AT: “than anyone could count” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

- **the house that is to be built for Yahweh** - AT: “Yahweh’s house” or “the house that he will build for Yahweh”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 22:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ Then David summoned his son Solomon, and told him that he should arrange for a temple to be built for Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites worshiped. ⁷ He said to him, "I wanted to build a temple to honor Yahweh, my God. ⁸ But Yahweh told a prophet to tell me, 'You have killed many men in the big battles that you have fought. I have seen the blood of all the people whom you killed, so you will not be the one who will arrange for a temple to be built to honor me.

ULB:

⁶ Then he called for Solomon his son and commanded him to build a house for Yahweh, the God of Israel. ⁷ David said to Solomon, "My son, it was my intention to build a house myself, for the name of Yahweh my God. ⁸ But Yahweh came to me and said, 'You have shed much blood and have fought many battles. You will not build a house for my name, because you have shed much blood on the earth in my sight.

translationWords:

- [Solomon](#)
- [command, to command, commandment](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [David](#)
- [name](#)
- [bloodshed](#)

translationNotes:

- **he called** - "David called"
- **commanded him to build ... my intention to build** - "commanded laborers to build ... my plan was to hire laborers to build" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **for the name of Yahweh my God** - "to honor Yahweh my God"
- **You have shed much blood** - "you have killed many people" (See: [Euphemism](#))
- **You will not build a house for my name** - "You will not build a temple to honor me"
- **because you have shed much blood on the earth in my sight** - "because I know that you have killed many people" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)

- **1 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 22:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ But you will have a son who will be king of Israel after you die. He will be a man who is peaceful and quiet, not a man who kills others. And I will cause that there will be peace between him and his enemies who are in all the nearby lands. His name will be Solomon, which sounds like the word for peace. During the time that he is king, people in Israel will be peaceful and safe. ¹⁰ He is the one who will arrange for a temple to be built to honor me. He will be like a son to me, and I will cause some of his descendants to rule over Israel forever.'

ULB:

⁹ However, you will have a son who will be a peaceful man. I will give him rest from all his enemies on every side. For his name will be Solomon, and I will give peace and quiet to Israel in his days. ¹⁰ He will build a house for my name. He will be my son, and I will be his father. I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel forever.'

translationWords:

- peace, peaceful
- rest
- adversary, enemy
- Solomon
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- name
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- throne
- kingdom
- forever

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - David continues telling Solomon what Yahweh said to him.
- **on every side** - This means in every place surrounding Israel.
- **in his days** - "while he rules over Israel"
- **a house for my name** - AT: "a temple to honor me" (See: **Metonymy**)
- **He will be my son, and I will be his father** - God will treat Solomon as if he were God's own son. (See: **Metaphor**)
- **I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel forever** - Here "throne" refers to the authority to rule as king. AT: "I will make his descendants rule over Israel forever"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 22:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ So now, my son, I hope that Yahweh will help you, and enable you to be successful in arranging for building the temple of Yahweh, your God, which is what he said that you would do. ¹² I also hope that he will enable you to be wise and to understand what you need to know, and enable you to obey his laws while you rule over Israel. ¹³ If you carefully obey all the laws and decrees which Yahweh told Moses to tell Israel to do, you will be successful. Be strong and courageous. Do not be afraid of anything, and do not become discouraged!

ULB:

¹¹ Now, my son, may Yahweh be with you and enable you to succeed. May you build the house of Yahweh your God, as he said you would. ¹² Only may Yahweh give you insight and understanding, so that you may obey the law of Yahweh your God, when he places you in charge over Israel. ¹³ Then you will succeed, if you carefully obey the statutes and the decrees that Yahweh gave to Moses concerning Israel. Be strong and courageous. Do not fear or be discouraged.

translationWords:

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [understand, understanding](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - David continues speaking to Solomon.
- **Now** - David uses this word to introduce something important he is about to say.
- **May you build** - AT: "May you succeed in directing the building" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **when he places you in charge over Israel** - "when he makes you king of Israel"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 22:14

UDB:

¹⁴ I have tried hard to provide materials for building the temple of Yahweh. I have provided 3,400 metric tons of gold, 34,000 metric tons of silver. I have also provided a very large amount of iron and bronze, no one has been able to weigh it all. I have also gathered lumber and stone for the walls of the temple, but you may need to get some more of those things.

ULB:

¹⁴ Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. I have also provided timber and stone. You must add more to all this.

translationWords:

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - David continues speaking to Solomon.
- **Now** - This introduces something important David is about to say.
- **talents** - A talent is a unit of weight. It is equal to 33 kilograms. (See: [Biblical Money](#))
- **one million** - "1,000,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 22:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ There are many men in Israel who have good ability to cut big stones for making stone walls, and carpenters, and men who are very skilled at making various kinds of things. ¹⁶ There are many men who know how to make things from gold and silver and bronze and iron. So now I say to you, begin the work of building the temple, and I hope that Yahweh will be with you.”

ULB:

¹⁵ You have many workmen with you: stonecutters, masons, carpenters, and skillful craftsmen without number of every kind, ¹⁶ who can work with gold, silver, bronze, and iron. So begin to work, and may Yahweh be with you.”

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - David continues speaking to Solomon.
- **stonecutters, masons** - These are both workers who cut stone and prepare it for builders to use in walls and buildings.
- **carpenters** - These are persons who work with wood.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 22:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ Then David commanded that all the Israelite leaders must assist Solomon. He said to them, ¹⁸ "Yahweh our God is certainly with you. He has allowed you to have peace with all the nearby nations. He has enabled my army to conquer them, so now Yahweh and my people control them. ¹⁹ Now you must obey Yahweh with your entire inner beings. Help Solomon to arrange for building the temple for Yahweh God, in order that you can bring the sacred chest that contains the Ten Commandments and the other sacred items that belong to Yahweh into the temple that you will build to honor him."

ULB:

¹⁷ David also ordered all the leaders of Israel to help Solomon his son, saying, ¹⁸ "Yahweh your God is with you and has given you peace on every side. He has given the region's inhabitants into my hand. The region is subdued before Yahweh and his people. ¹⁹ Now seek Yahweh your God with all your heart and your soul. Get up and build the holy place of Yahweh God. Then you can bring the ark of the covenant of Yahweh and the things that belong to God into the house built for Yahweh's name."

translationWords:

- David
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Solomon
- peace, peaceful
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- holy place, most holy place
- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- name

translationNotes:

- **your ... you** - These pronouns are plural in 22:18-19. (See: [Forms of You](#))
- **has given you peace on every side** - "has given you peace from war in every place around Israel"
- **He has handed over to me the region's inhabitants** - "He has given me power over everyone who lives around us" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **The region is subdued before Yahweh and his people** - "Yahweh and his people control their land"

- **Now** - This word introduces something important that David is about to say.
- **seek Yahweh your God** - AT: “try to get Yahweh your God to pay attention to you” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **all your heart and your soul** - “sincerely” or “wholeheartedly”
- **Get up and build the holy place** - AT: “Get up and direct the workers as they build the holy place” (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **the house built for Yahweh’s name** - “the temple you will build to honor Yahweh”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 22 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the construction of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

This chapter indents some of the lines of 23:7-23 because they are long lists.

Special concepts in this chapter

Organizing the Levites

As priests, the levites had a significant role in the construction of the temple. David organized the Levites according to their families and explained what each group was to do. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 23:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 23:1-3

UDB:

¹ David was a very old man when he appointed his son Solomon to be the next king.

² David gathered the leaders of Israel and the priests and other descendants of Levi. ³ He commanded some of his officials to count the descendants of Levi who were at least thirty years old, and they found out that there were thirty-eight thousand of them.

ULB:

23 ¹ When David was old and near the end of his life, he made Solomon his son king over Israel. ² He gathered together all the leaders of Israel, with the priests and Levites. ³ The Levites who were thirty years old and older were counted. They numbered thirty-eight thousand.

translationWords:

- [David](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [king](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - David appoints Solomon as his successor and organizes Levitical priests and staff for temple service.
- **The Levites who were thirty years old and older were counted** - AT: "Some of David's men counted the Levites who were 30 years old and older" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Active or Passive](#))
- **They numbered thirty-eight thousand** - AT: "There were 38,000"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 23:4-6

UDB:

⁴ Then David said, "From those thirty-eight thousand men, I want twenty-four thousand of them to supervise the work at the temple of Yahweh, and I want six thousand of them to be officials and judges. ⁵ I want four thousand to be guards at the gates, and four thousand to praise Yahweh, using the musical instruments that I have provided for them."

⁶ David divided the descendants of Levi into three groups; each group consisted of men who were descendants of one of the three sons of Levi—Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

ULB:

⁴ "Of these, twenty-four thousand were to oversee the work of Yahweh's house, and six thousand were officers and judges. ⁵ Four thousand were gatekeepers, and four thousand were to praise Yahweh with the instruments that I made to give praise," David said. ⁶ He divided them into groups that corresponded to Levi's sons: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

translationWords:

- house of God, Yahweh's house
- judge
- praise
- Yahweh
- praise
- Levite, Levi

translationNotes:

- **Of these, twenty-four thousand** - AT: "Of these Levities, 24,000" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **six thousand** - "6,000 Levites" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **officers and judges** - These Levites listened to legal arguments and administered justice according to the law of Moses.
- **four thousand** - "4,000 Levites" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **gatekeepers** - These Levites guarded the temple entrance so no one unclean entered.
- **that corresponded to** - "based on" or "according to the descendants of"
- **Gershon, Kohath, and Merari** - These are names of Levi's sons. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 23 General Notes
- **1 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 23:7-9

UDB:

⁷ The descendants of Gershon were Ladan and Shimei.

- ⁸ There were three sons of Ladan: Jehiel was the oldest, and his younger brothers Zetham and Joel.
- ⁹ There were three of the sons of Shimei: Shelomoth, Haziël, and Haran.
 - They were all leaders of the clans of Ladan.
-

ULB:

⁷ From the clans descended from Gershon, there were Ladan and Shimei. ⁸ There were three of Ladan's sons: Jehiel the leader, Zetham, and Joel. ⁹ There were three of Shimei's sons: Shelomoth, Haziël, and Haran. These were the leaders of the clans of Ladan.

translationWords:

- [clan](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 23:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ There were four men who were sons of Shimei:

- ¹¹ Jahath, who was his oldest son, and his younger brothers Ziza, Jeush, and Beriah.
- Jeush and Beriah did not have many sons, so they were counted as though they were one family.

ULB:

¹⁰ There were four of Shimei's sons: Jahath, Ziza, Jeush, and Beriah. ¹¹ Jahath was the oldest, and Ziza the second, but Jeush and Beriah did not have many sons, so they were considered as one clan with the same duties.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **so they were considered as one clan** - AT: "so David considered them as one clan" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 23:12-14

UDB:

¹² Kohath had four sons: Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

- ¹³ There were two sons of Amram: Aaron and Moses.
 - Aaron and his descendants were set apart to dedicate to Yahweh the very holy things, to offer sacrifices to Yahweh, to serve in his presence, and to declare to the people what Yahweh would do to bless them. They were to do those things forever.
 - ¹⁴ The sons of Moses, the man who served God well, were counted as part of the tribe of Levi. They are listed next.

-

ULB:

¹² There were four of Kohath's sons: Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. ¹³ These were Amram's sons: Aaron and Moses. Aaron was chosen to set apart the most holy things, that he and his descendants would offer incense before Yahweh, to serve him and to give blessings in his name forever.

¹⁴ But as for Moses the man of God, his sons were considered to be Levites.

translationWords:

- Aaron
- Moses
- descendant, descended from
- set apart
- incense
- serve, service
- bless, blessed, blessing
- name
- forever
- man of God
- son, son of
- Levite, Levi

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **There were four of Kohath's sons** - AT: "Kohath had 4 sons"

- **Aaron was chosen to set apart the most holy things** - AT: “Yahweh chose Aaron to dedicate the most holy things” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **to give blessings in his name forever** - AT: “to bless the people as representatives of God forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **his sons were considered to be Levites** - AT: “his sons were a part of the Levite clan.” The sons of Moses were Levites.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 23:15-18

UDB:

¹⁵ The sons of Moses were Gershom and Eliezer.

- ¹⁶ The oldest son of Gershom was Shubael.
- ¹⁷ Rehabiah was the oldest son of Eliezer.
- Eliezer had no other sons, but Rehabiah had many sons.

¹⁸ The oldest son of Izhar was Shelomith.

ULB:

¹⁵ Moses' sons were Gershom and Eliezer. ¹⁶ Gershom's descendant was Shebuel the oldest. ¹⁷ Eliezer's descendant was Rehabiah. Eliezer had no other sons, but Rehabiah had many descendants. ¹⁸ Izhar's son was Shelomith the leader.

translationWords:

- [descendant, descended from](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 23:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ Hebron had four sons.

- Jeriah was his oldest son, and his younger brothers were Amariah, Jahaziel, and Jekameam.

²⁰ Uzziel had two sons.

- Micah was the oldest son, and his younger brother was Isshiah.

ULB:

¹⁹ Hebron's descendants were Jeriah, the oldest, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, and Jekameam the fourth. ²⁰ Uzziel's sons were Micah the oldest, and Isshiah the second.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 23:21-23

UDB:

²¹ Merari had two sons: Mahli and Mushi.

- The sons of Mahli were Eleazar and Kish.
- ²² Eleazar had no sons; he had only daughters. So their cousins, the sons of Kish, married them.

²³ The three sons of Mushi were Mahli, Eder, and Jerimoth.

ULB:

²¹ Merari's sons were Mahli and Mushi. Mahli's sons were Eleazar and Kish. ²² Eleazar died without having any sons. He had only daughters. The sons of Kish married them. ²³ Mushi's three sons were Mahli, Eder, and Jeremoth.

translationWords:

- [death, die, dead](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 23:24-26

UDB:

²⁴ Those were the descendants of Levi, whose names were listed according to their families. They were chosen for special jobs by casting lots. Each person who was at least twenty years old was listed. They all worked in the temple of Yahweh. ²⁵ David had said previously, "Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelite people belong, has enabled us to have peace, and he has come to live in Jerusalem forever. ²⁶ Therefore, the descendants of Levi no longer need to carry the sacred tent and the items used in the work there."

ULB:

²⁴ These were Levi's descendants corresponding to their clans. They were the leaders, counted and listed by name, of the clans that did the work in the service of Yahweh's house, from twenty years old and upward. ²⁵ For David said, "Yahweh, the God of Israel, has given rest to his people. He makes his home in Jerusalem forever. ²⁶ The Levites will no longer need to carry the tabernacle and all the equipment used in its service."

translationWords:

- Levite, Levi
- descendant, descended from
- clan
- serve, service
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- David
- God
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- people of God, my people
- Jerusalem
- forever
- tabernacle

translationNotes:

- **These were Levi's descendants corresponding to their clans. They were the leaders, counted and listed by name, of the clans** - AT: "These were the names of Levi's descendants and their families, whom David's men counted and listed. They were the leaders of the clans" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **from twenty years old and upward** - AT: "from 20 years old and older" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **and all the equipment used in its service** - AT: "and all the equipment they used in its service"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 23:27-29

UDB:

²⁷ Obeying the final instructions of David before he died, instructions for doing this work at the temple, they counted only the descendants of Levi who were at least twenty years old.

²⁸ The work of those descendants of Levi was to assist the descendants of Aaron in their work in Yahweh's temple. They were to be in charge of the temple courtyards and the side rooms, the ceremonies for purifying all the sacred things, and to do other work at the temple. ²⁹ They were also in charge of the loaves of bread on display before God, the loaves that were placed each week on the table in the temple, the flour for the flour offerings, and the wafers that were made without yeast. They also had to measure the ingredients, mix them, and bake the bread and wafers.

ULB:

²⁷ For by David's last words the Levites were counted, from twenty years old and upward. ²⁸ Their duty was to assist Aaron's descendants in the service of Yahweh's house. They were to care for the courtyards, the rooms, the ceremonial purification of all the things that belong to Yahweh, and other work in the service of God's house. ²⁹ They also took care of the bread of the presence, the fine flour for grain offerings, the unleavened wafers, the baked offerings, the offerings mixed with oil, and all the measuring of the amounts and sizes of things.

translationWords:

- David
- Aaron
- courtyard, court
- pure, purify, purification
- grain offering
- unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread
- sacrifice, offering
- oil

translationNotes:

- **For by David's last words the Levites were counted** - AT: "For David's last command was for his men to count the Levites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **from twenty years old and upward** - AT: "who were 20 years old and older" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **bread of the presence** - See how you translated this in [9:32](#).
- **flour** - a powder that a person makes by grinding grain
- **the offerings mixed with oil** - AT: "the offerings that someone has mixed with oil"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 23:30-31

UDB:

³⁰ They were also told to stand every morning at the temple and thank Yahweh and praise him. They were also required to do the same thing every evening. ³¹ And they were to do the same thing whenever offerings that were to be completely burned on the altar were presented to Yahweh on Sabbath days and during the new moon celebrations and other religious festivals. They were told how many of them should be there and what they should do each time.

ULB:

³⁰ They also stood every morning to thank and praise Yahweh. They also did this in the evening ³¹ and whenever burnt offerings were offered to Yahweh, on the Sabbath and at the new moon festivals and feast days. A fixed number, assigned by decree, always had to be present before Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [praise](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [new moon](#)
- [festival](#)
- [feast](#)
- [decree](#)

translationNotes:

- **They also stood** - “The Levites also stood”
- **whenever burnt offerings were offered to Yahweh** - AT: “whenever the priests offered burnt offerings to Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **new moon festivals** - These holidays marked the beginning of each new month.
- **A fixed number, assigned by decree, always had to be present before Yahweh** - AT: “It was the duty of a certain number of the Levites to always be present in making offerings to Yahweh”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 23:32

UDB:

³² So the descendants of Levi did the work that was assigned to them by their fellow Israelites who were descendants of Aaron. They did that work at the sacred tent and in the holy place inside the tent, and later at the temple.

ULB:

³² They were in charge of the tent of meeting, the holy place, and helped their fellow descendants of Aaron in the service of Yahweh's house.

translationWords:

- [tent of meeting](#)
- [holy place, most holy place](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

translationNotes:

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 23 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

This chapter indents some of the lines of 24:20-30 because they are long lists.

Special concepts in this chapter

Arranging the priests

David arranged for the order in which priests would be on duty. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 24:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 24:1-3

UDB:

¹ These are the divisions of the descendants of Aaron the first high priest: Aaron's four sons were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

² But Nadab and Abihu died before their father died, and they had no children. So their younger brothers Eleazar and Ithamar became the priests. ³ Zadok, who was a descendant of Eleazar, and Ahimelech, who was a descendant of Ithamar, helped David to separate the family groups into two groups. Each group had certain duties.

ULB:

24 ¹ The work groups based on Aaron's descendants were these: Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar. ² Nadab and Abihu died before their father died. They had no children, so Eleazar and Ithamar served as priests. ³ David, together with Zadok, a descendant of Eleazar, and Ahimelech, a descendant of Ithamar, divided them into groups for their work as priests.

translationWords:

- [Aaron](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [David](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

translationNotes:

- **Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar** - See how you translated these names in [6:3](#).
- **Ahimelech** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **divided them into groups** - "divided the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar into groups"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 24:4-5

UDB:

⁴ There were more leaders among the descendants of Eleazar than there were among the descendants of Ithamar. So they appointed sixteen leaders from Eleazar's descendants and eight leaders from Ithamar's descendants. ⁵ There were temple officials and priests who were there, including descendants of both Eleazar and Ithamar, to make sure that the work was divided fairly. So they decided what work each group would do by casting lots.

ULB:

⁴ There were more leading men among Eleazar's descendants than among Ithamar's descendants, so they divided Eleazar's descendants into sixteen groups. They did this by heads of clans and by Ithamar's descendants. These divisions were eight in number, corresponding to their clans. ⁵ They divided them impartially by lot, for there were holy officials and officials of God, from both Eleazar's descendants and Ithamar's descendants.

translationWords:

- [head](#)
- [clan](#)
- [lots, casting lots](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [God](#)

translationNotes:

- **they divided** - "David, Zadok, and Ahimelech divided"
- **sixteen groups** - "16 groups" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **These divisions were eight in number, corresponding to their clans** - "There were 8 divisions based on the clans of Ithamar's descendants"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 24:6

UDB:

⁶ Shemaiah son of Nethanel, who was a descendant of Levi, wrote down the names of the leaders of each group while David and his officials were watching. Zadok, the high priest, and Ahimelech his assistant, and the leaders of the families of the priests and of the families of the other descendants of Levi also watched.

-

ULB:

⁶ Shemaiah son of Nethanel the scribe, a Levite, wrote down their names in the presence of the king, the officials, Zadok the priest, Ahimelech son of Abiathar, and the leaders of the priestly and Levite families. One clan was drawn by lot from Eleazar's descendants, and then the next would be drawn from Ithamar's descendants.

translationWords:

- scribe, expert in the Jewish law
- Levite, Levi
- king
- Abiathar
- family

translationNotes:

- **Shemaiah** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Nethanel** - See how you translated this in [15:24](#).
- **Ahimelech** - See how you translated this in [18:16](#).
- **One clan was drawn by lot from Eleazar's descendants, and then the next would be drawn from Ithamar's descendants** - AT: "They chose one by lot from Eleazar's descendants, then they would choose by lot one from Ithamar's descendants" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 24:7-10

UDB:

⁷ Jehoiarib was the first one whose name was selected by casting lots.

- Next Jedaiah was selected.
- ⁸ Next, Harim was selected.
- Next, Seorim was selected.
- ⁹ Next, Malkijah was selected.
- Next, Mijamin was selected.
- ¹⁰ Next, Hakkoz was selected.
- Next, Abijah was selected.
-

ULB:

⁷ The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, ⁸ the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ⁹ the fifth to Malchijah, the sixth to Mijamin, ¹⁰ the seventh to Hakkoz, the eighth to Abijah,

translationWords:

- [Abijah](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the order of service that David, Zadok, and Ahimelech chose by lot for the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 24:11-14

UDB:

¹¹ Next, Jeshua was selected.

- Next, Shecaniah was selected.
- ¹² Next, Eliashib was selected.
- Next, Jakim was selected.
- ¹³ Next, Huppah was selected.
- Next, Jeshebeab was selected.
- ¹⁴ Next, Bilgah was selected.
- Next, Immer was selected.
-

ULB:

¹¹ the ninth to Jeshua, the tenth to Shecaniah, ¹² the eleventh to Eliashib, the twelfth to Jakim, ¹³ the thirteenth to Huppah, the fourteenth to Jeshebeab, ¹⁴ the fifteenth to Bilgah, the sixteenth to Immer,

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This is the order of service that David, Zadok, and Ahimelech chose by lot for the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 24:15-18

UDB:

¹⁵ Next, Hezir was selected.

- Next, Happizzez was selected.
- ¹⁶ Next, Pethahiah was selected.
- Next, Jehezkel was selected.
- ¹⁷ Next, Jakin was selected.
- Next, Gamul was selected.
- ¹⁸ Next, Delaiah was selected.
- Next, Maaziah was selected.

ULB:

¹⁵ the seventeenth to Hezir, the eighteenth to Happizzez, ¹⁶ the nineteenth to Pethahiah, the twentieth to Jehezkel, ¹⁷ the twenty-first to Jachin, the twenty-second to Gamul, ¹⁸ the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This concludes the order of service that David, Zadok, and Ahimelech chose by lot for the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 24:19

UDB:

¹⁹ Those were the men who were chosen to be the leaders of the groups that would serve in the temple, obeying the regulations that were set down by Aaron, regulations which Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelite people belong, had given to him.

ULB:

¹⁹ This was the order of their service, when they came into Yahweh's house, following the procedure given to them by Aaron their ancestor, as Yahweh, the God of Israel, had instructed him.

translationWords:

- [serve, service](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **following the procedure given to them by Aaron their ancestor** - AT: "following the rules that Aaron their ancestor gave them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 24:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ This is a list of some of the other descendants of Levi:

- From the sons of Amram there was Shubael.
 - From the sons of Shubael there was Jehdeiah.
- ²¹ From Rehabiah son of Eleazar there was Isshiah, his oldest son.
- ²² From the descendants of Kohath's son Izhar there was Shelomoth.
 - From the descendants of Shelomoth there was Jahath.
-

ULB:

²⁰ These were the rest of the Levi: of the sons of Amram, Shebuel; of the sons of Shebael, Jehdeiah.

²¹ The sons of Rehabiah: of the sons of Rehabiah, Isshiah the leader. ²² Of the Izarites, Shelomoth; of the sons of Shelomoth, Jahath.

translationWords:

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [son, son of](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This begins the list of names of the other sons of Levi. This list will end in [24:30](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Amram** - See how you translated this in [6:3](#).
- **Shebuel** - See how you translated this in [23:16](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 24:23-25

UDB:

²³ From the descendants of Kohath's son Hebron there was his oldest son Jeriah and Jeriah's younger brothers Amariah, Jahaziel, and Jekameam.

- ²⁴ From the descendants of Kohath's son Uzziel there was Micah.
 - From the descendants of Micah there was Shamir.
 - ²⁵ And Micah's younger brother was Isshiah.
 - From the descendants of Isshiah was Zechariah.

●

ULB:

²³ The sons of Hebron: Jeriah the leader, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, and Jekameam the fourth. ²⁴ The sons of Uzziel's descendants included Micah. Micah's descendants included Shamir. ²⁵ Micah's brother was Isshiah. Isshiah's sons included Zechariah.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from

translationNotes:

- **Hebron ... Jeriah ... Amariah ... Jahaziel ... Jekameam** - See how you translated the names of these men in [23:19](#).
- **Uzziel ... Micah ... Isshiah** - See how you translated these names in [23:20](#).
- **Shamir ... Zechariah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 24:26-28

UDB:

²⁶ The sons of Merari were Mahli, Mushi, and Jaaziah.

- ²⁷ From the descendants of Jaaziah there were Beno, Shoham, Zaccur, and Ibri.
- ²⁸ Mahli's son Eleazar did not have any sons.

ULB:

²⁶ The sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi. The son of Jaaziah, Beno. ²⁷ The sons of Merari: Jaaziah, Beno, Shoham, Zaccur, and Ibri. ²⁸ The sons of Mahli: Eleazar, who had no sons.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **Merari ... Mahli ... Mushi ... Eleazar** - See how you translated the names of these men in [23:21](#).
- **Jaaziah ... Beno ... Shoham ... Zaccur ... Ibri** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 24:29-31

UDB:

²⁹ From the descendants of Kish there was his son Jerahmeel.

- ³⁰ The sons of Mushi were Mahli, Eder, and Jerimoth.

Those were descendants of Levi who were listed according to the leaders of their families. ³¹ The jobs they would do were decided by casting lots like their fellow Israelites the descendants of Aaron, did. They cast lots while King David, Zadok, Ahimelech, and the leaders of the families of the priests and the other descendants of Levi watched. The jobs that were given to the families of each oldest brother and each youngest brother were equal.

ULB:

²⁹ The sons of Kish, the sons of Kish: Jerahmeel ³⁰ The sons of Mushi: Mahli, Eder, and Jerimoth. These were the Levites, listed by their families. ³¹ These men who were the head of each father's house and each of their younger brothers, cast lots in the presence of King David, and Zadok and Ahimelech, along with the leaders of the families of the priests and Levites. They threw lots just as Aaron's descendants had done.

translationWords:

- Levite, Levi
- family
- lots, casting lots
- king
- David
- Zadok
- priest, priesthood
- Aaron

translationNotes:

- **Kish ... Mushi** - See how you translated the names of these men in [23:21](#).
- **Jerahmeel ... Mahli ... Eder ... Jerimoth** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Ahimelech** - See how you translated his name in [18:16](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 24 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

This chapter indents some of the lines of 25:2-31 because they are long lists.

Special concepts in this chapter

Music

The 24 groups who were to play music in the temple. They cast lots to see in what order they would serve.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 25:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 25:1-3

UDB:

¹ David and some of the temple officials chose some of the descendants of Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun to be in charge of the preaching, and to play harps and lyres and cymbals. This is a list of the men whom they chose for that work:

- ² From the sons of Asaph they chose Zaccur, Joseph, Nethaniah, and Aserelah. Asaph supervised them. And the king appointed Asaph to preach.
- ³ From the sons of Jeduthun they chose six men: Gedaliah, Zeri, Jeshaiiah, Shimei, Hashabiah, and Mattithiah. Jeduthun supervised them and also preached, playing his harp while he thanked and praised Yahweh.
-

ULB:

25 ¹ David and the leaders of the tabernacle work selected for the work some of the sons of Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun. These men prophesied with harps, stringed instruments, and cymbals. Here is a list of the men who did this work: ² From the sons of Asaph: Zaccur, Joseph, Nethaniah, and Asharelah, the sons of Asaph, under the direction of Asaph, who prophesied under the king's supervision. ³ From the sons of Jeduthun: Gedaliah, Zeri, Jeshaiiah, Shimei, Hashabiah, and Mattithiah, six in all, under the direction of their father Jeduthun, who played the harp for giving thanks and praising Yahweh.

translationWords:

- David
- tabernacle
- works, deeds, work, acts
- son, son of
- Asaph
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- harp
- king
- praise
- Yahweh

translationNotes:

- **cymbals** - See how you translated this in [13:8](#).
- **Heman ... Jeduthun** - See how you translated these names in [1 Chronicles 16:41](#).
- **Zaccur ... Mattithiah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **six in all** - “6 in all” (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 25:4-5

UDB:

⁴ From the sons of Heman they chose Bukkiah, Mattaniah, Uzziel, Shubael, Jerimoth, Hananiah, Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, Romamti Ezer, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir, and Mahazioth. ⁵ They were all sons of Heman, who was King David's prophet. God promised to cause Heman to be strong, so altogether, God gave him fourteen sons and three daughters.

ULB:

⁴ From the sons of Heman: Bukkiah, Mattaniah, Uzziel, Shebuel, and Jerimoth, Hananiah, Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, Romamti Ezer, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir, and Mahazioth. ⁵ All these were the sons of Heman the king's prophet. God gave Heman fourteen sons and three daughters in order to honor him.

translationWords:

- [God](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list of leaders of the tabernacle work started in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#).
- **Bukkiah ... Mahazioth** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Heman** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 16:41](#).
- **fourteen sons and three daughters** - "14 sons and 3 daughters" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 25:6-8

UDB:

⁶ All those men were supervised by their fathers while they played music in the temple of Yahweh. They played cymbals, lyres, and harps. And their fathers—Asaph, Jeduthun and Heman—were supervised by the king. ⁷ Those men and their relatives were all trained and skilled for playing musical instruments in the temple. That was their work for Yahweh. Including their relatives, there were 288 of them. ⁸ All of them, including ones who were young and those who were old, cast lots to determine what work they would do.

-

ULB:

⁶ All these were under the direction of their fathers. They were musicians in Yahweh's house, with cymbals and stringed instruments as they served in God's house. Asaph, Jeduthun, and Heman were under the king's supervision. ⁷ They and their brothers who were skilled and trained to make music to Yahweh numbered 288. ⁸ They threw lots for their duties, all alike, the same for the young as well as the old, the teacher as well as the student.

translationWords:

- ancestor, father, forefather
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- serve, service
- lots, casting lots

translationNotes:

- **cymbals** - See how you translated this in [13:8](#).
- **Jeduthun ... Heman** - See how you translated these in [16:41](#).
- **numbered 288** - "were two hundred eighty-eight men" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **all alike, the same for the young as well as the old, the teacher as well as the student** - This is describing the extremes. AT: "all of them" (See: [Merism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 25:9-12

UDB:

⁹ From the family of Asaph, the first ones selected were Joseph and 12 of his sons and relatives.

- ¹⁰ Next, Gedaliah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
- ¹¹ Next, Zaccur and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
- ¹² Next, Nethaniah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
-

ULB:

⁹ Now regarding Asaph's sons: the first lot fell to Joseph's family; the second fell to Gedaliah's family, twelve persons in number; ¹⁰ the third fell to Zaccur, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ¹¹ the fourth fell to Izri, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ¹² the fifth fell to Nethaniah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This begins the list of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve. This list ends in [1 Chronicles 25:31](#).
- **the first ... fifth** - This shows the order in which the families were chosen. AT: "number 1 ... number 2 ... number 3 ... number 4 ... number 5" or use "the initial" for "the first" and "the next" for all of the following ones. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **the first lot fell to Joseph's family** - For all of the other people in the list, the text specifies that there were "twelve persons in number." Since this is implied, you may want to add this the statement about Joseph, as the UDB does. AT: "the first lot fell to Joseph's family, twelve persons in number" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- **Joseph ... Zaccur ... Nethaniah** - See how you translated these names in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#).
- **Gedaliah** - See how you translated these names in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#).
- **twelve persons** - "12 people" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Izri** - This name is spelled Zeri in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 25:13-16

UDB:

¹³ Next, Bukkiah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

- ¹⁴ Next, Jesarelah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
- ¹⁵ Next, Jeshaiiah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
- ¹⁶ Next, Mattaniah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
-

ULB:

¹³ the sixth fell to Bukkiah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ¹⁴ the seventh fell to Jesharelah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ¹⁵ the eighth fell to Jeshaiiah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ¹⁶ the ninth fell to Mattaniah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#).
- **sixth ... ninth** - This shows the order in which the families were chosen. AT: “number 6 ... number 7 ... number 8 ... number 9” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **Bukkiah** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).
- **twelve persons** - “12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Jesharelah** - This is another spelling for “Asharelah” in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#).
- **Jeshaiiah** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#).
- **Mattaniah** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 25:17-20

UDB:

¹⁷ Next, Shimei and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

- ¹⁸ Next, Azarel and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
- ¹⁹ Next, Hashabiah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
- ²⁰ Next, Shubael and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
-

ULB:

¹⁷ the tenth fell to Shimei, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ¹⁸ the eleventh fell to Azarel, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ¹⁹ the twelfth fell to Hashabiah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ²⁰ the thirteenth fell to Shubael, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

translationWords:

- [Shimei](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#).
- **tenth ... thirteenth** - This shows the order in which the families were chosen. AT: “number 10 ... number 11 ... number 12 ... number 13” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **Shimei** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#).
- **twelve persons** - “12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Azarel** - This is another spelling for “Uzziel” in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).
- **Hashabiah** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#).
- **Shubael** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 25:21-24

UDB:

²¹ Next, Mattithiah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

- ²² Next, Jerimoth and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
- ²³ Next, Hananiah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
- ²⁴ Next, Joshbekashah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
-

ULB:

²¹ the fourteenth fell to Mattithiah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ²² the fifteenth fell to Jeremoth, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ²³ the sixteenth fell to Hananiah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ²⁴ the seventeenth fell to Joshbekashah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#).
- **fourteenth ... seventeenth** - This shows the order in which the families were chosen. AT: “number 14 ... number 15 ... number 16 ... number 17” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **Mattithiah** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#).
- **twelve persons** - “12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Jeremoth** - This is another spelling for “Uzziel” in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).
- **Hananiah** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).
- **Joshbekashah** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 25:25-28

UDB:

²⁵ Next, Hanani and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

- ²⁶ Next, Mallothi and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
- ²⁷ Next, Eliathah and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
- ²⁸ Next, Hothir and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
-

ULB:

²⁵ the eighteenth fell to Hanani, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ²⁶ the nineteenth fell to Mallothi, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ²⁷ the twentieth fell to Eliathah, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ²⁸ the twenty-first fell to Hothir, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number;

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#).
- **eighteenth ... twenty-first** - This shows the order in which the families were chosen. “number 18 ... number 19 ... number 20 ... number 21” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **Hanani** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).
- **twelve persons** - “12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Mallothi** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).
- **Eliathah** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).
- **Hothir** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 25:29-31

UDB:

²⁹ Next, Giddalti and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

- ³⁰ Next, Mahazioth and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.
- ³¹ Next, Romamti Ezer and 12 of his sons and relatives were selected.

ULB:

²⁹ the twenty-second fell to Giddalti, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ³⁰ the twenty-third fell to Mahazioth, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number; ³¹ the twenty-fourth fell to Romamti Ezer, his sons and his relatives, twelve persons in number.

translationWords:

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This concludes the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#).
- **twenty-second ... twenty-fourth** - This shows the order in which the families were chosen. “number 22 ... number 23 ... number 24” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **Giddalti** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).
- **twelve persons** - “12 people” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Mahazioth** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).
- **Romamti Ezer** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 25 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 26 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

This chapter indents some of the lines of 26:2-10, 25-28 because they are long lists.

Special concepts in this chapter

Casting lots

The gate keepers cast lots to see which gate they would guard. Those who took care of the storage also cast lots.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 26:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 26:1-3

UDB:

¹ This is a list of the groups of men who guarded the temple gates:

- From the descendants of Korah, there was Meshelemiah son of Kore, who was one of the sons of Asaph.
 - ² The oldest son of Meshelemiah was Zechariah. His other sons were Jediel, Zebadiah, Jathniel, ³ Elam, Jehohanan, and Eliehoenai.
-

ULB:

26¹ Here were the divisions of the gatekeepers: From the Korahites, Meshelemiah son of Kore, a descendant of Asaph. ² Meshelemiah had sons: Zechariah the firstborn, Jediel the second, Zebadiah the third, Jathniel the fourth, ³ Elam the fifth, Jehohanan the sixth, Eliehoenai the seventh.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from
- firstborn

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This begins the list of the gatekeepers.
- **Korahites** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 9:19](#).
- **Meshelemiah** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 9:21](#).
- **Kore** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 9:19](#).
- **Asaph** - This is an alternative spelling to “Ebiasaph” in [1 Chronicles 9:19](#).
- **Zechariah** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 9:21](#).
- **Jediel ... Zebadiah ... Jathniel ... Elam ... Jehohanan ... Eliehoenai** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the second ... third ... fourth ... seventh** - This shows the order in which the sons were born. AT: “number 2 ... number 3 ... number 4 ... number 7” or “the next” for each one. (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 26:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ Another guard was Obed Edom.

- His oldest son was Shemaiah. His other sons were Jehozabad, Joah, Sacar, Nethanel, ⁵ Ammiel, Issachar, and Peullethai. It was because God had blessed him that he had many sons.
- ⁶ Obed Edom's son Shemaiah also had sons. They were leaders in their father's family because they were capable of doing many things well.
-

ULB:

⁴ Obed Edom had sons: Shemaiah the firstborn, Jehozabad the second, Joah the third, and Sacar the fourth, and Nethanel the fifth, ⁵ Ammiel the sixth, Issachar the seventh, Peullethai the eighth, for God had blessed Obed Edom. ⁶ To Shemaiah his son were born sons who ruled over their families; they were men with many abilities.

translationWords:

- God
- bless, blessed, blessing
- ruler, rulers, rule
- family

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list of gatekeepers which started in [1 Chronicles 26:1-3](#).
- **Obed Edom** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 16:38](#).
- **Shemaiah ... Jehozabad ... Joah ... Sacar ... Nethanel ... Ammiel ... Issachar ... Peullethai** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the second ... eighth** - This shows the order in which the sons were born. AT: "number 2 ... number 3 ... number 4 ... number 5 ... number 6 ... number 7 ... number 8" or "the next" for each one. (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 26:7-9

UDB:

⁷ The sons of Shemaiah were Othni, Rephael, Obed, and Elzabad. Shemaiah's relatives Elihu and Semakiah were also capable men.

- ⁸ All of those descendants of Obed Edom and their sons and relatives were capable people and strong workers. Altogether there were 62 of them.

⁹ Another guard was Meshelemiah. He and his sons and relatives were also capable people. There were 18 of them altogether.

ULB:

⁷ The sons of Shemaiah were Othni, Rephael, Obed, and Elzabad. His relatives Elihu and Semachiah were also men with many abilities. ⁸ All these were descendants of Obed Edom. They and their sons and relatives were men capable of doing their duties in the tabernacle service. There were sixty-two of them related to Obed Edom. ⁹ Meshelemiah had sons and relatives, capable men, eighteen in all.

translationWords:

- [tabernacle](#)
- [serve, service](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list of gatekeepers which started in [1 Chronicles 26:1-3](#).
- **Shemaiah ... Obed Edom** - See how you translated these in [1 Chronicles 26:4-6](#).
- **His relatives** - "Shemaiah's relatives" or "Shemaiah's family members"
- **Othni ... Rephael ... Obed ... Elzabad ... Elihu ... Semachiah ... Meshelemiah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **sixty-two of them** - "62 men" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **eighteen in all** - "18 total"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 26:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Another guard was Hosah's son Shimri, a descendant of Merari. Hosah appointed Shimri to be the leader, even though he was not Hosah's oldest son. ¹¹ Hosah's other sons were Hilkiah, Tabaliah, and Zechariah. Altogether there were 13 sons and relatives of Hosah.

ULB:

¹⁰ Hosah, a descendant of Merari, had sons: Shimri the leader (although he was not the firstborn, his father made him leader), ¹¹ Hilkiah the second, Tebaliah the third, Zechariah the fourth. All of Hosah's sons and kinsmen were thirteen in number.

translationWords:

- [kin, kinsman](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - This continues the list of gatekeepers which started in [1 Chronicles 26:1-3](#).
- **Hosah ... Merari ... Shimri ... Hilkiah ... Tebaliah ... Zechariah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **the second ... third ... fourth** - This shows the order in which the sons were born. AT: "number 2 ... number 3 ... number 4" or "the next" for each one. (See: [Numbers](#))
- **All of Hosah's sons and kinsmen were thirteen in number** - AT: "There were 13 of Hosah's sons and kinsmen." (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 26:12-14

UDB:

¹² Those men were leaders of the groups of men who guarded the gates of the temple. They worked at the temple like their relatives did. ¹³ By casting lots, the leader of each family chose one gate for their group to guard. All of them, including young men and old men, cast lots.

- ¹⁴ Shelemiah's group was selected to guard the east gate.
- The group of Shelemiah's son Zechariah, who was a wise counselor, was selected to guard the north gate.
-

ULB:

¹² These divisions of the gatekeepers, corresponding to their leaders, had responsibilities, like their relatives, to serve in Yahweh's house. ¹³ They threw lots, both young and old, corresponding to their families, for every gate. ¹⁴ When the lot was thrown for the east gate, it fell to Shelemiah. They then threw lots for Zechariah his son, a prudent advisor, and his lot came out for the north gate.

translationWords:

- house of God, Yahweh's house
- lots, casting lots
- gate, gate bar

translationNotes:

- **both young and old** - AT: "every person" or "men of all ages" (See: [Merism](#))
- **Shelemiah** - This is another spelling for "Meshelemiah" in [1 Chronicles 26:2](#).
- **Zechariah** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 26:2](#).
- **When the lot was thrown** - AT: "When they threw the lot" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **a prudent advisor** - This is a person who shows good judgment in making decisions.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 26:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Then Obed Edom's group was selected to guard the south gate, and his sons were selected to guard the entrances to the temple storerooms.

- ¹⁶ Then Shuppim's group and Hosah's group were selected to guard the west gate and the Shalleketh Gate on the upper road to the temple.

The work for the guards was divided evenly.

ULB:

¹⁵ To Obed Edom was assigned the south gate, and his sons were assigned the storehouses. ¹⁶ Shuppim and Hosah were assigned the west gate along with the gate of Shallecheth, on the upper road. Watches were established for each family.

translationWords:

- [assign, assigned](#)
- [watch, watchman](#)

translationNotes:

- **To Obed Edom was assigned the south gate, and his sons were assigned the storehouses** - "Obed Edom was responsible for guarding the south gate, and his sons guarded the storehouses." (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Obed Edom** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 26:4](#).
- **Shuppim** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Hosah** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 26:10](#).
- **Shallecheth** - This is the name of the gate. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Watches were established for each family.** - AT: "Each family was responsible for guarding something." (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 26:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ Each day there were six descendants of Levi who guarded the east gate, four who guarded the north gate, four who guarded the south gate, and two at a time who guarded the entrances to the storerooms. ¹⁸ At the west gate there were two men who guarded the courtyard and four who guarded the road outside the courtyard.

¹⁹ Those were the groups of men who were descendants of Korah and Merari who guarded the gates of the temple.

ULB:

¹⁷ On the east were six Levites, on the north four a day, on the south four a day, and at the storehouses two pairs. ¹⁸ At the court to the west there were four posted, four at the road, and two at the court. ¹⁹ These were the gatekeepers' divisions. They were filled with descendants of Korah and Merari.

translationWords:

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [Korah](#)

translationNotes:

- **six Levites** - "6 Levites" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **four a day** - "4 men each day" (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **two pairs** - "2 pairs of men" or "2 men at a time"
- **At the court to the west there were four posted** - AT: "4 men guarded the court to the west" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **four at the road, and two at the court** - "4 men guarded the road, and two men guarded the court"
- **They were filled with** - AT: "They were" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Merari** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 26:10](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 26:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ Other descendants of Levi were in charge of the chests that contained the money that was dedicated to God, money that the people brought to the temple.

²¹ One of those men was Ladan, a descendant of Gershon. He was the ancestor of several family groups. Jehiel was the leader of one of those family groups. ²² Others who had that work were Zetham and his younger brother Joel, who were the sons of Jehiel.

ULB:

²⁰ Among the Levites, Ahijah was in charge of the treasures of God's house, and of the treasures of the things that belong to Yahweh. ²¹ The descendants of Ladan, descended from Gershon through him and who were leaders of the families of Ladan the Gershonite, were Jehieli and his sons, ²² Zetham, and Joel his brother, who oversaw the storehouses of Yahweh's house.

translationWords:

- [Ahijah](#)
- [family](#)

translationNotes:

- **The descendants of Ladan, descended from Gershon through him and who were leaders of the families of Ladan the Gershonite, were Jehieli and his sons** - "Jehieli and his sons were the descendants of Ladan, who descended from Gershon belonging to Ladan. Jehieli and his sons were leaders of the families of Ladan the Gershonite. Jehieli's sons were"
- **Ladan ... Gershon** - See how you translated these names in [1 Chronicles 23:7](#).
- **Gershonite** - The descendants of Gershon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Jehieli ... Zetham ... Joel** - See how you translated these names in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#).
- **who oversaw** - "who supervised"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 26:23-25

UDB:

²³ Others who did that work were descendants of Amram, Izhar, Hebron and Uzziel.

- ²⁴ Shubuel, a descendant of Moses's son Gershom, was the leader who was in charge of the money chests. ²⁵ Others who did that work were the descendants of Gershom's younger brother Eliezer. Those men were Eliezer's son Rehabiah, Rehabiah's son Jeshaiiah, Jeshaiiah's son Joram, Joram's son Zichri, and Zichri's son Shelomoth.

ULB:

²³ There were also guards drawn from the clans of Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. ²⁴ Shebuel son of Gershom son of Moses, was supervisor over the storehouses. ²⁵ His relatives from the clan of Eliezer were his son Rehabiah, Rehabiah's son Jeshaiiah, Jeshaiiah's son Joram, Joram's son Zichri, and Zichri's son Shelomoth.

translationWords:

- [Moses](#)
- [clan](#)

translationNotes:

- **There were also guards drawn from the clans** - "The leaders also selected guards from the clans" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **Amram, Izhar, Hebron ... Uzziel** - See how you translated these names in [23:12](#).
- **Shebuel ... Gershom ... Eliezer ... Rehabiah** - See how you translated these names in [23:15-17](#).
- **Jeshaiiah ... Joram ... Zichri ... Shelomoth** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 26:26-28

UDB:

²⁶ Shelomoth and his relatives were in charge of all the valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh by King David, by the leaders of the family groups, by the army commanders of one thousand soldiers and commanders of 100 soldiers, and by other army commanders. ²⁷ Some of the things that those army officers had taken from Israel's enemies in battles they dedicated for the repair of the temple of Yahweh. ²⁸ And Shelomoth and his relatives were also in charge of everything that had been dedicated to Yahweh by the prophet Samuel, by King Saul, and by David's two army commanders Abner and Joab.

•

ULB:

²⁶ Shelomoth and his relatives were over all the storehouses holding the things that belong to Yahweh, that David the king, the family leaders, commanders over thousands and hundreds, and the army commanders had set apart. ²⁷ They set apart the plunder won in battles for the upkeep of the house of Yahweh. ²⁸ They were also in charge of everything that was set apart to Yahweh by Samuel the prophet, Saul son of Kish, Abner son of Ner, and Joab son of Zeruiah. Everything that was set apart to Yahweh was under the guard of Shelomoth and his relatives.

translationWords:

- storehouse
- David
- king
- commander, command
- set apart
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- Samuel
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Saul (OT)
- Abner
- Joab

translationNotes:

- **thousands and hundreds** - "more than 1,000 men and more than 100 men" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **plunder** - things an army takes from its enemies after a victory
- **Kish ... Ner ... Zeruiah** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

- **Everything that was set apart** - “Everything that the leaders set apart” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 26:29-30

UDB:

²⁹ From the descendants of Izhar, Kenaniah and his sons were given work outside the temple area. They were officials and judges in various places in Israel.

- ³⁰ From the descendants of Hebron, Hashabiah and his relatives were responsible for the work done for Yahweh and for the king in all the area west of the Jordan river. There were 1,700 of them who were able to do their work well.

ULB:

²⁹ Of Izhar's descendants, Kenaniah and his sons were in charge of the civil affairs of Israel. They were officers and judges. ³⁰ Of Hebron's descendants, Hashabiah and his brothers, 1,700 capable men, were in charge of Yahweh's work and the king's work. They were on the west side of the Jordan.

translationWords:

- descendant, descended from
- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- judge
- brother
- Yahweh
- works, deeds, work, acts
- Jordan River

translationNotes:

- **Izhar ... Hebron** - See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#).
- **civil affairs of Israel** - This refers to the regular business of the people of Israel, not connected to the military or to the temple. AT: "daily business of the people of Israel."
- **Kenaniah ... Hashabiah** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **1,700 capable men** - "one thousand seven hundred capable men" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **Yahweh's work and the king's work** - AT: "work done for Yahweh and the king."

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 26:31-32

UDB:

³¹ It was written in the records of the descendants of Hebron that Jeriah was their leader. When David had been ruling for almost forty years, they searched in those records, and they found names of capable men descended from Hebron who were at the city of Jazer in the region of Gilead. ³² Jeriah had 2,700 relatives who were able to do their work well, and who were leaders of their families. King David put them in charge of governing the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and the western half of the tribe of Manasseh, to be sure that all the people did what God and the king told them to do.

ULB:

³¹ From Hebron's descendants, Jerijah was the leader of his descendants, counted from the lists of their families. In the fortieth year of the reign of David they examined the records and found among them men of ability in Jazer of Gilead. ³² Jerijah had 2,700 relatives, who were capable family leaders. David made them overseers over the tribes of Reuben and Gad, and the half tribe of Manasseh, for every matter pertaining to God, and for the king's affairs.

translationWords:

- family
- reign
- David
- Gilead
- overseer
- tribe
- Reuben
- Gad
- Manasseh
- God

translationNotes:

- **Hebron** - See how you translated this in [23:12](#).
- **Jerijah** - This is another way to spell "Jeriah." See how you translated this in [23:19](#).
- **counted from the lists** - AT: "their names were on the lists" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **In the fortieth year of the reign of David** - "When David had been king for 40 years" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **Jazer** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **2,700 relatives** - "two thousand seven hundred family members" (See: [Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 26 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 27 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

This chapter indents some of the lines of 27:2-22, because they are long lists.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 27:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 27:1-3

UDB:

¹ This is a list of the Israelite men who served the king in the army. Some were leaders of families, some were commanders of one hundred men, some were commanders of one thousand men, and some were other officers. There were twenty-four thousand men in each group. Each group served one month of each year.

- ² Jashobeam, son of Zabdiel, was in charge of the group that served during the first month of each year. ³ He was a descendant of Perez, and he was the commander of all the army officers during the first month of each year.
-

ULB:

27 ¹ This is the list of the Israelite family leaders, commanders of thousands and hundreds, as well as army officers who served the king in various ways. Each military division served month by month throughout the year. Each division had twenty-four thousand men ² Over the division for the first month was Jashobeam son of Zabdiel. In his division were twenty-four thousand men. ³ He was among the descendants of Perez and in charge of all the army officers for the first month.

translationWords:

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- family
- commander, command
- serve, service
- king
- descendant, descended from

translationNotes:

- **This is the list** - AT: “These are the names”
- **in various ways** - “in different ways” or “in many ways”
- **Each military division** - “Each group”
- **twenty-four thousand men** - “24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))
- **throughout the year** - AT: “all year long.”
- **first month** - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Jashobeam son of Zabdiel** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **in charge** - “the leader”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 27:4-6

UDB:

⁴ Dodai, from the clan of Ahohi, was the commander of the group that served during the following.

- ⁵ Benaiah, son of Jehoiada the high priest, was the commander of the group that served during the following month. ⁶ He was the one who was a mighty warrior among David's thirty greatest soldiers, and he was their leader. His son Ammizabad was his assistant.
-

ULB:

⁴ Over the division for the second month was Dodai, from the clan descended from Ahoah. Mikloth was second in rank. In his division were twenty-four thousand men. ⁵ The commander of the army for the third month was Benaiah son of Jehoiada, a priest and leader. In his division were twenty-four thousand men. ⁶ This is the Benaiah who was the leader of the thirty, and over the thirty. Ammizabad his son was in his division.

translationWords:

- [clan](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

translationNotes:

- **the second month** - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [tA topic Hebrew Months and Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Dodai ... Ammizabad** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **In his division** - "In his military group" or "In his group of soldiers"
- **twenty-four thousand men** - "24,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **the third month** - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **the thirty** - See how you translated this in [11:11](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 27:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Asahel, Joab's younger brother, was the commander of the group that served during the following month. Asahel's son Zebadiah became the commander after Asahel was killed.

- ⁸ The commander for the following month was Shamhuth, a descendant of Izrah.
- ⁹ The commander for the following month was Ira son of Ikkesh from the city of Tekoa.
-

ULB:

⁷ The commander for the fourth month was Asahel brother of Joab. Zebadiah his son became commander after him. In his division were twenty-four thousand men. ⁸ The commander for the fifth month was Shamhuth, a descendant of Izrah. In his division were twenty-four thousand men. ⁹ The commander for the sixth month was Ira son of Ikkesh, from Tekoa. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

translationWords:

- **Joab**

translationNotes:

- **The commander for the fourth month was Asahel brother of Joab** - "Asahel, brother of Joab, was the commander for the fourth month."
- **fourth month** - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Asahel ... Ikkesh** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **his division** - "his military group"
- **twenty-four thousand men** - "24,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **fifth month** - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **sixth month** - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Tekoa** - This is the name of a place.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 27:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ The commander for the following month was Helez, a member of the clan of Pelon from the tribe of Ephraim.

- ¹¹ The commander for the following month was Sibbecai, a descendant of Zerah from the city of Hushah.
- ¹² The commander for the following month was Abi Ezer from the city of Anathoth in the tribe of Benjamin.
-

ULB:

¹⁰ The commander for the seventh month was Helez the Pelonite, from the people of Ephraim. In his division were twenty-four thousand men. ¹¹ The commander for the eighth month was Sibbecai the Hushathite, from the clan descended from Zerah. In his division were twenty-four thousand men. ¹² The commander for the ninth month was Abi Ezer the Anathothite, from the tribe of Benjamin. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

translationWords:

- commander, command
- Ephraim
- tribe
- Benjamin

translationNotes:

- **The commander for the seventh month was Helez the Pelonite, from the people of Ephraim** - “Helez, the Pelonite, from the people of Ephraim, was the commander for the seventh month.”
- **seventh month** - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Helez ... Sibbecai ... Zerah ... Abi Ezer** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Pelonite ... Hushathite ... Anathothite** - These are names of tribes or clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **twenty-four thousand men** - “24,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

- **eighth month** - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **ninth month** - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 27:13-15

UDB:

¹³ The commander for the following month was Maharai, a descendant of Zerah from the city of Netophath.

- ¹⁴ The commander for the following month was Benaiah from the city of Pirathon in the tribe of Ephraim.
- ¹⁵ The commander for the last month of each year was Heldai, a descendant of Othniel from the city of Netophath.

ULB:

¹³ The commander for the tenth month was Maharai from the city of Netophah, from the clan descended from Zerah. In his division were twenty-four thousand men. ¹⁴ The commander for the eleventh month was Benaiah from the city of Pirathon, from the tribe of Ephraim. In his division were twenty-four thousand men. ¹⁵ The commander for the twelfth month was Heldai from the city of Netophah, from the clan descended from Othniel. In his division were twenty-four thousand men.

translationWords:

- commander, command

translationNotes:

- **tenth month** - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **Maharai ... Zerah ... Heldai ... Othniel** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Netophah ... Pirathon** - These are names of places. It is during the last part December and the first part January on Western calendars.
- **twenty-four thousand men** - "24,000 men" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **eleventh month** - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))
- **twelfth month** - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 27:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ This is a list of the administrators of the twelve tribes of Israel:

- Eliezer, son of Zicri, was the administrator of the tribe of Reuben.
- Shephatiah, son of Maacah, was the administrator of the tribe of Simeon.
- ¹⁷ Hashabiah, the son of Kemuel, was the administrator of the tribe of Levi.
- Zadok was the administrator of the tribe of Aaron.
- ¹⁸ Elihu, David's older brother, was the administrator of the tribe of Judah.
- Omri, son of Michael, was the administrator of the tribe of Issachar.
-

ULB:

¹⁶ These were the leaders of the tribes of Israel: For the tribe of Reuben, Eliezer son of Zichri was the leader. For the tribe of Simeon, Shephatiah son of Maacah was the leader. ¹⁷ For the tribe of Levi, Hashabiah son of Kemuel was the leader, and Zadok led Aaron's descendants. ¹⁸ For the tribe of Judah, Elihu, one of David's brothers, was the leader. For the tribe of Issachar, Omri son of Michael was the leader.

translationWords:

- Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel
- Reuben
- Simeon
- Levite, Levi
- Aaron
- descendant, descended from
- Judah
- David
- Issachar

translationNotes:

- **Eliezer ... Michael** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 27 General Notes
- **1 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 27:19-22

UDB:

¹⁹ Ishmaiah, son of Obadiah, was the administrator of the tribe of Zebulun.

- Jerimoth, son of Azriel, was the administrator of the tribe of Naphtali.
- ²⁰ Hoshea, son of Azaziah, was the administrator of the tribe of Ephraim.
- Joel, son of Pedaiah, was the administrator of the tribe of the western half of the tribe of Manasseh.
- ²¹ Iddo, son of Zechariah, was the administrator of the eastern half of the tribe of Manasseh, in the region of Gilead.
- Jaasiel, son of Abner, was the administrator of the tribe of Benjamin.
- ²² Azarel, son of Jeroham, was the administrator of the tribe of Dan.

ULB:

¹⁹ For the tribe of Zebulun, Ishmaiah son of Obadiah was the leader. For the tribe of Naphtali, Jeremoth son of Azriel was the leader. ²⁰ For the tribe of Ephraim, Hoshea son of Azaziah was the leader. For the half tribe of Manasseh, Joel son of Pedaiah was the leader. ²¹ For the half tribe of Manasseh in Gilead, Iddo son of Zechariah was the leader. For the tribe of Benjamin, Jaasiel son of Abner was the leader. ²² For the tribe of Dan, Azarel son of Jeroham was the leader. These were the leaders of the tribes of Israel.

translationWords:

- [Zebulun](#)
- [Obadiah](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [Hoshea](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [Dan](#)

translationNotes:

- **Ishmaiah ... Jeroham** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 27 General Notes
- **1 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 27:23-24

UDB:

²³ David did not tell Joab to count the men who were less than twenty years old, because Yahweh had promised many years previously that there would be as many people in Israel as there are stars in the sky. ²⁴ Joab and his helpers started to count the men of Israel, but they did not finish counting them because Joab knew that Yahweh was angry about their being counted. Yahweh punished the people of Israel because of this counting, and as a result the total number of Israelite men able to serve in the army was not written on the scroll about King David's rule.

-

ULB:

²³ David did not count those twenty years old or younger, because Yahweh had promised to increase Israel like the stars of heaven. ²⁴ Joab son of Zeruiah began to count the men, but did not finish. Wrath fell on Israel for this. This number was not written down in the Chronicles of King David.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [promise](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [chronicles](#)
- [king](#)

translationNotes:

- **those twenty years old or younger** - "people 20 years old or younger," (See: [Numbers](#))
- **increase Israel** - "increase the population of Israel" (See: [Ellipsis](#))
- **like the stars of heaven** - The number of the people of Israel is compared to the number of stars to show that there were so many. (See: [Simile](#))
- **Wrath fell on Israel** - AT: "God punished the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))
- **This number was not written down** - AT: "No one wrote this number down" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 27 General Notes
- [1 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 27:25-27

UDB:

²⁵ Azmaveth, son of Adiel, was in charge of the king's storehouses.

- Jonathan, son of Uzziah, was in charge of the storehouses in other towns and villages in Israel, and also in charge of the watchtowers.
- ²⁶ Ezri son of Kelub was in charge of the workers who farmed the land that belonged to the king.
- ²⁷ Shimei from the city of Ramath was in charge of the king's vineyards.
- Zabdi from the city of Shepham was in charge of storing the wine from the grapes produced in vineyards.
-

ULB:

²⁵ Azmaveth son of Adiel was in charge of the king's treasuries. Jonathan son of Uzziah was over the storehouses in the fields, in the cities, and in the villages, and in the fortified towers. ²⁶ Ezri son of Chelub was over the farmers, those who plowed the land. ²⁷ Shimei from Ramah was over the vineyards, and Zabdi from Shepham was over the grapes and the wine cellars.

translationWords:

- [storehouse](#)
- [watchtower, tower](#)
- [Shimei](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

translationNotes:

- **Azmaveth ... Zabdi** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **in charge of** - "responsible for guarding"
- **fortified towers** - "strong towers."
- **plowed the land** - This means to dig into or break up the dirt before planting.
- **Shepham** - This is the name of a place.
- **cellars** - These are the parts of a building that are below the ground and used to store wine.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 27 General Notes
- **1 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 27:28-29

UDB:

²⁸ Baal Hanan from the city of Geder was in charge of storing the olive oil.

- ²⁹ Shitrai from the Plain of Sharon was in charge of the herds of cattle that grazed there.
- Shaphat son of Adlai was in charge of the cattle in the valleys.
-

ULB:

²⁸ Over the olive trees and the sycamore trees that were in the lowlands was Baal Hanan from Geder, and over the storehouses of oil was Joash. ²⁹ Over the herds that were pastured in Sharon was Shitrai from Sharon, and over the herds that were in the valleys was Shaphat son of Adlai.

translationWords:

- olive
- oil
- Joash
- flock, herd
- Sharon, Plain of Sharon

translationNotes:

- **sycamore** - This is a type of tree. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
- **Baal Hanan ... Shitrai ... Adlai** - These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Geder ... Shaphat** - These are names of places.
- **that were pastured** - “that ate grass in the fields” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 27:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ Obil, a descendant of Ishmael, was in charge of the camels.

- Jehdeiah from the city of Meronoth was in charge of the donkeys.
- ³¹ Jaziz, a descendant of Hagar, was in charge of the king's flocks of sheep.

All of those officials were in charge of the things that belonged to King David.

-

ULB:

³⁰ Over the camels was Obil the Ishmaelite, and over the female donkeys was Jehdeiah from Meronoth. Over the flocks was Jaziz the Hagrite. ³¹ All these were overseers of the property of King David.

translationWords:

- camel
- donkey, mule
- overseer
- king
- David

translationNotes:

- **Obil ... Jehdeiah ... Jaziz** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Ishmaelite ... Hagrite** - These are names of tribes or clans. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Meronoth** - This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **All these** - "These men"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 27:32-34

UDB:

³² David's uncle Jonathan was a wise counselor for him.

- Jehiel, son of Hacmoni, taught the king's sons.
- ³³ Ahithophel was the king's official counselor.
- ³⁴ Hushai from the Ark people group was the king's special friend.
- Benaiah's son Jehoiada became the king's advisor after Ahithophel died, and later Abiathar became his advisor.
- Joab was the chief commander of the army.

ULB:

³² Jonathan, David's uncle, was an advisor, since he was a wise man and a scribe. Jehiel son of Hachmoni cared for the king's sons. ³³ Ahithophel was the king's advisor, and Hushai from the Archite people was the king's private advisor. ³⁴ Ahithophel's position was taken by Jehoiada son of Benaiah, and by Abiathar. Joab was commander of the king's army.

translationWords:

- [counsel, counselor, advice, advisor](#)
- [wise men](#)
- [scribe, expert in the Jewish law](#)
- [Benaiah](#)
- [Abiathar](#)
- [Joab](#)
- [commander, command](#)

translationNotes:

- **Jonathan ... Jehoiada** - These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Archite** - This is the name of a tribe of clan.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 27 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 28 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. David lectured the people and Solomon on what they should do. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

David's instructions

David gives instructions to the people because he knows that he will not be there when the temple is built. It was common in the ancient Near East for leaders to give instructions to people before they die in preparation or anticipation of their death.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 28:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 28:1

UDB:

¹ David summoned all the leaders of Israel to come to Jerusalem. He summoned the leaders of the tribes, the leaders of the groups that worked for the king, the commanders of one hundred soldiers, the commanders of one thousand soldiers, those who were in charge of the king's property and his livestock, those who taught his sons, all the palace officials, and his mighty soldiers and bravest warriors.

ULB:

28 ¹ David assembled all the officials of Israel at Jerusalem: the officials of the tribes, the officers of the divisions that served the king in their scheduled work, the commanders of thousands and of hundreds, the managers over all the property and possessions of the king and of his sons, and the officers and fighting men, including the most skilled of them.

translationWords:

- [David](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [king](#)
- [commander, command](#)
- [manager, steward](#)
- [possess, possession](#)

translationNotes:

- **officials** - See how you translated this in [24:5](#).
- **scheduled work** - Work that needs to be repeated, for example every day or every month.
- **thousands and of hundreds** - "1,000s and of 100s" (See: [Numbers](#))
- **property and possessions** - These two words share similar meanings and refer to all of the items and lands that the king owned. (See: [Doublet](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 28:2-3

UDB:

² David stood up and said, "My fellow Israelites, listen to me. I wanted to build a temple to be a place where we would put the sacred chest containing Yahweh's covenant, where the sacred chest would stay permanently. And I made plans to build it. ³ But God said to me, 'You are not the one who will arrange to build a temple, because you have fought battles and have killed people.'

ULB:

² Then David the king rose to his feet and said, "Listen to me, my brothers and my people. It was my intention to build a temple for the ark of the covenant of Yahweh; a footstool for our God, and I have made preparations to build it. ³ But God said to me, 'You will not build a temple for my name, because you are a man of war and have shed blood.'

translationWords:

- brother
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- temple
- ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- footstool
- God
- bloodshed

translationNotes:

- **rose to his feet** - AT: "stood up" (UDB) (See: **Idiom**)
- **my brothers and my people** - These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that David and the people of Israel are family. (See: **Doublet**)
- **the ark of the covenant of Yahweh; a footstool for our God** - The second phrase defines the first phrase. Yahweh often refers to "the ark of the covenant" as his "footstool." (See: **Doublet**)
- **a temple for my name** - AT: "a temple for me" (See: **Synecdoche**)
- **a man of war and have shed blood** - Both descriptions emphasize the same thing, namely that David had killed people. (See: **Doublet**)
- **have shed blood** - AT: "have killed people" (UDB) (See: **Idiom** and **Euphemism**)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 28:4-5

UDB:

⁴ But Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong, had chosen me and my descendants to be the kings of Israel forever. First he chose Judah to be a leader, and from the people of Judah he chose me to be the king over all of Israel. ⁵ Yahweh has given me many sons, but from them he chose my son Solomon to be the next king to rule his kingdom of Israel.

ULB:

⁴ Yet Yahweh, the God of Israel, chose me from all my father's family to be king over Israel forever. He has chosen the tribe of Judah as leader. In the tribe of Judah, and in my father's household, out of all my father's sons, he chose me to be king over all Israel. ⁵ From the many sons whom Yahweh has given me, he chose Solomon, my son, to sit on the throne of the kingdom of Yahweh, over Israel.

translationWords:

- ancestor, father, forefather
- family
- forever
- Judah
- household
- son, son of
- Solomon
- throne
- kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - David continues speaking to the Israelites.
- **king over Israel forever** - Possible meanings are 1) David and his descendants will rule Israel forever or 2) David will continue to be the king of Israel after he is resurrected from the dead.
- **all Israel** - AT: "the whole land of Israel" or "all the Israelites" (See: **Idiom**)
- **to sit on the throne of** - AT: "to rule over" or "to be the king of" (See: **Idiom**)
- **the kingdom of Yahweh, over Israel** - AT: "Israel, which is actually Yahweh's kingdom"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 28 General Notes
- 1 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 28:6-7

UDB:

⁶ He said to me, 'Solomon your son is the one who will arrange to build my temple and the courtyards around it, because I have chosen him to be like my son and I will be like his father. ⁷ I will enable his kingdom to endure forever if he continues to obey my laws and decrees, like you are doing now.'

ULB:

⁶ He said to me, 'Solomon your son will build my house and my courtyards, for I have chosen him to be my son, and I will be his father. ⁷ I will establish his kingdom forever, if he remains committed to obey my commandments and decrees, as you are this day.'

translationWords:

- courtyard, court
- forever
- commit, committed, commitment
- obey, obedient, obedience
- command, to command, commandment
- decree

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - David continues to speak to the Israelites.
- **He said to me** - AT: "God said to me"
- **my house** - The word "house" refers to the temple of Yahweh.
- **I have chosen him to be my son, and I will be his father** - This does not mean that Solomon becomes an actual son of God, but it describes the personal relationship that he and God will have. AT: "I have chosen to treat him like a son, and I will be like a father to him" (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **my commandments and decrees** - These two words basically mean the same thing and refer to everything that Yahweh had commanded. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **as you are this day** - The word "you" here refers to David. AT: "just as you are committed this day" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 28 General Notes
- **1 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 28:8

UDB:

⁸ So now, while all you people of Israel, all of you who belong to Yahweh, are watching, and while God is listening, I command all you people to carefully obey all the commands of Yahweh our God, in order that you may continue to possess this good land and enable your descendants to inherit it forever.

ULB:

⁸ Now then, in the sight of all Israel, this assembly for Yahweh, and in the presence of our God, all of you must keep and try to carry out all the commandments of Yahweh your God. Do this so that you may possess this good land and leave it as an inheritance to your children after you forever.

translationWords:

- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [children, child](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - David continues to speak to the Israelites.
- **Now then** - This indicates that David starts a new phase in his speech.
- **keep and try to carry out** - The phrase “to carry out” means basically the same thing as “keep.” Together the words emphasize importance of doing what God commands. (See: [Doublet](#))
- **your children after you** - AT: “your children who will take your place after you die” (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 28:9-10

UDB:

⁹ And you, my son Solomon, must know God like I know him, and you must serve him faithfully and because you want to. You must do that because he knows what everyone is thinking and he understands the reasons that people do what they do. If you seek to know him, he will heed your prayers. But if you abandon him, he will abandon you forever. ¹⁰ Yahweh has chosen you to arrange to build a temple for him. So think about what I have said, and be strong and do what he is wanting you to do.”

ULB:

⁹ As for you, Solomon my son, obey the God of your father, and serve him with your whole heart and a willing spirit. Do this because Yahweh searches all hearts and understands every motivation of everyone’s thoughts. If you seek him, he will be found by you, but if you abandon him, he will reject you permanently. ¹⁰ Realize that Yahweh has chosen you to build this temple as his sanctuary. Be strong and do it.”

translationWords:

- Solomon
- obey, obedient, obedience
- God
- serve, service
- heart
- spirit, spiritual
- seek, sought
- reject
- temple
- sanctuary

translationNotes:

- **the God of your father** - David calls himself “your father” because this is a very formal occasion. AT: “my God” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))
- **with your whole heart** - AT: “completely” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **a willing spirit** - AT: “willingly” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- **searches all hearts and understands every motivation of everyone’s thoughts** - These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh knows the thoughts and motives of every person. (See: [Parallelism](#))

- **If you seek him, he will be found by you** - AT: “If you try to get Yahweh to pay attention to you, he will do so” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metaphor](#))
- **Realize** - “See now” AT: “Remember” or “Be aware”
- **Be strong and do it** - The word “strong” here refers to willpower and strength of character.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 28:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Then David gave to his son Solomon the scroll on which were written the plans for the main rooms of the temple, its porch, its storerooms, all the other upper and lower rooms, the holy place, and the very holy place having the sacred chest and its lid. ¹² David wrote for him the plans that he had made for building the courtyards and all the rooms that surrounded the temple, including the room where the money and other valuable things that were dedicated to God were kept.

ULB:

¹¹ Then David gave to Solomon his son the plans for the temple portico, the temple buildings, the storerooms, the upper rooms, the inner rooms, and the room with the atonement lid. ¹² He gave him the plans he had drawn for the courtyards of Yahweh's house, all the surrounding rooms, the storerooms in God's house, and the treasuries for the things that belong to Yahweh.

translationWords:

- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [temple](#)
- [atonement lid](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

translationNotes:

- **temple portico** - "temple porch" or "temple entrance." This refers to the columns that supported the roof at the entrance of the temple.
- **treasuries** - storerooms for valuable things

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 28:13-15

UDB:

¹³ He gave Solomon instructions for the work groups of priests and other descendants of Levi, about all the work that they must do to serve in Yahweh's temple, and about taking care of all the things that would be used in the work at the temple. ¹⁴ He wrote down how much gold and how much silver should be used to make all the items in the temple. ¹⁵ This was a list of how much gold would be needed for making the gold lampstands and the lamps, how much silver to make the silver lamps and lampstands.

ULB:

¹³ He gave him regulations for the divisions of the priests and Levites, for the assigned responsibilities for the service of the house of Yahweh, and for all the objects for the service in Yahweh's house. ¹⁴ He gave him the weight of all the gold vessels for every kind of service and of all the silver vessels, for all the objects for every kind of service. ¹⁵ These details were given by weight, including the details for the gold lampstands and gold lamps, the details by weight for every lampstand, for the lamps, for the silver lampstands, and details for the proper use of every lampstand.

translationWords:

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [assign, assigned](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [lampstand](#)
- [lamp](#)

translationNotes:

- **regulations** - These were specific rules about how the priests and Levites should work in the temple.
- **divisions** - This refers to the groups in which the priests and other temple workers were organized to fulfill their duties. See how you translated this term in [24:1](#).

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)

- 1 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions

1 Chronicles 28:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ There was a list for how much gold would be needed for making the table on which the priests would put the bread to display before God, how much silver to make the other tables, ¹⁷ and how much pure gold for the meat forks and the bowls and the cups, how much gold for each gold dish, how much silver for each silver dish.

ULB:

¹⁶ He gave the weight of the gold for the tables of the bread of the presence, for every table, and the weight of the silver for the silver tables. ¹⁷ He gave the weight of pure gold for the meat forks, basins, and cups. He gave the weight for each of the gold bowls, and the weight of each of the silver bowls.

translationWords:

- [gold](#)
- [bread](#)
- [silver](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 28:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ There was a list for how much pure gold would be needed to make the altar for burning incense. He also gave to Solomon his plans for making the golden statues of winged creatures that would be above the sacred chest of Yahweh, like a chariot for him.

¹⁹ Then David said, "I have written all these plans while Yahweh was directing me. He has enabled me to understand all the details of his plan for the temple that is to be built."

ULB:

¹⁸ He gave the weight of refined gold for the incense altar, and of the gold for the design of the cherubim that spread out their wings and covered the ark of the covenant of Yahweh. ¹⁹ David said, "I have put all this in writing as Yahweh directed me and gave me to understand regarding the design."

translationWords:

- [incense](#)
- [altar](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [understand, understanding](#)

translationNotes:

- **refined gold** - AT: "purified gold" or "extra valuable gold"
- **I have put all this in writing** - AT: "I wrote all of this down" (See: [Idiom](#))
- **gave me to understand regarding** - AT: "helped me to understand the details of"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 28:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ David also said to his son Solomon, "Be strong and courageous, and do this work. Do not be afraid or discouraged, because Yahweh our God, whom I worship, will be with you. He will not fail to help you or abandon you until you finish all the work of making the temple of his. ²¹ The groups of priests and other descendants of Levi are ready to begin their work at God's temple, and every man who has a special skill will help you in all the work. And my officials and the other people will obey you, whatever you command them to do."

ULB:

²⁰ David said to Solomon his son, "Be strong and brave. Do the work. Do not be afraid or anxious, for Yahweh God, my God, is with you. He will not leave you nor abandon you until all the work for the service of Yahweh's temple is finished. ²¹ See, here are the divisions of the priests and Levites for all the service in God's temple. They will be with you, together with all willing and skillful men, to assist you in the work and to perform the service. The officials and all the people are ready to follow your commands."

translationWords:

- Solomon
- works, deeds, work, acts
- God
- serve, service
- temple
- command, to command, commandment

translationNotes:

- **strong and brave** - These two words basically mean the same thing and emphasize that Solomon must be courageous. (See: **Doublet**)
- **Do not be afraid or anxious** - These two words basically mean the same thing and emphasize that Solomon must never give up. AT: "Be courageous" or "Be confident." (See: **Litotes** and **Doublet**)
- **is with you** - AT: "will help you" (See: **Idiom**)
- **He will not leave you nor abandon you** - These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will always be with Solomon. AT: "He will always be with you" (See: **Litotes** and **Doublet**)
- **the divisions of the priests and Levites** - See how you translated this in **28:13**.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 28 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple is finished in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Offering

David and the people made free will offering and dedicated it all to God.

Links:

- [1 Chronicles 29:01 Notes](#)

1 Chronicles 29:1-2

UDB:

¹ Then King David said to all the people who had gathered there, "My son Solomon, the one whom God has chosen to be the next king, is young and does not have much experience. This work of building the temple is great, because this glorious building will not be to honor people, but to honor Yahweh our God. ² From all the things that I possess, I have provided what will be needed to build the temple of my God— gold for the things to be made of gold, silver for the things to be made of silver, bronze for the things to be made of bronze, iron for the things to be made of iron, wood for the things to be made of wood, and large amounts of onyx and turquoise and other valuable stones of various colors, and marble and all kinds of valuable stones.

ULB:

29 ¹ King David said to the whole assembly, "Solomon my son, whom alone God has chosen, is still young and inexperienced, and the task is great. For the temple is not for people but for Yahweh God. ² So I have done my best to provide for the temple of my God. I am giving gold for the things to be made of gold, silver for the things to be made of silver, bronze for the things to be made of bronze, iron for the things to be made of iron, and wood for the things to be made of wood. I am also giving onyx stones, stones to be set, stones for inlaid work of various colors—all kinds of precious stones—and marble stone in abundance.

translationWords:

- [king](#)
- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [precious](#)

translationNotes:

- **onyx stones** - These are stones with black and white lines that are used to make jewelry.
- **inlaid work** - This refers to the beautiful and decorative designs or patterns formed by the stones.

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29:3-5

UDB:

³ In addition to all these things that I have given for the temple, I am giving my own treasures of gold and silver, because I very earnestly desire that this holy temple for my God be built. ⁴ I am giving about one hundred metric tons of gold from Ophir and 240 metric tons of refined silver to cover the walls of the buildings, ⁵ for making the other items of gold and silver, and for the other work to be done by the craftsmen. So now, I ask you, who is willing to show by contributing other gifts for the building of the temple that he has dedicated himself to Yahweh?"

ULB:

³ Now, because of my delight in the house of my God, I am giving my personal treasure of gold and silver for it. I am doing this in addition to all that I have prepared for this holy temple: ⁴ three thousand talents of gold from Ophir, and seven thousand talents of refined silver, in order to overlay the walls of the buildings. ⁵ I am donating gold for the things to be made of gold, and silver for the things to be made of silver, and things for all kinds of work to be done by craftsmen. Who else wants to make a contribution to Yahweh today and give himself to him?"

translationWords:

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - David continues talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.
- **three thousand talents** - "3,000 talents" - (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))
- **gold from Ophir** - the best quality and most valuable gold

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Then the leaders of the families, the leaders of the tribes of Israel, the commanders of one thousand soldiers and the commanders of one hundred soldiers, and the officials who supervised the work that the king wanted done, gave gifts willingly. ⁷ For the work at the temple they gave 170 metric tons and 84 kilograms of gold, 340 metric tons of silver, 612 metric tons of bronze, and 3,400 metric tons of iron.

ULB:

⁶ Then freewill offerings were made by the leaders of their ancestors' families, the leaders of the tribes of Israel, the commanders of thousands and hundreds, and by the officials over the king's work. ⁷ They gave for the service of God's house five thousand talents and ten thousand darics of gold, ten thousand talents of silver, eighteen thousand talents of silver, and 100,000 talents of iron.

translationWords:

- [family](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [commander, command](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [gold](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#)
- **daric ... talent** - (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29:8-9

UDB:

⁸ Any people who owned valuable stones gave them to be put in the storeroom of the temple. Jehiel, a descendant of Gershon, was appointed to be in charge of them. ⁹ The people were happy to see that their leaders wanted to give those things; they were happy and enthusiastic to give those things to Yahweh. And King David also was very happy.

ULB:

⁸ Those who had precious stones gave them to the treasury of Yahweh's house, under the supervision of Jehiel, a descendant of Gershon. ⁹ The people rejoiced because of these freewill offerings, because they had contributed wholeheartedly to Yahweh. King David also rejoiced greatly.

translationWords:

- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [freewill offering](#)

translationNotes:

- **treasury** - This is a place where money and valuable objects are kept.
- **Jehiel** - This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))
- **Gershon** - This was the firstborn son of Levi. (See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 23:7-9](#))
- **wholeheartedly** - willingly and without any doubt or hesitation

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Then, while all the people there were listening, David praised Yahweh. He said,

”We praise you, Yahweh,
the God whom our ancestor Jacob worshiped.
We will praise you forever!

¹¹ You alone are great and powerful;
only you are truly glorious and majestic and wonderful.
And that is true because everything in heaven and on the earth is
yours.
You are the king of all the people in this world;
you are the ruler of everything.

ULB:

¹⁰ David blessed Yahweh in front of all the assembly. He said, ”May you be praised, Yahweh, God of Israel our ancestor, forever and ever. ¹¹ Yours, Yahweh, is the greatness, the power, the glory, the victory, and the majesty. For all that is in the heavens and on the earth is yours. Yours is the kingdom, Yahweh, and you are exalted as ruler over all.

translationWords:

- David
- bless, blessed, blessing
- assembly, assemble
- praise
- God
- forever
- power, powers
- glory, glorious
- majesty
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- earth, earthly
- kingdom
- exalt, exaltation
- ruler, rulers, rule

translationNotes:

- **May you be praised, Yahweh, God of Israel our ancestor, forever and ever.** - AT: “May you be praised, Yahweh our father, God of Israel, forever and ever.”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29:12-13

UDB:

¹² Because you are very powerful,

you are able to cause anyone to be great and be strong.

¹³ So now, our God, we thank you,

and we praise you for being very great.

ULB:

¹² Both riches and honor come from you, and you rule over all people. In your hand is power and might. You possess the strength and might to make people great and to give strength to anyone. ¹³ Now then, our God, we thank you and praise your glorious name.

translationWords:

- honor, to honor
- ruler, rulers, rule
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- mighty, might
- possess, possession
- strength, strengthen
- name

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.
- **In your hand is power and might** - The words “power” and “might” mean the same thing and emphasize the greatness of Yahweh’s power. (See: **Doublet**)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ But I and my people are not really able to give anything to you,

because everything that we have comes from you;

the things that we have given to you are only the things that we have received from you.

¹⁵ You know that we are like foreigners and strangers to you, as our ancestors were.

Our years here on earth are like a shadow that disappears quickly;

we know that there is nothing that can enable us to escape dying.

ULB:

¹⁴ But who am I, and who are my people, that we should be able to offer so willingly these things? Indeed, all things come from you, and we have simply given back to you what is yours. ¹⁵ For we are strangers and travelers before you, as all our ancestors were. Our days on the earth are like a shadow, and there is no hope of remaining on earth.

translationWords:

- shadow
- hope

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.
- **But who am I, and who are my people, that we should be able to offer so willingly these things?** - David means that he and his people deserve no praise for giving anything to God. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))
- **we are strangers and travelers before you** - AT: “You know that we are insignificant” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- **Our days on the earth are like a shadow** - Shadows appear and disappear quickly. (See: [Simile](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)

- 1 Chronicles 29 General Notes
- **1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions**

1 Chronicles 29:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Yahweh our God, we have gathered all these things to use in building your temple,
but all of it really belongs to you, and you have given it to us.

¹⁷ My God, I know that you test us people,
and you are pleased if you find out that we do what is right.

All these things I have given to you because I wanted to.

And now I have seen that your people have joyfully and generously
given things to you.

ULB:

¹⁶ Yahweh our God, all this wealth that we have collected in order to build a temple to honor your holy name—it comes from you and belongs to you. ¹⁷ I know also, my God, that you examine the heart and have pleasure in uprightness. As for me, in the uprightness of my heart I have willingly offered all these things, and now I look with joy as your people who are present here willingly offer gifts to you.

translationWords:

- [Yahweh](#)
- [temple](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [heart](#)
- [upright, uprightness](#)
- [joy, joyful](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)

translationNotes:

- **in the uprightness of my heart** - “because I want to be honest and honorable in everything I do for you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worshiped,

I desire that your people will continue to desire to do things like this forever,

and that they will always be loyal to you.

¹⁹ And now, please enable my son Solomon to faithfully and sincerely

do everything that is needed to build this beautiful building

for which I have provided all these things.”

ULB:

¹⁸ Yahweh, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel—our ancestors—keep this forever in the thoughts of the minds of your people. Direct their hearts toward you. ¹⁹ Give to Solomon my son a whole-hearted desire to keep your commandments, your covenant decrees, and your statutes, and to carry out all these plans to build the palace for which I have made provision.”

translationWords:

- God
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Jacob, Israel
- forever
- mind
- Solomon
- command, to command, commandment
- covenant
- decree
- statute, statutes
- palace

translationNotes:

- **keep this forever in the thoughts of the minds of your people** - AT: “keep this in the thoughts and minds of your people forever”

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Then David said to all the people who were gathered there, “Praise Yahweh our God!” So they all praised Yahweh the God whom their ancestors also worshiped. They prostrated themselves on the ground in front of Yahweh and in front of the king.

²¹ The next day the people offered sacrifices to Yahweh. They presented many animals to be completely burned on the altar: A thousand bulls, a thousand rams, a thousand male sheep, offerings of wine, and many other sacrifices for all the people of Israel to eat.

ULB:

²⁰ David said to all the assembly, “Now bless Yahweh your God.” All the assembly blessed Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, bowed their heads and worshiped Yahweh and prostrated themselves before the king. ²¹ On the next day, they made sacrifices to Yahweh and offered burnt offerings to him. They offered a thousand bulls, a thousand rams, and a thousand lambs, with their drink offerings and sacrifices in abundance for all Israel.

translationWords:

- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [head](#)
- [worship](#)
- [king](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)

translationNotes:

- **General Information:** - See: [Numbers](#)
- **prostrated themselves** - lay down facing the ground as a way of showing extreme respect

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29:22-23

UDB:

²² On that day the people were joyful and ate and drank in Yahweh's honor.

Then for the second time they declared that Solomon was now the king. As Yahweh had commanded, they anointed him with olive oil to be the king, and they anointed Zadok to be the high priest. ²³ So Solomon sat on the throne because Yahweh wanted him to be the king to succeed his father David. During the following years Solomon prospered, and all the Israelite people obeyed him.

ULB:

²² On that day, they ate and drank before Yahweh with great celebration.

They made Solomon, David's son, king a second time, and anointed him with Yahweh's authority to be ruler. They also anointed Zadok to be priest. ²³ Then Solomon sat on Yahweh's throne as king instead of David his father. He prospered, and all Israel obeyed him.

translationWords:

- king
- anoint, anointed
- ruler, rulers, rule
- Zadok
- priest, priesthood
- throne
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- obey, obedient, obedience

translationNotes:

- **before Yahweh** - In order to honor Yahweh.
- **a second time** - The first time is described in [23:1](#).
- **anointed him with Yahweh's authority to be ruler** - AT: "anointed him to rule over Israel on Yahweh's behalf"

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ King David's other sons and all the officers and mighty warriors accepted Solomon to be their king, and they solemnly promised to obey him.

²⁵ Yahweh caused Solomon to be highly respected by all the Israelite people, and they honored him very much. No king of Israel had been honored as much as Solomon was.

ULB:

²⁴ All the leaders, soldiers, and King David's sons gave allegiance to King Solomon. ²⁵ Yahweh greatly honored Solomon before all Israel and bestowed on him greater power than he had ever given to any king before him in Israel.

translationWords:

- [David](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)
- [power, powers](#)

translationNotes:

- **allegiance** - AT: "their loyalty"
- **Yahweh greatly honored Solomon before all Israel and bestowed on him greater power**
- These two phrases emphasize that Solomon received special favor from Yahweh, which made him Israel's greatest and most powerful king. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ Jesse's son David was the king who ruled all of Israel. ²⁷ He ruled for forty years: seven years in the city of Hebron and thirty-three years in Jerusalem. ²⁸ He was very rich and very much honored, and he became an old man. Then he died, and his son Solomon became the king of Israel.

ULB:

²⁶ David son of Jesse reigned over all Israel. ²⁷ David had been king of Israel for forty years. He ruled for seven years in Hebron and for thirty-three years in Jerusalem. ²⁸ He died at a good old age, after enjoying a long life, wealth and honor. Solomon his son succeeded him.

translationWords:

- [David](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [reign](#)
- [Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#)
- [ruler, rulers, rule](#)
- [Hebron](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [age](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [honor, to honor](#)

translationNotes:**Links:**

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

1 Chronicles 29:29-30

UDB:

²⁹ A record of all the things that King David did while he ruled, from the beginning to the end, was on scrolls written by the prophets Samuel, Nathan, and Gad. ³⁰ They told about his powerful rule, and all the things that happened to him and to the people of Israel and in the kingdoms of other countries while he was ruling Israel.

ULB:

²⁹ King David's accomplishments are written in the history of Samuel the prophet, in the history of Nathan the prophet, and in the history of Gad the prophet. ³⁰ Recorded there are the deeds of his rule, his accomplishments and the events that affected him, Israel, and all the kingdoms of the other lands.

translationWords:

- [written](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [kingdom](#)

translationNotes:

- **written in the history of Samuel the prophet, in the history of Nathan the prophet, and in the history of Gad the prophet** - This is a work that no longer exists.
- **Recorded there are the deeds** - AT: "Someone wrote there the deeds" (See: [Active or Passive](#))
- **the deeds of his rule** - "the things that happened while David was king"
- **the events that affected him** - AT: "The events in other nations that affected Israel" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [1 Chronicles 29 Translation Questions](#)

translationQuestions

1 Chronicles 1

Q? Who was the first conqueror on the earth?

A. Nimrod, the son of Cush, was the first conqueror. [1:10]

Q? Why was one of Eber's sons named Peleg?

A. In his days, the earth was divided. [1:19]

Q? What land had kings before kings reigned over the Israelites?

A. The land of Edom had kings before the Israelites had kings. [1:43]

1 Chronicles 2

Q? What happened to Er, Judah's firstborn son?

A. He was wicked in the sight of Yahweh, so Yahweh killed him. [2:3]

Q? How did Achar bring trouble on Israel?

A. He stole what was reserved for God. [2:7]

Q? Who was the seventh son of Jesse?

A. David was the seventh son of Jesse. [2:13-14]

1 Chronicles 3

Q? How many years did David rule as king in Jerusalem?

A. He ruled for thirty-three years as king in Jerusalem. [3:4]

Q? Who was the last king for the Israelities?

A. Zedekiah was Israel's last king. [3:16]

1 Chronicles 4

Q? What did Jabez pray to the God of Israel?

A. He prayed that God would bless him, extend his territory, keep him from harm so that he might not have to endure pain. [4:9-10]

Q? Was Jabez's prayer answered?

A. Yes, God granted him his prayer. [4:10]

Q? Why did the clan of Shimei and his brothers not increase greatly in numbers and the people of Judah did?

A. His brothers did not have many children. [4:27]

Q? Why did some of the sons of Shimei go to Gedor on the east side of the valley?

A. They were seeking pasture for their flocks, and they found abundant and good pasture there. [4:39-40]

1 Chronicles 5

Q? Why was Reuben's firstborn birthright given to his brother Joseph?

A. His birthright was given to Joseph, son of Israel, because Reuben had defiled his father's couch. [5:1]

Q? From what son of Israel would a leader come?

A. A leader would come from Israel's son, Judah. [5:2]

Q? What happened to Beerah, the son of Baal?

A. The king of Assyria took him into exile. [5:6]

Q? How many trained soldiers did the Reubinites, Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh have?

A. They had forty-four thousand soldiers trained for war, who carried shield and sword, and who drew the bow. [5:18]

Q? Why were the Hagarites defeated?

A. They were defeated because the Israelites cried out to God and put their trust in him, and God responded to them. [5:20]

Q? How long did the Israelites live in the land they took from the Hagarites?

A. They lived there until their captivity. [5:22]

Q? Where did the half tribe of Manasseh live with their families?

A. They lived in the land of Bashan. [5:23-24]

Q? Because the Reubenites, Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh were unfaithful to God, what did he do to them?

A. God stirred up the king of Assyria and these tribes were taken into exile by Assyria. [5:25-26]

1 Chronicles 6

Q? To whom did Yahweh exile Judah and Jerusalem?

A. He exiled Judah and Jerusalem to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon. [6:15]

Q? What were the duties of the men whom David put in charge of music?

A. They were to serve by singing before the tabernacle. [6:31]

Q? Who built the house of Yahweh in Jerusalem?

A. Solomon built the house of Yahweh. [6:32]

Q? What tribe of Israel was assigned to do the work for the tabernacle?

A. The Levites were assigned to do this work. [6:48]

Q? What atonement offerings were Aaron and his sons responsible for?

A. They were responsible for the offerings on the altar for burnt offerings and on the incense altar. [6:49]

Q? What were these offerings for?

A. These offerings were to make atonement for Israel's sins. [6:49]

Q? Where did the Levites live because they were not given specific land like the other tribes?

A. The Levites were assigned by lot cities with their pasturelands from the tribes of Judah, Simeon, and Benjamin. [6:64-65]

1 Chronicles 7

Q? What kind of men were the sons of Tola?

A. They were strong, courageous men. [7:2]

Q? What was the number of fighting men from the tribe of Issachar?

A. The tribe of Issachar had 87,000 fighting men. [7:5]

Q? For what were the sons of Bela known?

A. The sons of Bela were known as soldiers and originators of clans. [7:6-7]

Q? Who bore Manasseh a male child named Asriel?

A. Manasseh's Aramite concubine bore him a male child named Asriel. [7:14]

Q? Why did Ephraim need comfort from his brothers when he was in mourning for many days?

A. Ephraim needed comfort from his brothers because his sons Ezer and Elead were killed by men of Gath when they went to steal their cattle. [7:21-22]

Q? Why did Ephraim name his son Beriah?

A. Ephraim named his son Beriah because tragedy had come to his family. [7:23]

Q? Who was the son of Nun?

A. Joshua was the son of Nun. [7:27]

Q? Where were the possessions and residences of Joshua and his family?

A. Their possessions and residences were in Bethel and its surrounding villages. [7:28]

Q? What were the qualities of the descendants of Asher?

A. The descendants of Asher were originators of clans, leaders of their families, distinguished men, fighting men, and chief among the leaders. [7:40]

1 Chronicles 8

Q? What were the descendants of Ehud compelled to do?

A. The descendants of Ehud were compelled to move to Manahath. [8:6]

Q? Who did the sons of Elpaal drive out?

A. His sons drove out the inhabitants of Gath. [8:13]

Q? Where did Jeroham's sons live?

A. They lived in Jerusalem. [8:28]

Q? Where did Mikloth and his family live?

A. Mikloth and his family lived near their relatives in Jerusalem. [8:32]

Q? Who was the father of Saul?

A. Kish was the father of Saul. [8:33]

Q? For what were the sons of Ulam, who were descendants of Benjamin, known?

A. The sons of Ulam were fighting men and archers. [8:39-40]

1 Chronicles 9

Q? Where were the genealogies of all Israel recorded?

A. The genealogies were recorded in the Book of the Kings of Israel. [9:1]

Q? Why was Judah carried away in exile to Babylon?

A. Judah was carried away to Babylon because of their sin. [9:1]

Q? Who were the first people to resettle in their cities?

A. The first to resettle in their cities were some Israelites, priests, Levites, and temple servants. [9:2]

Q? For what was Azariah known?

A. Azariah was the priest who was in charge of the house of God. [9:11]

Q? For what were the relatives of Adaiah and Maasai known?

A. They were very capable men in the work in the house of God. [9:13]

Q? What was the previous responsibility which the doorkeepers carried out?

A. The doorkeepers previously stood guard at the king's gate on the east side for the camp of Levi's descendants. [9:17-18]

Q? What was the responsibility of the Korahites?

A. The Korahites were guards over the temple work and over the thresholds of the tent where Yahweh lived. [9:19]

Q? What was the responsibility of Zechariah, son of Meshelemiah?

A. Zechariah was the guard of the entrance to the Temple, the “tent of meeting”. [9:21]

Q? What did the gatekeepers and their children, whom David and Samuel placed into their positions of trust, do in Israel?

A. The gatekeepers and their children guarded the gates of the house of Yahweh, the tabernacle. [9:22-24]

Q? How did the four leaders of the gatekeepers carry out their assigned task to guard the room and storerooms in the house of God?

A. The four leaders of the gatekeepers would spend the night in their posts all around the house of God and then open it each morning. [9:26-27]

Q? What specific tasks were the Levites assigned to do?

A. Some of the Levites were in charge of the temple’s equipment and some were assigned to take care of the sanctuary utensils, equipment, and supplies like the flour, the wine, the oil, the frankincense, and the spices. [9:28-29]

Q? What was the responsibility of the Kohathites?

A. The Kohathites were in charge of preparing the bread of the presence every Sabbath. [9:32]

Q? Why did the singers and Levite family leaders live in rooms at the sanctuary when they were free from work?

A. The singers and Levite family leaders lived at the sanctuary because they had to carry out their assigned tasks every day and night. [9:33]

1 Chronicles 10

Q? What happened to the sons of Saul on Mount Gilboa?

A. The Philistines pursued the sons of Saul and killed them. [10:1-2]

Q? Why did Saul want his armor bearer to thrust him through with his sword?

A. Saul wanted his armor bearer to thrust him through so that the uncircumcised could not abuse him. [10:4]

Q? What did Saul do when his armor bearer would not thrust him through?

A. Saul took his own sword and fell on it. [10:4]

Q? How did Saul's armor bearer react to Saul's death?

A. When Saul's armor bearer saw that Saul was dead, he also fell on his sword and died. [10:5]

Q? What did the men of Israel do when they saw the the army had fled and that Saul and his sons were dead?

A. They fled abandoned their cities and allowed the Philistines to come and live in them. [10:7]

Q? What did the Philistines do to the body of Saul?

A. The Philistines stripped his body and put his armor in the temple of their gods and fastened his head to the temple of Dagon. [10:9-10]

Q? What did the fighting men of Jabesh Gilead do with the bodies of Saul and his sons?

A. They took away the body of Saul and his sons and brought them to Jabesh and buried their bones under the oak tree. [10:11-12]

Q? Why did Saul die?

A. Saul died because he was unfaithful and did not seek guidance from Yahweh, but asked for advice from someone who talked with the dead. [10:13-14]

Q? To whom did Yahweh hand over the kingdom of Israel?

A. Yahweh handed over the kingdom of Israel to David, the son of Jesse. [10:14]

1 Chronicles 11

Q? Why was all of Israel willing to anoint David as king over Israel?

A. David was their flesh and bone, led the Israelite army in the past, and Yahweh through Samuel had declared that David would rule over Israel. [11:1-3]

Q? How did Joab become a commander in the army of Israel?

A. David had said that whoever attacked the Jebusites first would become a commander, and Joab was the first to attack them. [11:4-6]

Q? Why did David become greater and greater after he began to live in the city of David?

A. David became greater and greater because Yahweh of hosts was with him. [11:7-9]

Q? For what was Jashobeam known?

A. Jashobeam killed three hundred men with his spear on one occasion. [11:11]

Q? What was the reputation of Eleazar the Ahohite?

A. After the Israelite army had fled, Eleazar the Ahohite stood his ground in the middle of the barley field and cut down the Philistines. [11:12-14]

Q? What was the request which David made?

A. David wanted some water to drink from the well near the gate at Bethlehem. [11:17]

Q? What did the three mighty men of David do to make his request a reality?

A. The three mighty men of David broke through the army of the Philistines, drew water out of the Bethlehem well, and brought it back to David. [11:18]

Q? Why did David not drink the water from the well in Bethlehem when his mighty men had risked their lives to get it?

A. David refused to drink the water because he could not think of drinking it when the men had risked their lives to get it. [11:19]

Q? What was the reputation of Abishai, brother of Joab?

A. Abishai was captain over the three mighty men and once killed three hundred with his spear. [11:20-21]

Q? What was the reputation of Benaiah, son of Jehoiada?

A. Benaiah was a strong man who killed a lion in a pit while it was snowing, and killed a large Egyptian by wresting his own spear away from him. [11:22-23]

Q? What responsibility did David give to Benaiah?

A. Benaiah was highly regarded by David, so he put him in charge of his bodyguard. [11:24-25]

Q? Which of the mighty men was the brother of Joab?

A. Asahel was the mighty man who was the brother of Joab. [11:26]

1 Chronicles 12

Q? What was the special talent of the mighty men who came to David while he was still banished from the presence of Saul?

A. The mighty men were Benjaminites who could use both the right hand and the left in slinging stones and shooting arrows from their bows. [12:1-2]

Q? What were the special traits of the Gadites who joined David at the stronghold in the wilderness.

A. The Gadites were fighting men trained for battle who could handle the shield and spear, whose faces were as fierce as the faces of lions, and who could run as swift as gazelles on the mountains. [12:8]

Q? What did the sons of Gad accomplish in the land given to Israel?

A. The sons of Gad not only crossed the Jordan after it had overflowed its banks, but chased away all those living in the valleys. [12:14-15]

Q? What warning did David give to the men of Benjamin and Judah when they came to his stronghold?

A. David told them they could join him if they had come in peace, but if they had come to betray him to his adversaries, then he would tell God to rebuke them since he had done no wrong. [12:16-17]

Q? What was Amasai's response to David's warning?

A. Amasai told David that we are all on his side and only want peace for whoever helps David because his God is helping him. [12:18]

Q? Why did the Philistines send David away when David had come over to the Philistines to fight in battle against Saul?

A. The Philistines were afraid that he would desert back to fighting with Saul and they would be at risk for losing their lives. [12:19]

Q? How did the men of Manasseh, who later became commanders in David's army, help him?

A. The men of Manasseh were fighting men who helped David by fighting against the roving bands. [12:21]

Q? Why did all the armed soldiers for war come to David at Hebron?

A. They came to David at Hebron to help him take over the kingdom of Saul which was a fulfillment of Yahweh's word. [12:23]

Q? For what was Zadok known?

A. Zadok was a young, strong, and courageous man. [12:28]

Q? For what were the two hundred leaders from Issachar known?

A. They had understanding of the times and knew what Israel ought to do. [12:32]

Q? Why did all the soldiers of Israel come to Hebron?

A. They came to Hebron with the firm intentions to make David the king over all Israel. [12:38]

Q? Where did the soldiers of Israel get enough food and drink to be able to eat and drink for three days to celebrate David becoming the king of Israel?

A. The relatives of the soldiers of Israel sent all those provisions with them. [12:39]

1 Chronicles 13

Q? With whom did David consult before speaking to all the assembly of Israel?

A. He consulted with the commanders and with every leader in Israel. [13:1-2]

Q? Why did the assembly agree to listen to David, send out messengers everywhere in Israel and join with David to bring the ark of God back to Israel?

A. The assembly agreed to do these things because they seemed right in the eyes of all the people. [13:2-4]

Q? What did David and all Israel do as they brought the ark out of Abinadab's house?

A. David and all Israel celebrated before God with all their might. [13:7-8]

Q? What did Yahweh do when Uzza stretched out his hand to grab the ark when the oxen stumbled?

A. The anger of Yahweh burned against Uzzah and Yahweh killed him. [13:9]

Q? Why was David angry with Yahweh?

A. David was angry because Yahweh had attacked Uzza. [13:11]

Q? Where did David put the ark of God when he became afraid of God?

A. David put the ark of God into the house of Obededom the Gittite. [13:12-13]

Q? What did Yahweh do for Obededom's household?

A. Yahweh blessed his house and all that he possessed. [13:14]

1 Chronicles 14

Q? What did David know for sure when Hiram, king of Tyre sent messengers, cedar trees, carpenters and masons to build a house for David?

A. David knew for sure that Yahweh had established him as king over Israel. [14:1-2]

Q? What was the result when David took more wives in Jerusalem?

A. David became the father of more sons and daughters. [14:3]

Q? What did David do when he heard that the Philistines were out looking for him?

A. He went out against the Philistines. [14:8]

Q? What did Yahweh answer David when David asked if he should attack the Philistines?

A. Yahweh told David to attack them for he would certainly give them to David. [14:10]

Q? What did David order to be done to the gods that the Philistines had abandoned?

A. David gave an order that the gods of the Philistines should be burned. [14:12]

Q? From where did God tell David to attack the Philistines when they raided the valley again?

A. God told David to circle around behind them and come on them through the woods. [14:13-14]

Q? What was David to hear before he attacked the Philistines with force?

A. David was to hear the sound of marching in the wind blowing through the treetops. [14:15]

Q? What did Yahweh cause all nations to do when David's fame went out to all lands?

A. Yahweh caused all nations to fear David. [14:17]

1 Chronicles 15

Q? Who did David say were the only people that Yahweh had chosen to carry the ark?

A. Levites were the only people who Yahweh had chosen to carry the ark. [15:2]

Q? For what purpose did David assemble all of Israel at Jerusalem?

A. David assembled them to bring up the ark of Yahweh to the place he had prepared for it. [15:3]

Q? Who did David gather together to bring up the ark?

A. David gathered together Aaron's descendants and the Levites. [15:4]

Q? What were the leaders of the Levite families and their brothers to do so that they could bring up the ark of Yahweh to the place David prepared for it?

A. They were to place themselves apart so they could bring up the ark of Yahweh. [15:12]

Q? Why did the priests and Levites sanctify themselves?

A. They sanctified themselves so that they could bring up the ark of Yahweh, the God of Israel. [15:14]

Q? From whom did Moses get the rules for carrying the ark on the Levites' shoulders with the poles?

A. The rules for carrying the ark were given by the word of Yahweh. [15:15]

Q? To whom did David give the responsibility of assigning the musicians?

A. David gave the responsibility of assigning the musicians to the leaders of the Levites. [15:16]

Q? Who helped the Levites who carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh?

A. God helped the Levites who carried the ark. [15:26]

Q? With what was David clothed and what was he wearing in addition?

A. David was clothed with a robe of fine linen and he was wearing a linen ephod. [15:27]

Q? Who brought up the ark with joyful shouting, with the sound of horns, with cymbals and with stringed instruments and harps?

A. All of Israel brought up the ark. [15:28]

Q? What did Michal see David doing that caused her to despise him in her heart?

A. Michal saw King David dancing and celebrating. [15:29]

1 Chronicles 16

Q? What did the Israelites offer before God after the ark was put in the middle of the the tent that David had set up for it?

A. They offered burnt offerings and fellowship offerings. [16:1]

Q? What did David distribute to every Israelite when he had finished blessing the people in the name of Yahweh?

A. David distributed to each of them a loaf of bread, a piece of meat, and a cake of raisins. [16:2-3]

Q? What were the Levites appointed to do as they served before the ark?

A. The Levites were to celebrate, thank and praise Yahweh, the God of Israel as they served before the ark of Yahweh. [16:4]

Q? What were Assaph and his brothers appointed to do?

A. They were appointed to sing a song of thanksgiving to Yahweh. [16:7]

Q? What were people to speak about in the song that Assaph and his brothers sang?

A. They were to speak of all of Yahweh's marvelous deeds. [16:9]

Q? Who were the people to boast about and seek?

A. The people were to boast about and seek Yahweh. [16:10-11]

Q? What are the descendants of Israel, Yahweh's chosen ones, supposed to recall about Yahweh their God?

A. They are to recall the marvelous things he has done, his miracles and the decrees from his mouth. [16:12-14]

Q? What did Yahweh make with Abraham that the Israelites are to keep in mind forever?

A. He made a covenant with Abraham, and the Israelites are to keep Yahweh's covenant in mind forever. [16:15-16]

Q? What did Yahweh promise to give to his people as a share of their inheritance?

A. Yahweh promised to give them the land of Canaan. [16:18]

Q? How did Yahweh protect Israel when they were few in number and as they were going from one kingdom to another?

A. He did not allow anyone to oppress them. [16:19-21]

Q? What are the people to declare among the nations as they sing to Yahweh and announce his salvation day after day?

A. They are to declare Yahweh's glory and his marvelous deeds among all the nations. [16:23-24]

Q? Who is it that has made the heavens and is to be praised greatly and feared above all other gods?

A. It is Yahweh who made the heavens and is to be praised greatly and feared above all other gods. [16:25-26]

Q? What is to be ascribed to Yahweh?

A. Glory and strength are to be ascribed to Yahweh. [16:28]

Q? What will the nations say about Yahweh?

A. The nations will say, "Yahweh reigns." [16:31]

Q? What are the trees in the forest going to do before Yahweh?

A. The trees in the forest will shout for joy before him. [16:33]

Q? Why should Yahweh gather his people together and rescue them from the other nations?

A. He should gather them together and rescue them so that they may give thanks to his holy name and glory in his praises. [16:35]

Q? For how long is Yahweh, the God of Israel to be praised?

A. He is to be praised from everlasting to everlasting. [16:36]

Q? Who gave the commands and written law to Israel for how the burnt offerings were to be made?

A. Yahweh gave the commands and written law to Israel. [16:40]

Q? To what place did the people and David return after the celebration of the placing of the ark?

A. The people returned to their homes, and David returned to bless his own household. [16:43]

1 Chronicles 17

Q? What bothered King David about where the ark of the covenant of Yahweh was staying?

A. It bothered him that the ark of the covenant of Yahweh was staying under only a tent while David was living in a house of cedar. [17:1]

Q? What did Yahweh tell Nathan to say David about building a house in for Yahweh?

A. God said David was not to build a house in which Yahweh could live. [17:3]

Q? Why did Yahweh take David from the pasture and from following the sheep?

A. He took David from the pasture and from following the sheep so that he would be ruler over Yahweh's people Israel. [17:7]

Q? What did Yahweh say that he would do for David's name?

A. He said that he would make David a name like the name of the great ones who are on the earth. [17:8]

Q? Who would no longer oppress the people of Israel after Yahweh gave them a place where they could live and be troubled no more?

A. Wicked people would no longer oppress Israel as they did before. [17:9]

Q? What does Yahweh say that David's descendant will do after David's days are fulfilled?

A. David's descendant will build a house for Yahweh. [17:11-12]

Q? For how long did Yahweh say that the throne of David's descendant would be established?

A. The throne of David's descendant would be established forever. [17:14]

Q? What did David say that Yahweh had done for him because of what Yahweh had shown him about future generations?

A. He said Yahweh had honored him and given him special recognition. [17:17-18]

Q? What does David say is the reason that Yahweh rescued his people from Egypt and made them a people for himself?

A. Yahweh rescued them from Egypt to make a name for himself by his great and awesome deeds. [17:21]

Q? What does David ask Yahweh to do about the promise that he made to David concerning the establishment of David's family forever?

A. David asks Yahweh to do as Yahweh had spoken. [17:23]

Q? What did Yahweh promise to do for his servant David's house?

A. Yahweh promised to bless his servant David's house and it would be blessed forever. [17:26-27]

1 Chronicles 18

Q? What two groups of people did David attack and defeat?

A. He attacked and defeated the Philistines and the Moabites. [18:1-2]

Q? What did David do with the hundred chariot horses that were left over after he hamstrung the horses that he captured from Hadadezer?

A. He reserved enough chariot horses for a hundred chariots. [18:3-4]

Q? What did David put in Aram of Damascus after he had killed twenty-two thousand Arameans?

A. David put garrisons in Aram of Damascus. [18:5-6]

Q? What did David take from Hadadezer that Solomon used later to make items for the temple?

A. David took very much bronze from Hadadezer. [18:8]

Q? What did King David do with the silver, gold and bronze items that Hadoram brought to David from Toi, king of Hamath and the silver and gold that he carried away from all the nations?

A. David dedicated these objects to Yahweh. [18:9-11]

Q? What happened to all the Edomites after the battle in which Abishai killed 18,000 Edomites?

A. All the Edomites became David's servants. [18:12-13]

Q? Who were the leading advisors to King David as he reigned over all Israel and administered justice and righteousness to all his people?

A. David's sons were the king's leading advisors. [18:17]

1 Chronicles 19

Q? Why did David want to show kindness to Hanun the son of Nahash, king of the people of Ammon after his father died?

A. Hanun's father had been kind to David. [19:1-2]

Q? Did the leaders of Ammon believe that David was trying to comfort Hanun as David's servants entered their land?

A. The leaders thought David's servants were coming to explore and examine their land so David could overthrow their country. [19:3]

Q? What did the Hanun do to David's servants that made the servants deeply ashamed?

A. He shaved them and were cut off their garments to the waist. [19:4-5]

Q? Why did the Ammorites hire chariots and horsemen?

A. They hired the chariots and horsemen to prepare for war because they had become a stench to David. [19:6-7]

Q? Who did David send when he heard about the Ammonites preparing for war?

A. David sent Joab and his entire army. [19:8]

Q? How did Joab arrange for fighting the Ammonites and the Arameans when he saw their battle lines.

A. Job chose some of Israel's best to fight the Arameans and gave command to his brother to fight the Ammonites with the rest of the army. [19:]

Q? What did Joab tell his brother?

A. Joab told his brother that they should help each other if needed, and that they should be strong because Yahweh will do what is good for his people. [19:12-13]

Q? Why did the army of Ammon flee back to their city?

A. The army of Ammon saw that the Arameans fled before the army of Israel, and so they ran back to their city. [19:14-15]

Q? Why did David gather all Israel together and arrange for battle against the Arameans?

A. David heard that the Arameans sent for reinforcements. [19:16-17]

Q? Why were the people of Aram no longer willing to help the Ammonites?

A. They no longer helped the Ammonites when David killed 47 thousand of their men and the commander of the army. [19:18-19]

1 Chronicles 20

Q? What did Joab do when David remained in Jerusalem?

A. Joab led the army into battle, devastated the land of the Ammonites, and attacked and defeated Rabbah. [20:1]

Q? After taking the crown off of the king's head and placing it on his own, what did David force the people to do?

A. He forced them to do hard labor. [20:2-3]

Q? When the descendants of Rephaim mocked the army of Israel, what happened?

A. They were killed by David and his soldiers. [20:6-8]

1 Chronicles 21

Q? Why did David decide to count the people of Israel?

A. If an adversary came against Israel, and David wanted to know how many were in his army. [21:1-2]

Q? How did Joab respond to David's request to count the people?

A. He suggested that it would bring guilt on Israel. [21:3]

Q? What did Joab do when the king commanded him to go and count the people?

A. He went and reported back the total number of men that were able to fight. [21:4-5]

Q? How did God respond to David counting the soldiers of Israel?

A. God was offended and attacked Israel. [21:7]

Q? How did David feel when God attacked Israel?

A. He felt guilty for sending Joab to count the soldiers. [21:8]

Q? In response to David's confession, what did Yahweh offer him?

A. Yahweh offered him three choices. [21:9-10]

Q? What were the three choices Yahweh gave to David?

A. David could choose three years of famine, three months being sought after by his enemies, or three days of Yahweh's sword. [21:11-12]

Q? Which of the three punishments did David choose?

A. He chose the three days of Yahweh's sword. [21:13]

Q? What were the results of David's choice?

A. Yahweh sent the plague and many people died. Yahweh sent an angel to destroy Jerusalem, but Yahweh changed his mind. [21:14-15]

Q? When David saw the angel with the sword, how did he react?

A. He confessed and requested that God punish him and his family, but not punish God's people. [21:16-17]

Q? What was David commanded to do at the threshing floor of Ornan?

A. He was to build an altar for Yahweh. [21:18-19]

Q? How did Ornan react to seeing the angel?

A. He and his four sons hid themselves from the angel. [21:20]

Q? When Ornan met David, what did David ask of him?

A. He asked Ornan to sell him the threshing floor. [21:21-22]

Q? What did Ornan offer that David refused?

A. He offered to give him the threshing floor, the oxen, and wheat. [21:23-24]

Q? After David bought the threshing floor and built an altar, how did Yahweh answer his prayer?

A. Yahweh answered him with fire from heaven on the altar and told the angel to put his sword away. [21:25-27]

Q? Why did David not go to the shrine of Gibeon?

A. David was afraid of Yahweh's angel's sword. [21:29-30]

1 Chronicles 22

Q? After David declared where the house of Yahweh was to be built, what did he order his servants to do?

A. He ordered them to find the foreigners living in the land of Israel and give them jobs as stone-cutters to build God's house. [22:1-2]

Q? What preparations did David make for building the house of Yahweh before his death?

A. He provided large amounts of iron, bronze, and cedar. [22:3-5]

Q? Why did David tell Solomon that he was commanding him build the house of Yahweh?

A. Yahweh told David that he would not be the one to build the house because of all the blood that was shed. [22:6-8]

Q? How did Yahweh tell David he would do for his son?

A. He would give him rest from all his enemies on every side, and would establish Solomon's kingdom over Israel forever. [22:9-10]

Q? How did David tell Solomon to carefully observe?

A. He told Solomon to carefully obey the statutes and the decrees that Yahweh gave to Moses concerning Israel. [22:13]

Q? What did David tell Solomon to do with all of the materials that David had prepared for Yahweh's house?

A. He told Solomon to add more to it. [22:14]

Q? What did David tell Solomon to get up and to do?

A. He told Solomon to get up and build the sanctuary of Yahweh God. [22:19]

1 Chronicles 23

Q? What were some of the last things David did as king of Israel?

A. David made Solomon king in his place, and he had counted the Levites that were at least thirty years old. [23:1-3]

Q? What jobs did David give to the Levites?

A. He divided them into groups of overseers of the work of Yahweh's house, officers and judges, gatekeepers, and others to praise Yahweh with instruments. [23:4-6]

Q? What were Aaron and his descendants chosen to do permanently?

A. Aaron and his descendants were to consecrate the most holy items, offer incense to Yahweh, serve him, and give blessings in Yahweh's name forever. [23:13]

Q? Why will the Levites no longer have to carry the tabernacle?

A. Yahweh had given them a permanent resting place in Jerusalem. [23:25-26]

Q? When did the Levites take time to thank and praise Yahweh?

A. They praised him every morning and evening, when they burnt offerings, on the Sabbath, at festivals and feast days. [23:30-31]

1 Chronicles 24

Q? What method did they use to divide the priests for service in the sanctuary?

A. They divided them impartially by lot. [24:5]

Q? What was the procedure for Aaron's descendants to enter Yahweh's house?

A. They were instructed by Yahweh to come into his house in a special order. [24:19]

Q? In what tradition did Aaron's descendants participated?

A. They threw lots in the presence of the king. [24:31]

1 Chronicles 25

Q? What did the sons Asaph, Heman and Jeduthun do with harps, stringed instruments and cymbals?

A. These men prophesied with harps, stringed instruments, and cymbals. [25:1]

Q? For what did the sons of Jeduthun play the harp?

A. They played the harp for giving thanks and praising Yahweh. [25:3]

Q? What did God give Heman in order to honor him?

A. God gave him fourteen sons and three daughters. [25:3]

Q? Which of the musicians were included when they cast lots for their duties?

A. They all alike cast lots for their duties, the young as well as the old, the teacher as well as the student. [25:8]

1 Chronicles 26

Q? The sons and relatives of Obed Edom were capable of doing what?

A. They were men capable of doing their duties in the tabernacle service. [26:8]

Q? How did Shimri become leader even though he was not the firstborn?

A. Although he was not the firstborn, his father made him leader. [26:10]

Q? Where were the gatekeepers responsible to serve?

A. They had responsibilities to serve in Yahweh's house. [26:12]

Q? What was assigned to Obed Edom's sons in addition to the south gate?

A. His sons were assigned the storehouses. [26:15]

Q? Ahijah in charge of what in God's house?

A. He was in charge of the treasures of God's house, and of the treasures of the dedicated things. [26:20]

Q? For what purpose was some of the plunder won in battles dedicated by David and the commanders?

A. They dedicated some of the plunder won in battles for repairing Yahweh's house. [26:27]

Q? Of what were Kenaniah and his sons in charge as officers and judges?

A. They were in charge of the civil affairs of Israel as officers and judges. [26:29]

1 Chronicles 27

Q? When did each division of the army serve?

A. They served month by month throughout the year. [27:1]

Q? How many men were in each division of the army?

A. There were 24,000 men in each division. [27:1]

Q? Why did David not count those twenty years old or younger?

A. He did not count them because Yahweh had promised to increase Israel like the stars of heaven. [27:23]

Q? Over what was Jonathan son of Uzziah responsible?

A. He was over the storehouses in the fields, in the cities, and in the villages. [27:25]

Q? What kinds of trees were in the lowlands

A. Olive trees and sycamore trees were in the lowlands. [27:28]

Q? Why was Jonathan, David's uncle an advisor?

A. He was an advisor, since he was a wise man and a scribe. [27:32]

1 Chronicles 28

Q? Why did God say David could not build a temple for his name?

A. God said that he could not build it because he was a man of war and had shed blood. [28:3]

Q? What did Yahweh choose Solomon, David's son, to do over Israel?

A. He chose Solomon to sit on the throne of the kingdom of Yahweh, over Israel. [28:5]

Q? What did Yahweh say he would do for Solomon if he remained committed to obey his commandments?

A. Yahweh said that he would establish his kingdom forever. [28:7]

Q? If all the people kept the commandments of Yahweh, what would happen to the good land they possessed?

A. They would possess the good land and leave it as an inheritance to their children after them forever. [28:8]

Q? What does Yahweh understand of everyone's thoughts?

A. He understands every motivation of everyone's thoughts. [28:9]

Q? What will happen if Solomon abandons Yahweh?

A. Yahweh will reject him permanently. [28:9]

Q? What were the storerooms in God's house and the treasuries to store?

A. The storerooms and the treasuries were for the things consecrated for the temple. [28:12]

Q? Where were the priests and Levites assigned responsibilities to serve?

A. Their assigned responsibilities were for the service of the house of Yahweh. [28:13]

Q? How was David directed in all the things he put in writing?

A. Yahweh directed him and gave him to understand regarding the design. [28:19]

Q? What did David promise Solomon about Yahweh's presence until all the work was finished?

A. Yahweh would not leave him nor abandon him until all the work for the service of Yahweh's temple was finished. [28:20]

Q? What were the officials and all the people ready to do?

A. They were ready to follow Solomon's commands. [28:21]

1 Chronicles 29

Q? Why did David say the task of building the temple was great?

A. The task was great, for the temple is not for people, but for Yahweh God. [29:1]

Q? Why did David donate his personal treasure for the house of God?

A. He delighted in the house of his God. [29:3]

Q? What kind of gifts were made by the leaders of the ancestors' families?

A. They made freewill offerings. [29:6]

Q? Why did the people rejoice for the freewill offerings?

A. They rejoiced because they had contributed wholeheartedly to Yahweh. [29:9]

Q? What does David say belongs to Yahweh?

A. All that is in the heavens and on the earth is Yahweh's, as well as the kingdom. [29:11]

Q? How is Yahweh able to make people great and give them strength?

A. He possesses strength and might and is able to give strength to anyone. [29:12]

Q? What did David say about the things the people gave to Yahweh?

A. All things come from Yahweh, and they had simply given back to him what was his. [29:14]

Q? In what does God have pleasure when he examines the heart?

A. Yahweh examines the heart and has pleasure in uprightness. [29:17]

Q? What made David look with joy on God's people who were present?

A. He looked with joy as they willingly offered gifts to Yahweh. [29:17]

Q? How did all the assembly bless and worship Yahweh?

A. All the assembly blessed Yahweh, bowed their heads and worshiped Yahweh. [29:20]

Q? With whose authority did they anoint Solomon to be ruler?

A. They anointed him with Yahweh's authority. [29:22]

Q? How did Yahweh greatly honor Solomon before all Israel?

A. He bestowed on him greater power than he had ever given to any king before him in Israel. [29:25]

Q? What two things had David enjoyed during his long life?

A. He enjoyed wealth and honor. [29:82]

Q? What kingdoms were affected by David's accomplishments, in addition to Israel?

A. The prophets recorded his accomplishments and the events that affected all the kingdoms of the other lands. [29:30]

translationWords

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the **priest, priesthood** priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest, priesthood, Moses, Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-15]** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **[10-05]** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **[13-09]** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **[13-11]** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **[14-07]** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Abiathar

Definition:

Abiathar was a high priest for the nation of Israel during the time of King David.

- When King Saul killed the priests, Abiathar escaped and went to David in the wilderness.
- Abiathar and another high priest named Zadok served David faithfully throughout his reign.
- After David's death, Abiathar helped Adonijah try to become king instead of Solomon.
- Because of this, King Solomon removed Abiathar from the priesthood.

(See also: [Zadok](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [David](#), [Solomon](#), [Adonijah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Abijah

Facts:

Abijah was the name of a king of Judah who reigned from 915-913 BC. He was the son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament.

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Another Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was the name of one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also the name of a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Abner

Definition:

Abner was the cousin of King Saul in the Old Testament.

- Abner was the chief commander of Saul's army, and introduced young David to Saul after David killed Goliath the giant.
- After King Saul's death, Abner appointed Saul's son Ishbosheth as king in Israel, while David was appointed king in Judah.
- Later, Abner was treacherously killed by David's chief commander, Joab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father”
- “Abraham” means, “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- While living in the land of Canaan, when they were very old, Abraham and his wife Sarah had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [chaldea](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **[05-04]** Then God changed **Abram’s** name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **[05-06]** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham’s** faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[06-01]** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[06-04]** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **[21-02]** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Absalom

Facts:

Absalom was the third son of King David. He was known for his handsome appearance and fiery temperament.

- When Absalom's sister Tamar was raped by their half-brother, Amnon, Absalom made a plan to have Amnon killed.
- After the murder of Amnon, Absalom fled to the region of Geshur (where his mother Maacah was from) and stayed there three years. Then King David sent for him to come back to Jerusalem, but did not allow Absalom to come into his presence for two years.
- Absalom turned some of the people against King David and led a revolt against him.
- David's army fought against Absalom and killed him. David was very grieved when this happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Geshur](#), [Amnon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Eve](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-09]** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **[01-10]** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **[01-12]** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **[02-11]** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **[02-12]** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **[49-08]** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **[50-16]** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.
-

administration, administrator

Facts:

The terms “administration” and “administrator” refer to managing or governing of people of a country to help it function in an orderly way.

- Daniel and three other Jewish young men were appointed to be administrators, or government officials, over certain parts of Babylon.
- In the New Testament, the term “administration” is used to refer to one of the gifts of the Holy Spirit.
- A person who has the spiritual gift of administration is able to lead and govern people as well as supervise the maintenance of buildings and other property.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “administrator” could include, “governor” or “organizer” or “manager” or “ruler” or “government official.”
- The term “administration” could be translated as, “governing” or “management” or “leadership.” or “organization.”
- Expressions such as “in charge of” or “taking care of” or “keeping order” could possibly be part of the translation of these terms.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [gift](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [Hananiah](#), [Mishael](#), [Azariah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Adonijah

Definition:

Adonijah was the fourth son of King David.

- Adonijah tried to take over as king of Israel after the deaths of his brothers Absalom and Amnon.
- However God had promised the throne to David's son Solomon, so Adonijah's plot was overthrown and Solomon was given the throne.
- When Adonijah tried a second time to make himself king, Solomon put him to death.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [David](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- An adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- A nation can be called an “adversary” when it fights against another nation.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See: [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

age**Definition:**

The term “age” refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include, “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as, “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase, “at a very old age” could be translated as, “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase, “this present evil age” means, “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Ahaz

Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshipping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ahaziah

Facts:

Ahaziah was the name of two kings: one ruled over the kingdom of Israel, the other ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Judah's King Ahaziah was the son of King Jehoram. He reigned for one year (841 BC) and then was killed by Jehu. Ahaziah's young son Joash eventually took his place as king.
- Israel's King Ahaziah was the son of King Ahab. He reigned for two years (850-49 BC). He died from injuries suffered in a fall at his palace and his brother Joram became king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jehu](#), [Ahab](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Joash](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ahijah

Facts:

Ahijah is the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

- Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
- A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
- Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
- The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baasha](#), [Shiloh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living nearby the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **[13-09]** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **[16-06]** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

altar of incense

Facts:

The altar of incense was a piece of furniture on which a priest would burn incense as an offering to God. It was also called the golden altar.

- The altar of incense was made of wood, and its top and sides were covered with gold. It was about a half meter long, a half meter wide, and one meter tall.
- At first it was kept in the tabernacle. Then it was kept in the temple.
- Every morning and evening a priest would burn incense on it.
- This can also be translated as “altar for burning incense” or, “golden altar” or, “incense burner” or, “incense table,”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [incense](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Amalek, Amalekite

Facts:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negev desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

- The Amalekites were bitter enemies with Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
- Sometimes the term “Amalek” is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- in one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
- Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
- After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [David](#), [Esau](#), [Negev](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)
- [Next chunk: publish-current](#)

Bible References:

Waiting

marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions express how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have expressions to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be, “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include: “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Amaziah

Facts:

Amaziah became king over the kingdom of Judah when his father, King Joash, was murdered.

- King Amaziah reigned over Judah for twenty-nine years, from 796 BC to 767 BC.
- He was a good king, but he did not destroy the high places where idols were worshiped.
- Amaziah eventually put to death all the men who were responsible for the murder of his father.
- He defeated the rebellious Edomites and brought them back under the control of the Kingdom of Judah.
- He challenged King Jehoash of Israel to a battle, but lost. Part of the walls of Jerusalem were broken down and the silver and gold vessels of the temple were stolen.
- Years later King Amaziah turned away from Yahweh and certain men in Jerusalem plotted together and killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joash](#), [Edom](#), [Edomite](#), [Idumea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as, “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as, “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase, “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
-

(See: [fulfill](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ammon, Ammonites, Ammonitess

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as, “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Balaam](#), [curse](#), [cursed](#), [Jordan River](#), [Lot](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

Amnon

Facts:

Amnon was the oldest son of King David and his wife Ahinoam.

- Amnon raped his half-sister Tamar, who was also Absalom's sister.
- Because of this, Absalom plotted against Amnon and had him killed.

(See also: [David](#), [Absalom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one" which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall in height.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites" which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices that were included in that.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-07]** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **[15-08]** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **[15-09]** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **[15-10]** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God is by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include, “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include, “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh who looked like an angel.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-12] God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- [22-03] The **angel** responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
- [23-06] Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God...
- [25-08] Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- [38-12] Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- [38-15] “I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me.”

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, it often is sinful and selfish, but sometimes it is righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase, “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

anoint, anointed

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle, were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in, “appointed to eternal life.” This means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include, “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as, “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as, “be chosen.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Aram, Aramean, Aramaic

Definition:

“Aram” is the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as “Arameans” and spoke “Aramaic.” Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem’s sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name, “Syria.”
- The term “Paddan Aram” means “plain of Aram” and was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham’s relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in “Paddan Aram.”
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms “Aram” and “Paddan Aram” refer to the same region.
- The term “Aram Naharaim” may mean “Aram of Two Rivers.” This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of “Paddan Aram.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Mesopotamia](#), [Aram Naharaim](#), [Paddan Aram](#), [Rebekah](#), [Shem](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

archer

Definition:

The term “archer” refers to a man who is skilled at using a bow and arrow as a weapon.

- In the Bible, an archer is usually a soldier who uses a bow and arrow to fight in an army.
- Archers were an important part of the Assyrian military force.
- Some languages might have a term for this such as, “bow-man.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ark of the covenant, ark of the covenant decrees, ark of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](#), [covenant](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [holy place](#), [most holy place](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#), [witness](#), [eyewitness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

armor

Definition:

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means, “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [peace](#), [peaceful](#), [salvation](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Asa

Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913-873 BC.

- King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshiping Yahweh again.
- Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
- Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease which eventually killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Asaph

Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [harp](#), [lute](#), [lyre](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [psalm](#), [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Asher

Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel which was also called “Asher.”

- Asher’s mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means “happy” or, “blessed.”
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [israel](#), [twelvetribeisrael](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

assembly, assemble

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” where the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers is sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

(See also: [council](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

assign, assigned

Facts:

The term “assign” or “assigned” refers to appointing someone to do a specific task.

- The prophet Samuel foretold that King Saul would “assign” the best young men of Israel to serve in the military.
- Moses “assigned” each of the twelve tribes of Israel a portion of the land of Canaan for them to live on.
- Under the Old Testament law, certain tribes of Israel were assigned to serve as priests, artists, singers and builders.
- Depending on the context, “assign” could be translated as “give” or “appoint” or “choose for the task of.”
- The term “assigned” could be translated as “appointed” or “given the task.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [Samuel](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-02]** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-03]** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **[20-04]** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

atonement, atone**Definition:**

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserved because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include, “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: [atonement lid](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [propitiation](#), [reconcile](#), [reconciliation](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

atonement lid

Definition:

The “atonement lid” was a slab of gold that was used to cover the top of the ark of the covenant. In many English translations, it is also referred to as an “atonement cover.”

- The atonement lid was about 115 centimeters in length and 70 centimeters in width.
- Above the atonement lid were two gold cherubim with their wings touching.
- Yahweh said that he would meet with the Israelites above the atonement lid, under the outstretched wings of the cherubim. Only the high priest was permitted to do this, as the representative of the people.
- Sometimes this atonement lid has been referred to as a “mercy seat” because it communicates God’s mercy in coming down to redeem sinful human beings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “ark covering where God promises to redeem” or “place where God atones” or “lid of ark where God forgives and restores.”
- Can also mean “place of propitiation.”
- Compare this term with how you translated “atonement,” “propitiation,” and “redemption.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [cherubim](#), [cherub](#), [propitiation](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

awe, awesome

Definition:

The term “awe” refers to the sense of amazement and deep respect that comes from seeing something great, powerful, and magnificent.

- The term “awesome” describes someone or something that inspires a feeling of awe.
- The visions of the glory of God seen by the prophet Ezekiel were “awesome” or “awe-inspiring.”
- Typical human responses showing awe of God’s presence include: fear, bowing or kneeling down, covering the face, and trembling.

(See also: [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Azariah

Facts:

Azariah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Azariah is best known by his Babylonian name, Abednego. He was one of many Israelites from Judah who were captured by Nebuchadnezzar's army and taken to live in Babylon. Azariah and his fellow Israelites Hananiah and Mishael refused to worship the Babylonian king, so he had them thrown into a blazing furnace as punishment. But God protected them and they were not harmed at all.
- Uzziah king of Judah was also known as "Azariah."
- Another Azariah was an Old Testament high priest.
- In the time of the prophet Jeremiah, a man named Azariah wrongly urged the Israelites to disobey God by leaving their homeland.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [Hananiah](#), [Mishael](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Uzziah](#), [Azariah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Babylon, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [Babel](#), [Chaldea](#), [Chaldean](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **[20-07]** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **[20-11]** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), [threshing](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [oak](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Bathsheba

Facts:

Bathsheba was the wife of Uriah, a soldier in King David's army. After Uriah's death, she became the wife of David, and the mother of Solomon.

- David committed adultery with Bathsheba while she was married to Uriah.
- When Bathsheba became pregnant with David's child, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle.
- David then married Bathsheba and she gave birth to their child.
- God punished David for his sin by causing the child to die several days after he was born.
- Later, Bathsheba gave birth to another son, Solomon, who grew up to become king after David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Solomon](#). [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-10]** One day, when all of David's soldiers were away from home fighting battles, he got up from an afternoon nap and saw a beautiful woman bathing. Her name was **Bathsheba**.
- **[17-11]** A short time later **Bathsheba** sent a message to David saying that she was pregnant.
- **[17-12]** **Bathsheba's** husband, a man named Uriah, was one of David's best soldiers.
- **[17-13]** After Uriah was killed, David married **Bathsheba**.
- **[17-14]** Later, David and **Bathsheba** had another son, and they named him Solomon.

Beersheba

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Hagar](#), [Ishmael](#), [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Benaiah

Definition:

Benaiah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Benaiah son of Jehoiada was one of David's mighty men. He was a skilled warrior and was put in charge of David's bodyguards.
- When Solomon was being made king, Benaiah helped him overthrow his enemies. He eventually became commander of the Israelite army.
- Other men in the Old Testament named Benaiah include three Levites: a priest, a musician, and a descendant of Asaph.

(See also: [Asaph](#), [Jehoiada](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Benjamin

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Rachel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called “Luz.”

- After receiving God’s promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as “Bethel” which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name “Bethel” until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as “Luz (later called Bethel)” in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [altar Jacob](#), [Israel Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: [Caleb](#), [David](#), [Micah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-02] David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- [21-09] The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- [23-04] Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- [23-06] ”The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem!**”

Beth Shemesh

Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

- The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
- Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
- When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Joshua](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [Philistines](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Bethuel

Facts:

Bethuel was the son of Abraham's brother Nahor.

- Bethuel was the father of Rebekah and Laban.
- There was also a town called Bethuel, which may have been located in southern Judah, not far from the town of Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Beersheba](#), [Laban](#), [Nahor](#), [Rebekah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

betray, betrayer

Definition:

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [religious leaders](#), [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-11]** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **[38-02]** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **[38-03]** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **[38-06]** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” ... Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **[38-13]** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **[38-14]** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **[39-08]** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

birthright

Definition:

The term “birthright” in the Bible refers to the honor, family name, and physical wealth that was normally given to the firstborn son in a family.

- The birthright of the firstborn son included a double portion of the father’s inheritance.
- A king’s firstborn son was normally given the birthright to rule after his father died.
- Esau sold his birthright to his younger brother Jacob. Because of this, Jacob inherited the blessing of the firstborn instead of Esau.
- The birthright also included the honor of having the family descendants traced through the firstborn son’s line.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible ways to translate “birthright” could include, “rights and wealth of the firstborn son” or “family honor” or “privilege and inheritance of the firstborn.”

(See also: [firstborn](#), [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ble**ss**, ble**ss**ed, ble**ss**ing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people ‘bless’ God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

from comment below: It is important to not define, focus on, or be confined by applications of the root word of “bless” that suggest primarily the flourishing or abundance of material things or physical wellness. Consider the extensive teachings in Scripture on God’s love, mercy and grace that is not only ancient, but current. Consider care, protection, and presence of God’s Spirit. And for us to bless God, we can offer thankfulness, appreciation, and understanding as we learn of and follow (obey) him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as, “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as, “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like, “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as, “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as, “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-07] God saw that it was good and he **ble^sed** them.
- [01-15] God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **ble^sed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- [01-16] So God rested from all he had been doing. He **ble^sed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- [04-04]”I will make your name great. I will **ble^ss** those who **ble^ss** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **ble^sed** because of you.”
- [04-07] Melchizedek **ble^sed** Abram and said, ”May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **ble^ss** Abram.”
- [07-03] Isaac wanted to give his **ble^ssing** to Esau.
- [08-05] Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **ble^sed** him.

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-03]** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **[10-03]** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **[11-05]** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **[13-09]** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

bloodshed

Definition:

The term “bloodshed” refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

- This term literally means “shedding of blood,” which refers to when blood comes out of a person’s body from an open wound.
- The term “bloodshed” is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
- It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.

Translation Suggestions:

- “the bloodshed” could be translated as, “the killing of people” or “the many people who were killed.”
- “through bloodshed” could also be translated as, “by killing people.”
- “innocent bloodshed” could be translated as “killing innocent people.”
- “bloodshed follows bloodshed” could be translated as, “they keep killing people” or “the killing of people goes on and on” or “they have killed many people and continue to do that” or “people keep killing other people.”
- Another figurative use, “bloodshed will pursue you” could be translated as, “your people will continue to experience bloodshed” or “your people will keep being killed” or “your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying.”

(See also: [blood slaughter](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

boast, boastful

Definition:

The term “boast” means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

- Someone who is “boastful” talks about himself in a proud way.
- God rebuked the Israelites for “boasting in” their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
- The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
- God urged the Israelites to instead “boast” or be proud about the fact that they know him.
- The apostle, Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “boast” could include “brag” or “talk proudly” or “be proud.”
- The term “boastful” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “full of prideful talk” or “prideful” or “talking proudly about oneself.”
- In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as “take pride in” or “exalt in” or “be very glad about” or “give thanks to God about.”
- Some languages have two words for “pride”: one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in ones’ work, family, or country.

Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Boaz

Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who was the husband of Ruth, the great grandfather of King David, and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

- Boaz lived during the time when there were judges in Israel.
- He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
- Boaz “redeemed” Naomi’s widowed daughter-in-law, Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.
- He is seen as a picture of how Jesus rescued and redeemed us from sin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Moab](#), [Moabite](#), [Moabites](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#), [Ruth](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

body

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say, “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow, bow down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [humility](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bow and arrow**Definition:**

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

Waiting

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means, “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term, “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bronze**Definition:**

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include, “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as, “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be, “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [the twelve](#), [the eleven](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [atone](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term “burial” is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means, “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Caleb

Facts:

Caleb was one of the twelve Israelite spies whom Moses sent to explore the land of Canaan.

- He and Joshua told the people to trust God to help them defeat the Canaanites.
- Joshua and Caleb were the only men of their generation who were allowed to enter the Promised Land of Canaan.
- Caleb requested that the land of Hebron be given to him and his family. He knew that God would help him defeat the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See: [Hebron](#), [Joshua](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-04]** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **[14-06]** Immediately **Caleb** and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them! God will fight for us!”
- **[14-08]** ”Except for Joshua and **Caleb**, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land.”

so that they could live at peace in that land.

call, calling, called, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See: [pray, prayer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food, but not the Israelites because God had said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [unclean](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ham](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-05]** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **[04-09]** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **[05-03]** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **[07-08]** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

captive, captivity

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Carmel, Mount Carmel

Facts:

“Mount Carmel” refers to a mountain range that was located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea just north of the Plain of Sharon. Its highest peak is 546 meters high.

- There was also a town called “Carmel” located in Judah, south of the Salt Sea.
- The wealthy landowner Nabal and his wife Abigail lived near the town of Carmel where David and his men helped guard Nabal’s sheep shearers.
- On Mount Carmel, Elijah challenged the prophets of Baal to a contest in order to prove that Yahweh is the only true God.
- To make it clear that this wasn’t just a single mountain, “Mount Carmel” could be translated as, “mountain on the Carmel mountain range” or “Carmel mountain range.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cedar

Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: [fir](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chariot

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-10]** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.
- Rome, Romaning in his **chariot**.

cherubim, cherub

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#), other)

Bible References:

Waiting

chief

Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), spirit, spiritual, believer, beloved other)

Bible References:

Waiting

chronicles

Definition:

The term “chronicle” refers to a written record of events over a period of time.

- Two Old Testament books are called “First Book of the Chronicles” and “Second Book of the Chronicles.”
- The books called “Chronicles” record part of the history of the Israelite people, beginning with a list of people in every generation since Adam.
- The “First Book of the Chronicles” records the end of King Saul’s life and the events of King David’s reign.
- The “Second Book of the Chronicles” records the reigns of King Solomon and several other kings, including the building of the temple and the separation of the northern kingdom of Israel from the southern kingdom of Judah.
- The end of 2 Chronicles describes the beginning of the Babylonian exile.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [David](#), [exile](#), [the Exile](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

city of David

Facts:

The term “city of David” is another name for both Jerusalem and Bethlehem.

- Jerusalem is where David lived while he ruled Israel.
- Bethlehem is where David was born.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

clan

Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- Clan could be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: [family](#), [Jethro](#), [Reuel](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

clothe, clothed**Definition:**

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

Waiting

comfort, comforter

Definition:

The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: [encourage](#), [encouragement](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

command, to command, commandment

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [statutes](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

commander, command

Definition:

the term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- To “command” an army means to lead and be in charge of the army.
- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term “to command” an army could be translated as “to lead” or “to be in charge of.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [centurion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

commit, committed, commitment

Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [promise](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

concubine**Definition:**

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.often
- The New Testament teaches that the practice of having a concubine is against God's will.

Bible References:

Waiting

confirm, confirmation

Definition:

The terms “confirm” and “confirmation” refer to stating or assuring that something is true or sure or trustworthy.

- In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to say that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

consecrate

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or “to make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

counsel, counselor, advice, advisor

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, “to counsel” could be translated as “to advise” or “to make suggestions” or “to exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: [exhort](#), [exhortation](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

courage, courageous**Facts:**

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means, “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as, “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as, “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

(See also: [confidence](#), [confident](#), [exhort](#), [exhortation](#), [fear](#), [afraid](#), [fear of Yahweh](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

courtyard, court

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example when God established his covenant with mankind, promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: , [New Covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-09]** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **[05-04]** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **[06-04]** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.

- [07-10] The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- [13-02] God said to Moses and the people of Israel, ”If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- [13-04] Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- [15-13] Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable to do and say what has been promised and what will benefit someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [grace](#), [gracious](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people of God](#), [my people](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cow, calf, bull, cattle

Definition:

The term , “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow”, the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [heifer](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

crown, to crown

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Cush

Facts:

Cush was the oldest son of Noah's son Ham. He was also the ancestor of Nimrod. Two of his brothers were named Egypt and Canaan.

- In Old Testament times, "Cush" was the name of a large region of land south of Israel. It is probable that the land was named after Ham's son Cush.
- The ancient region of Cush covered an area of land that may have at different times included parts of the modern-day countries of Sudan, Egypt, Ethiopia, and possibly, Saudi Arabia.
- Another man named Cush is mentioned in the Psalms. He was a Benjamite.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Ethiopian](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

cut off**Definition:**

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

Waiting

Damascus

Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future. more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [believer](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Dan

Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel. The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term, “Danites” refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jerusalem](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well-known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-02]** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[17-03]** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **[17-04]** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **[17-05]** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **[17-06]** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[17-09]** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression that refers to death in the target language.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression, “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as, “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression, “put to death” could also be translated as, “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-11]** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **[02-11]** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **[07-10]** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **[37-05]** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **[40-08]** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **[43-07]** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **[48-02]** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **[50-17]** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.
-

declare, declaration

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by, “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as, “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase, “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as, “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

decree

Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as, "to order" or "to command" or "to formally require" or "to publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [declare](#), [declaration](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [proclaim](#), [proclamation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

defile, be defiled

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [unclean](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

descendant, descended from

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in, “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as, “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02-09] ”The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- [04-09] ”I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- [05-10] ”Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- [17-07] ”Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- [18-13] The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- [21-04] God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- [48-13] God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

Waiting

divine

Definition:

The term “divine” refers to anything pertaining to God.

- Some ways this term is used include, “divine authority,” “divine judgment,” “divine nature,” “divine power,” and “divine glory.”
- In one passage in the Bible, the term “divine” is used to describe something about a false deity.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “divine” could include, “God’s” or “from God” or “pertaining to God” or “characterized by God.”
- For example, “divine authority” could be translated as “God’s authority” or “authority that comes from God.”
- The phrase “divine glory” could be translated as “God’s glory” or “the glory that God has” or “glory that comes from God.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: [authority](#), [en:obe:kt:falsegod], [glory](#), [glorious](#), [God](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

divorce**Definition:**

A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term “to divorce” means to formally and legally separate from one’s spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the word for “to divorce” is “to send away” or “to formally separate from.” Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A “certificate of divorce” could be translated as, a “paper stating that the marriage has ended.”

Bible References:

Waiting

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be, "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as, "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [grain offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- The expressions, “let the earth be glad” and “He will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as, “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as, “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include, “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [birthright](#), [Esau](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Herod the Great](#), [Joseph \(NT\)](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [patriarchs](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-04]** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **[08-08]** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **[08-11]** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **[08-14]** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **[09-01]** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Elam

Facts:

Elam was a son of Shem and a grandson of Noah.

- The descendants of Elam were called “Elamites” and they lived in a region was also called “Elam.”
- The region of Elam was located to the southeast of the Tigris River, in what is now western Iran.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Noah](#), [Shem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

elder

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

Waiting

Eleazar

Facts:

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

- Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.
- Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."
- Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aaron](#), [high priest](#), [David](#), [mighty](#), [might](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

chosen one, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, the elect

Definition:

The term, “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” These could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase, “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as, “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as, “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience,” “bearing up under a trial,” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include, “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, “to endure” could be translated as, “to experience” or “to go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase, “will not endure” could be translated as, “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include, “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: [persevere](#), [perseverance](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Enoch

Facts:

Enoch is the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven without dying.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cain](#), [Noah](#), [Seth](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ephod

Definition:

An ephod was an apron-like garment worn by the Israelite priests. It had two parts, front and back, that were joined together at the shoulders and tied around the waist with a cloth belt.

- One kind of ephod was made of plain linen and was worn by the ordinary priests.
- The ephod worn by the high priest was specially embroidered with gold, blue, purple, and red yarn.
- The breastpiece of the high priest was attached to the front of the ephod. Behind the breastpiece were stored the Urim and Thummim, which were stones used for asking God what his will was in certain matters.
- The judge Gideon foolishly made an ephod out of gold and it became something that the Israelites worshiped as an idol.

(See also: [breastplate](#), [breastpiece](#), [Gideon](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ephraim

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Esau

Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Edom](#), [Edomite](#), [Idumea](#), [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Rebekah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-07]** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**.
- **[07-02]** So **Esau** gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son.
- **[07-04]** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him.
- **[07-05]** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing.
- **[07-10]** But **Esau** had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

everlasting, eternal, eternity

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include, “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include, “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **[28-01]** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”
- **[28-10]** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Euphrates River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering or being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral”
- Other ways to translate these could include, “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [righteous](#), demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **[03-01]** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **[04-02]** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **[08-12]** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **[17-01]** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[18-11]** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.

- [29-08] The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- [45-02] They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- [50-17] He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

exalt, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include, “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts, it could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), [glorify](#), [boast](#), [boastful](#), [proud](#), [pride](#), [prideful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

exile, the Exile

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian Exile” (or “the Exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to exile” could also be translated as, “to send away” or “to force out” or “to banish.”
- The term “the Exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include, “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

face

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means, “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide: to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine that affected many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression, “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as, “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression, “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression, “hide his face from” could be translated as, “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as, “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression, “say it to their face” could be translated as, “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression, “on the face of the land” could also be translated as, “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

Waiting

false god, foreign god, god, goddess

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Asherah poles](#), [Ashtoreth](#), [Baal](#), [Molech](#), [Moloch](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.
- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**.”
- **[14-02]** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **[18-13]** But most of Judah’s kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

family

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term “family” is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God’s family because they believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies destroying crops.
- In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as, “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

Waiting

fast

Definition:

The term “to fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb “to fast” can also be translated as “to refrain from eating” or “to not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-01]** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **[34-08]**”For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **[46-10]** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

ancestor, father, forefather

Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated as, “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4, “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as, “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [son](#), [son of](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fear, afraid, fear of Yahweh

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” and related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to deeply respecting God and showing that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence, “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as, “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as, “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” would be used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), [wonder](#), [amazed](#), [astonished](#), [awe](#), [awesome](#), [Lord](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

feast

Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as, “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fellowship offering

Facts:

In the Old Testament, the “fellowship offering” was a kind of sacrifice that was offered for different reasons, such as to give thanks to God or to fulfill a vow.

- This offering required the sacrifice of an animal, which could be male or female. This was different from the burnt offering which required a male animal.
- After giving a portion of the sacrifice to God, the person who brought the fellowship offering shared the meat with the priests and other Israelites.
- There was a meal associated with this offering which included unleavened bread.
- This is sometimes called the “peace offering.”

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [fulfill](#), [grain offering](#), [guilt offering](#), [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [unleavened bread](#), [Festival of Unleavened Bread](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

festival

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
 - Passover
 - Festival of Unleavened Bread
 - Firstfruits
 - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
 - Festival of Trumpets
 - Day of Atonement
 - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fig**Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow to be as tall as 6 meters high and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

Waiting

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born. Usually the firstborn

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “firstborn” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heritage](#), [heir](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [son](#), [son of](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression, “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression, “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression, “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression, “become one flesh” could be translated as, “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [Euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that the man and woman literally become one person.

Bible References:

Waiting

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [kid](#), [ox](#), [oxen](#), [pig](#), [swine](#), [pork](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

fool, foolish, folly**Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as, “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include, “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

footstool

Definition:

The term “footstool” refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a “footstool” was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says “I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet” he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God’s will.
- To “worship at God’s footstool” means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God’s “footstool.” This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

Bible References:

Waiting

foreigner, foreign, alien

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from your own.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not only refer to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

Waiting

forever**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean, “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referring to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase, “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase, “forever and ever” could also be translated as, “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as, “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of mine will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [learned men](#), [astrologers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

free, freedom, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression, “to set someone free” or “to free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression “to set free” could be translated as “to cause to be free” or “to rescue from slavery” or “to release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

freewill offering

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [Ezra](#), [feast](#), [grain offering](#), [guilt offering](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [sin offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

fulfill

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as, “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill” as in “fulfill your ministry” could include, “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [minister](#), [ministry](#), [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[24-04]** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **[40-03]** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **[42-07]** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **[43-05]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **[43-07]** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **[44-05]** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Gad

Facts:

Gad is the name of one of the sons of Jacob, that is, Israel.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The cities, Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written, "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [census](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Galilee, Galilean

Facts:

Galilee the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A “Galilean” was a person who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the “Sea of Galilee.”
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: [Nazareth](#), [Nazarene](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Genesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[21-10]** The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of **Galilee** where he lived.
- **[39-06]** Finally, the people said, “We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from **Galilee**.”
- **[41-06]** Then the angel told the women, “Go and tell the disciples, ‘Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to **Galilee** ahead of you.’”

gate, gate bar**Definition:**

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be, “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase, “bars of the gate” could be translated as, “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Gath

Facts:

Gath was one of the five major cities of the Philistines. It was located north of Ekron and east of Ashdod and Ashkelon.

- The Philistine warrior Goliath was from the city of Gath.
- During the time of Samuel, the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant from Israel and took it to their pagan temple at Ashdod. It was then moved to Gath and later to Ekron. But God punished the people of those cities with disease, so they sent it back to Israel again.
- When David was escaping from King Saul, he fled to Gath and lived there for awhile with his two wives and six hundred men who were his loyal followers.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Ashkelon](#), [Ekron](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

generation

UNDER REVIEW

Definition:

The term “generation” refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as, “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as, “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as, “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Geshur

Definition:

During the time of King David, Geshur was a small kingdom located on the east side of the Sea of Galilee, between the countries of Israel and Aram.

- King David married Maacah, the daughter of Geshur's king and she bore him a son, Absalom.
- After murdering his half-brother Amnon, Absalom fled northeast from Jerusalem to Geshur, a distance of about 88 miles. He stayed there three years.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Amnon](#), [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Gibeon, Gibeonite

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: [Gilgal](#), [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-06]** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.
- **[15-07]** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.
- **[15-08]** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

Gilead

Definition:

Gilead is the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river, where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region is also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Jephthah](#), [Manasseh](#), [Reuben](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Girgashites

Facts:

The Girgashites were a people group living near the Sea of Galilee in the land of Canaan.

- They were descendants of Ham's son Canaan and so were one of the many people groups who were also known as "Canaanites."
- God promised the Israelites that he would help them defeat the Girgashites and other Canaanite people groups.
- Like all the Canaanite peoples, the Girgashites worshiped false gods and did immoral things as part of that worship.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#) , [Ham](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include, “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression, “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as, “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [25-06] Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- [37-01] When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- [37-08] Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh” which means, “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include, “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be, “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use two different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase, “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as, “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), [creation](#), [Creator](#), [false god](#), [god](#), [God the Father](#), [Heavenly Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [idol](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Yahweh](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-01]**God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- [01-15]**God** made man and woman in his own image.
- [05-03]"I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- [09-14]**God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- [10-02] Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- [16-01] The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- [22-07] You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- [24-09] There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [25-07]"Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- [28-01]"There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- [49-09] But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- [50-16] But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms, “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. This term also occurs as “Father,” especially when Jesus is referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized, to show that this refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [father](#), [forefather](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-09] There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “**Father**, thank you for hearing me.”
- [40-07] Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- [42-10] “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- [43-08] “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**.”

- [50-10]”Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father.**”

gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow-colored high-quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included ear rings and other jewelry, idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Goliath

Facts:

Goliath was a very tall and very large soldier in the army of the Philistines who was killed by David.

- Goliath was between two and three meters tall. He is often referred to as a giant because of his great size.
- Although Goliath had better weapons and was much bigger than David, God gave David the strength and ability to defeat Goliath.
- The Israelites were declared victorious over the Philistines as a result of David's victory over Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as, “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include, “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [profit](#), [profitable](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-04] God saw that what he had created was **good**.

- [01-11] God planted...the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- [01-12] Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- [02-04]”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- [08-12]”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- [14-15] Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- [18-13] Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- [28-01]”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ‘**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [guilt offering](#) , [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [sin offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

ULB exs: take away the guilt of your sin, take away your guilt, guilt offering, punish your guilt, no guilt for murder will attach to him, carry his own guilt, wash away his guilt, be in great guilt, our guilt grows to the heavens

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#)[punish](#), [punishment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#).)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[39-02]** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **[39-11]** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty!**”
- **[40-04]** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **[49-10]** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Hamath, Lebo Hamath, Hamathites

Facts:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son, Canaan.

- The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
- Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
- King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, which caused them to be on good terms.
- Hamath was one of Solomon's storehouse cities where provisions were kept.
- The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
- The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "people from Hamath."

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Syria](#), [Zedekiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ham

Facts:

Ham was the second of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Ham and his brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- After the flood, there was an occasion where Ham was very dishonoring to his father, Noah. As a result, Noah cursed Ham's son Canaan and all his descendants, who eventually became known as the Canaanites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

hand, right hand, to hand over

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says, “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: **Metonymy**)
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
 - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
 - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
 - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
 - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
 - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression, “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as, “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [power](#), [powers](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

harp

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, usually having a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), [fir](#), [psalm](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

head

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in, “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as, “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression, “no razor will ever touch his head” means “ he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person as in, “this gray head” referring to an elderly person or “the head of Joseph” referring to Joseph. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as, “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See: [grain](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

- [Prev chunk: publish-current](#)

- This chunk : review-publish | publish-current
- Next chunk: publish-current

heart

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression, “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. They have been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this nonfiguratively with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as, “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include, “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See: [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-02] They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- [14-11] He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- [23-07] Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- [29-09] Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- [37-09] Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- [42-11] Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Hebron

Facts:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2,000 B.C. during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around 70 A.D. by the Romans.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Absalom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Hezekiah

Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah got very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God did a miracle and caused time to move backwards.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Judah](#), [Sennacherib](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

high places

Definition:

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- When a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel continuing to worship idols.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars are located.

(See also: [altar](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Esau](#), [foreigner](#), [foreign](#), [alien](#), [Ham](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [Solomon](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Hivite

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- Like all these groups, the Hivites were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Hamor](#), [Noah](#), [Shechem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- Since God is holy, people cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because they are mere human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include, “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [consecratesanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-16] He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- [09-12]”You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- [13-02]”If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- [13-05]”Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- [22-05]”So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- [50-02] As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

holy place, most holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to the both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It can also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as, “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term, “most holy place” could be translated as, “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include, “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [bread](#), [consecrate](#), [courtyard](#), [court](#), [curtain](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as, “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include, “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [heavenly Father](#), [Father](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[01-01]** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **[24-08]** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **[26-01]** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **[26-03]** Jesus read, “God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- **[42-10]** “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **[43-03]** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **[43-08]** “And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing.”

- **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit.**"
- **[45-01]** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

honor, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God also instructs Christians to honor others, but not to try to get honor for themselves.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents, which includes respect and obedience.
- the terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Honor for God includes thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include, “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [dishonorable](#), [glory](#), [glorious](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#) other)

Bible References:

Waiting

hope

Definition:

The term “hope” refers to expecting and strongly desiring something to happen. It can also mean to not be certain that it will happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust” as in, “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULB translates the term “hope” as “confidence,” especially in the New Testament in contexts that refer to the assurance of receiving what God has promised to people who believe in Jesus as their Savior.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term “to hope” could also be translated as “to wish” or “to desire” or “to expect.”
- The expression, “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as, “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression, “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as, “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as, “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [good](#), [goodness](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [trust](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

~review~DISCUSSION~~

horn, horns

Facts:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term “horn” is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

(See also: , [authority](#), [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [deer](#), [doe](#), [buck](#), [roebuck](#), [fawn](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [royal](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

horsemen

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who are actually riding on the horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not use a lot of horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as, “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Hoshea

Facts:

Hoshea was the name of a king of Israel and several other men in the Old Testament.

- Hoshea son of Alah was a king of Israel for nine years during part of the reigns of Ahaz and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.
- Joshua son of Nun was formerly named Hoshea. Moses changed Hoshea's name to Joshua before sending him and eleven other men to spy out the land of the Canaanites.
- After Moses died, Joshua led the people of Israel to take possession of the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Hoshea was a son of Azariah and was one of the leaders of the Ephraimites.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Ephraim](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Joshua](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house

Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as, “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as, “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include, “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [house of God](#), [Yahweh’s house](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

household

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and any servants they have.

- If someone manages a household, this would involve directing the servants as well as taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases "house of God" (God's house) and "house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes "God's house" is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as, "a house for worshiping God" or "a place for worshiping God."
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as, "the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or "where God is present" or "where God meets with his people.")
- The word "house" may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God "dwells" there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.”
- **[13-12]** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it!
- **[14-03]** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.”
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that are burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made from mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include, “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [frankincense](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The terms “inherit” and “inheritance” refer to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “heir” is the person who receives the inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
 - The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
 - To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
 - This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include, “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include, “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as, “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as, “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: [heir](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-06]** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **[27-01]** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **[35-03]** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [forever](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.”
- **[05-06]** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **[05-09]** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**.
- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**.
- **[06-05]** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **[07-10]** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Ishmael

Facts:

Ishmael was the son of Abraham and the Egyptian slave Hagar. There are also several other men in the Old Testament named Ishmael.

- The name “Ishmael” means, “God hears.”
- God promised to bless Abraham’s son Ishmael, but he was not the son God had promised to establish his covenant with.
- God protected Hagar and Ishmael when they were sent into the desert.
- While Ishmael was living in the desert of Paran, he married an Egyptian woman.
- Ishmael son of Nethaniah was an army officer from Judah who led a group of men to kill a governor who had been appointed by the Babylonian king, Nebuchadnezzar.
- There are also four other men named Ishmael in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [covenant](#), [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Hagar](#), [Isaac](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Paran](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[05-02]** So Abram married Hagar. Hagar had a baby boy, and Abram named him **Ishmael**.
- **[05-04]**”I will make **Ishmael** a great nation, too, but my covenant will be with Isaac.”

Israel, Israelites, nation of Israel

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means, “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel,” the “nation of Israel,” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel was made up of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as, “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-15]** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **[09-03]** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **[09-05]** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **[10-01]** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- **[14-12]** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **[15-09]** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **[15-12]** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **[16-16]** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols.
- **[43-06]** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Issachar's land was bordered by Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
- It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Manasseh](#), [Naphtali](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Zebulun](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning, "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means, "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him, so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [deceive](#), [deceit](#), [deception](#), [deceptive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[07-01]** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **[07-07]** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **[07-08]** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **[07-10]** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **[08-01]** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Japheth

Facts:

Japheth was one of Noah's three sons.

- During the worldwide flood that covered the whole earth, Japheth and his two brothers were with Noah in the ark, along with their wives.
- Noah's sons are usually listed in the order, "Shem, Ham, and Japheth." This indicates that Japheth was the youngest brother.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark](#), [flood](#), [Ham](#), [Noah](#), [Shem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jebusites, Jebus

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, whose name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Ham](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Melchizedek](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jehoiakim

Facts:

Jehoiakim was an evil king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah, beginning around 608 B.C. He was King Josiah's son. His name was originally Eliakim.

- The Egyptian pharaoh Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim and made him king of Judah.
- Necho forced Jehoiakim to pay high taxes to Egypt.
- When Judah was later invaded by King Nebuchadnezzar, Jehoiakim was among those who were captured and taken to Babylon.
- Jehoiakim was an evil king who led Judah away from Yahweh. Jeremiah the prophet prophesied against him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Eliakim](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jehoram, Joram

Facts:

Jehoram was the name of two different kings in the Old Testament. Both these kings were also known as “Joram.”

- One King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Judah for eight years. He was the son of King Jehoshaphat. This is the king that is most commonly known as Jehoram.
- The other King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Israel for twelve years. He was the son of King Ahab.
- King Jehoram of Judah reigned during the time that the prophets Jeremiah, Daniel, Obadiah, and Ezekiel were prophesying in the kingdom of Judah.
- Jehoram also reigned during some of the time that his father King Jehoshaphat was reigning over Judah.
- Some translations may choose to consistently use the name “Jehoram” when this king of Israel is mentioned and the name “Joram” for the king of Judah.
- Another way to clearly identify each one would be to include the name of his father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Obadiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jehoshaphat

Facts:

Jehoshaphat is the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The most well-known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel, and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a “recorder” for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jehu

Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- Jehu killed two evil kings: King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab, and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Baal](#), [Elisha](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Jezebel](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- Like all the Canaanites, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-01]** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **[15-05]** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Jeroboam

Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of this, God had mercy on Israel and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **[18-09]** **Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of present-day Israel.

- The name, “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem”, “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it was located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#), [Mount Zion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-05] David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- [18-02] In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- [20-12] So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- [38-01] About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- [38-02] After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- [42-08] ”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”

- **[42-11]** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David, and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an “Ephrathite,” which means he was from the town of Ephrathah (Bethlehem).
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a “shoot” or “branch” that would come from the “root of Jesse” and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Boaz](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [king](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Ruth](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jethro, Reuel

Facts:

The names “Jethro” and “Reuel” both refer to the father of Moses’ wife, Zipporah. There were also two other men named “Reuel” in the Old Testament.

- When Moses was a shepherd in the land of Midian, he married the daughter of a Midianite man named Reuel.
- Later on Reuel is referred to as “Jethro, the priest of Midian.” It could be that “Reuel” was his clan name.
- When God spoke to Moses from a flaming bush, Moses was tending Jethro’s sheep,
- Some time later, after God had rescued the Israelites from Egypt, Jethro came out to the Israelites in the wilderness and gave Moses good advice about judging the affairs of the people.
- He believed in God when he heard about all the miracles God had done for the Israelites in Egypt.
- One of Esau’s sons was named Reuel.
- Another man named Reuel is mentioned in the genealogy of the Israelites who returned to resettle in Judah after their captivity in Babylon had ended.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [clan](#), [desert](#), [wilderness](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Esau](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [Moses](#), [desert](#), [wilderness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson, Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Jewish authorities](#), [religious leaders](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-11]** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **[20-12]** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **[37-10]** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **[37-11]** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **[40-02]** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **[46-06]** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Joab

Definition:

Joab was an important military leader for King David throughout his entire reign.

- Before David became king, Joab had already been one of his loyal followers.
- Later, during David's reign as king over Israel, Joab became the commander over King David's army.
- Joab was also King David's nephew since his mother was one of David's sisters.
- When David's son Absalom betrayed him by trying to take over his kingship, Joab killed Absalom in order to protect the king.
- Joab was a very aggressive fighter and killed many people who were enemies of Israel.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [David](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Joash

Facts:

Joash was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Joash was the father of the Israelite deliverer, Gideon.
- Another man named Joash was a descendant of Jacob's youngest son, Benjamin.
- The most well-known Joash became king of Judah at the age of seven. He was the son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, who had been murdered.
- When Joash was a very young child, his aunt saved him from being killed by hiding him away until he was old enough to be crowned king.
- King Joash was a good king who at first obeyed God. But he did not remove the high places and the Israelites started worshiping idols again.
- King Joash ruled Judah during some of the years that King Jehoash was ruling Israel. They were two different kings.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [altar](#), [Benjamin](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [Gideon](#), [high places](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Joel

Facts:

Joel is the name of a prophet who probably lived during the reign of King Joash of Judah. There are also several other men in the Old Testament named Joel.

- The book of Joel is one of twelve short prophetic books in the last section of the Old Testament.
- The only personal information we have about the prophet Joel is that his father's name was Pethuel.
- In his sermon at Pentecost, the apostle Peter quoted from the book of Joel.
-

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joash](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Pentecost](#), [Festival of Weeks](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jonathan

Facts:

Jonathan is the name of at least ten men in the Old Testament. The name means, “Yahweh has given.”

- David’s best friend Jonathan is the most well-known man in the Bible with this name. Jonathan was King Saul’s oldest son.
- Other Jonathans mentioned in the Old Testament include: a descendant of Moses; a nephew of King David; several priests, including a son of Abiathar; and an Old Testament scribe in whose house the prophet Jeremiah was imprisoned.

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abiathar](#), [David](#), [Moses](#), [Jeremiah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [scribe](#), [expert in the Jewish law](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jordan River

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on the west from Jordan on the east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. Because it was too deep, God miraculously stopped the water from flowing so they could go across.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Genesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[15-02]** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **[19-14]** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-02]** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **[08-04]** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **[08-05]** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **[08-07]** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **[08-09]** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **[09-02]** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned different parts of the land for each of the tribes of Israel to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[14-04]** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **[14-08]** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **[14-14]** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **[14-15]** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **[15-03]** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Josiah

Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Judah](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [Passover](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Jotham

Definition:

In the Old Testament, there are three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, he did not remove the places of idol worship and this caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [Ahaz](#), [Gideon](#), [Uzziah](#), [Azariah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

joy, joyful

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term, “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or with a phrase that means, “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” **Metonymy**)

(See also: [rejoice](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[33-07]**”The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”
- **[34-04]**”The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **[41-07]** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern part of the nation.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish](#), [Jews](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include, “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as, “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), [judgment day](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.

- **[39-04]** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **[50-14]** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include, "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as, "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as, "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as, "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [upright](#), [uprightness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-09]** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **[18-13]** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **[50-17]** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Kedesh

Facts:

Kedesh was a Canaanite city that was taken over by the Israelites when they entered the land of Canaan.

- This city was located in the northern part of Israel, in the portion of land that was given to the tribe of Naphtali.
- Kedesh was one of the cities that was chosen as a place where the Levite priests could live, since they did not have any land of their own.
- It was also set apart as a “city of refuge.”

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Hebron](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [Naphtali](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Shechem](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

kin, kinsman**Definition:**

The term “kin” refers to a person’s blood relative. The word “kinsman” refers specifically to a male relative.

- These terms can refer to a close relative, such as a parent or brother, or to a more distant relative, such as an aunt, uncle, or cousin.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a “kinsman-redeemer.”
- This term could also be translated as, “relative” or “family member.”

Bible References:

Waiting

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as, “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be, “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase, “kingdom of light” could be translated as, “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-02]** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **[18-04]** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.

- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **[21-08]** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms “kingdom of God” and “kingdom of heaven” both refer to God’s rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term “heaven” to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the NT book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God’s kingdom as “the kingdom of heaven,” probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God’s kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “kingdom of God” can be translated as “God’s rule (as king)” or “when God reigns as king” or “God’s rule over everything.”
- The term “kingdom of heaven” could also be translated as “God’s rule from heaven as king” or “God in heaven reigning” or “heaven’s reign” or “heaven ruling over everything.” If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase “kingdom of God” could be translated instead.
- Some translations may prefer to capitalize “Heaven” to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text such as, “kingdom of heaven (that is, ‘of God’).”
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of “heaven” in this expression.

(See also: [God](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [king](#), [kingdom](#), [King of the Jews](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24-02] He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!”
- [28-06] Then Jesus said to his disciples, “It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**.”
- [29-02] Jesus said, “The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.”

- [34-01] Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field."
- [34-03] Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- [34realm of authority-04]"The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- [34-05]"The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- [42-09] He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- [49-05] Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- [50-02] When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

kingdom of Israel

Facts:

The term “kingdom of Israel” refers to the northern part of the nation of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many of Israelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [kingdom](#), [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-08]** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-11]** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God.
- **[20-02]** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **[20-04]** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

Judah, kingdom of Judah

Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Judah, kingdom](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-07]** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.
- **[18-10]** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **[18-13]** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.
- **[20-01]** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.
- **[20-05]** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.
- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.

- **[20-09]** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king is usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king dies, it is usually his oldest son who becomes the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” may be used to refer to someone who is not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as, “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as, “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), [Herod Antipas](#), [kingdom](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of heaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[16-01]** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **[16-18]** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **[21-06]** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **[48-14]** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include, “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know” depending on whether it refers to knowing facts or to knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as, “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as, “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Korah

Definition:

Korah was the name of three men in the Old Testament.

- One of the sons of Esau was named Korah. He became a leader in his community.
- Korah was also a descendant of Levi and so served in the tabernacle as a priest. He became jealous of Moses and Aaron and led a group of men to rebel against them.
- A third man named Korah is listed as a descendant of Judah.

(See also: [Aaron](#), [authority](#), [Caleb](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Esau](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

labor, laborer

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It often implies that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include, “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or “to work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), [hardness](#), [harden](#), [labor pains](#), [in labor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Lamech

Facts:

Lamech was the name of two men mentioned in the book of Genesis.

- The first Lamech mentioned was a descendant of Cain. He boasted to his two wives that he had killed a man for injuring him.
- The second Lamech was a descendant of Seth. He was also the father of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cain](#), , [Noah](#), [Seth](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- Ordinary oil lamps were usually made out of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval-shaped, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as, “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as, “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites.
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament.
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will.
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”).

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as, “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include: “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions”
- The phrase, “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as, “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [instruction](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [lawfully](#), [unlawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.

- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **[15-13]** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **[16-01]** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.
- **[21-05]** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **[27-01]** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **[28-01]** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Levite, Levi

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple, Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: [Matthew](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person, as in, “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living, as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive as in, “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus and God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as, “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as, “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as, “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as, “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as, “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [01-10] So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- [03-01] After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- [08-13] When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- [17-09] However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- [27-01] One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- [37-05] Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- [44-05] "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

lion

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, wild animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown in color.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can also be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions who tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion with his bare hands.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), [leopard](#), [Samson](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

lord, master, sir

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated as “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It could also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, it could be translated as “master” if the context shows it means “religious teacher.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is written as “Lord” (capitalized).

(See also: [Lord](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-05]** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **[26-03]** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- **[27-02]** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **[31-05]** Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **[43-09]** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- **[47-03]** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **[47-11]** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”
-

lots, casting lots

Definition:

A “lot” is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. “Casting lots” referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus’ robe.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “drawing lots” or “rolling lots.” Make sure the translation of “cast” does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term “lot” could also be translated as “marked stone” or “pottery piece” or “stick” or “piece of straw.”
- If a decision is made “by lot” this could be translated as, “by drawing (or throwing) lots.”

(See also: [Elizabeth](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#), [Zechariah \(NT\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as, “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

manager, steward

Definition:

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as, “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Manasseh

Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.

- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.

- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [Dan](#), [Ephraim](#), [Ezra](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [pagan](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

man of God

Facts:

The expression “man of God” is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. It is also used to refer to an angel of Yahweh

- When referring to a prophet, this could also be translated as “man who belongs to God” or “man whom God has chosen” or “man who serves God.”
- When referring to an angel this could also be translated as, “messenger of God” or “your angel” or “heavenly being from God who looks like a man.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as, “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as, “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as, “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See: [compassion](#), [compassionate](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-16]** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.
- **[19-17]** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **[20-12]** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **[27-11]** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **[32-11]** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”

- **[34-09]**”But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Meshech

Facts:

Meshech is the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One Meshech was a son of Japheth.
- The other Meshech was a grandson of Shem.
- Meshech was also the name of a region of land, which was probably named after one of these men.
- The region of Meshech may have been located in part of what is now the country of Turkey.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Japheth](#), [Noah](#), [Shem](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

messenger

Facts:

The term, “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Midian, Midianites

Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called “Midianites.”

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro’s daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [flock](#), [herd](#), [Gideon](#), [Jethro](#), [Reuel](#), [Moses](#),

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[16-03]** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them.
- **[16-04]** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them.
- **[16-11]** The man’s friend said, ”This dream means that Gideon’s army will defeat the **Midianite** army!”
- **[16-14]** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase, “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase, “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term, “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as, “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as, “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [strength](#), [strengthen](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression, “keep in mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression, “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as, “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as, “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression, “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as, “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include, “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [powers](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [apostle](#), [apostleship](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[16-08]** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **[19-14]** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **[37-10]** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **[43-06]** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **[49-02]** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Miriam

Facts:

Miriam was the older sister of Aaron and Moses.

- When she was young, Miriam was instructed by her mother to watch over her baby brother Moses who was in a basket among the reeds of the Nile River. When the pharaoh's daughter found the baby and needed someone to take care of him for her, Miriam brought her mother to do it.
- Miriam led the Israelites in a dance of joy and thanksgiving after they had escaped from the Egyptians by crossing the Red Sea.
- Years later as the Israelites were wandering in the desert, Miriam and Aaron began speaking badly about Moses because he had married a Cushite woman.
- Because of her rebellion in speaking against Moses, God caused Miriam to become sick with leprosy. But later God healed her when Moses interceded for her.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See: [Aaron](#), [Cush](#), [intercede](#), [intercession](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#), [River of Egypt](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#))

(See also: other)

Bible References:

Waiting

Moab, Moabite, Moabites

Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabites" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as, "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Judea](#), [Lot](#), [Ruth](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [Miriam](#), [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[12-05]** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **[12-07]** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **[12-12]** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **[13-07]** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Mount Hermon

Facts:

Mount Hermon is the name of the tallest mountain in Israel at the southern tip of the Lebanon mountain range.

- It is located north of the Sea of Galilee, at the northern border between Israel and Syria.
- Other names given to Mount Hermon by other people groups were “Mount Sirion” and “Mount Senir.”
- Mount Hermon has three major peaks. The tallest peak is around 2,800 meters high.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [Syria](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

mourn, mourning

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively, to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: [sackcloth](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Naaman

Facts:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Jordan River](#), [leprosy](#), [leper](#), [leprous](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[19-14]** One of the miracles happened to **Naaman**, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease.
- **[19-15]** At first **Naaman** was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan River.
- **[26-06]** "He (Elisha) only healed the skin disease of **Naaman**, a commander of Israel's enemies."

Nahor

Facts:

Nahor was the name of two relatives of Abraham: his grandfather and his brother.

- Abraham's brother Nahor was the grandfather of Isaac's wife Rebekah.
- The phrase "city of Nahor" could mean, "the city named Nahor" or "the city where Nahor had lived" or "Nahor's city."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Rebekah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

name

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” is used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” can refer to a person’s reputation, as in, “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” can also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone can refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like, “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as, “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression, “make a name for ourselves” could be translated, “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression, “call his name” could be translated as, “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression, “those who love your name” could be translated as, “those who love you.”
- The expression, “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See: [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali is used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. It was also on the western border of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe is mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asher](#), [Dan](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [Sea of Chinnereth](#), [Lake of Gennesaret](#), [Sea of Tiberias](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Nathan

Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived during the time when David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David, in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-07]** God sent the prophet **Nathan** to David with this message, “Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me.”
- **[17-13]** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet **Nathan** to tell David how evil his sin was.

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- The term “nation” usually includes the idea of a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” can be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” is used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” is also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as, “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [Grecian](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. This "Babylonian Exile" lasted 70 years.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted dreams that King Nebuchadnezzar had.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Meshael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [arrogant](#), [Azariah](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Hananiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Mishael](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[20-06]** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **[20-06]** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **[20-08]** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **[20-09]** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

new moon**Definition:**

The term “new moon” in the Bible refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth.

- In ancient times, the new moon was used to mark the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this period of time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: **biblical time: month, earth, earthly, festival, horn, horns, sheep, ram, ewe**)

Bible References:

Waiting

Noah

Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic boat in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic boat, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the boat, Noah and his family were kept safe and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **[03-04]** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[03-13]** Two months later God said to **Noah**, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

oak

Definition:

An oak is a tall, shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

- Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks for elderly people.
- The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
- The trunk of certain oak trees could be as wide around as 6 meters.
- Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

Translation Suggestions:

- Many translations will have to say “oak tree” rather than just “oak.”
- If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, this could be translated as “an oak, which is a large shade tree like...,” then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
- See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#)

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oath, swear, swear by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- Often in a court of law, a witness gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together as in, “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day use of the word “swear” means to use foul language. This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated by “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include, “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: [Abimelech](#), [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Obadiah

Facts:

Obadiah was an Old Testament prophet who prophesied against the people of Edom, who were the descendants of Esau. There were also many other men named Obadiah in the Old Testament.

- The book of Obadiah is the shortest book in the Old Testament and tells a prophecy that Obadiah received through a vision from God.
- It is not clear when Obadiah lived and prophesied. It may have been during the reigns of Jehoram, Ahaziah, Joash, and Athaliah, kings of Judah. The prophets Daniel, Ezekiel, and Jeremiah would also have been prophesying during part of this time.
- Obadiah may also have lived at a later time period, during the reign of King Zedekiah and the Babylonian captivity.
- Other men named Obadiah included a descendant of Saul; a Gadite who became one of David's men; a palace administrator for King Ahab; an official of King Jehoshaphat; a man who helped with repairs to the temple during the time of King Josiah; a Levite who was also a gatekeeper during the time of Nehemiah.
- It could be that the writer of the book of Obadiah was one of these men.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [David](#), [Edom](#), [Edomite](#), [Idumea](#), [Esau](#), [Ezekiel](#), [Daniel](#), [Gad](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Josiah](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [Zedekiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

obey, obedient, obedience

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes the character of someone who obeys. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in, “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate this term could include a word or phrase that means, “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as, “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: [citizen](#), [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#), [principle](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-04]** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **[05-06]** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **[05-10]** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **[11-06]** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **[13-07]** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

oil**Definition:**

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that is taken from certain plants or fruits. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit is green in color, changing to black as they ripen. Olives are used for eating and extracting oil.
- Olive oil was used for cooking, for lighting lamps, and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Mount of Olives](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

oppress, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated by, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include, “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [bond](#), [bound](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

overseer

Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseer,” “elder,” and “shepherd/pastor” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be, “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: [church](#), [Church](#), [elder](#), [pastor](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ox, oxen

Definition:

An “ox” refers to a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen are depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Oxen working together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase “to be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [cow](#), [calf](#), [bull](#), [cattle](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

palace

Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [high priest](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [15-06] God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- [15-12] Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- [16-03] Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- [21-13] He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- [48-14] David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- [50-17] Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase, “the people of” could be translated as, “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as, “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as, “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#), [worldly](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [14-02] God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- [21-02] God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- [42-08]”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”
- [42-10]”So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- [48-11] Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.
- [50-03] He (Jesus) said, ”Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term, “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says, “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- Other ways to translate “my people” when God says it, could include, “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as, “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[08-06]** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **[08-08]** **Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **[09-02]** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **[09-13]** “I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **[10-02]** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt’s gods.

Philistia

Definition:

Philistia is the name of a large region in the land of Canaan, located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea.

- The region was located along the very fertile coastal plain reaching from Joppa in the north to Gaza in the south. It was about 64 km long and 16 km wide.
- Philistia was occupied by the “Philistines,” a powerful people group who were frequent enemies of the Israelites.

(See also: [Philistines](#), [Gaza](#), [Joppa](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Azotus](#), [Ashkelon](#), [David](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Phinehas

Facts:

Phineas was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One of Aaron's grandsons was a priest named Phinehas, who strongly opposed the worship of false gods in Israel.
- Phineas saved the Israelites from a plague that Yahweh had sent to punish them for marrying Midianite women and worshiping their false gods.
- On several occasions Phinehas went with the Israelite army to destroy the Midianites.
- The other Phinehas mentioned in the Old Testament was one of the evil sons of Eli the priest during the time of the prophet Samuel.
- Phinehas and his brother Hophni were both killed when the Philistines attacked Israel and stole the Ark of the Covenant.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [Jordan River](#), [Midian](#), [Midianites](#), [Philistines](#), [Samuel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pillar, column

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- AS a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [founded](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [image](#), [carved image](#), [carved figure](#), [cast metal figure](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

pit**Definition:**

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: [abyss](#), [hell](#), [lake of fire](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

plague

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as, “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [hail](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

possess, possession

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as, “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The terms “possess” could also be translated as, “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase, “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as, “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include, “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as, “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [Jesus Christ](#), [Christ Jesus](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [22-05] The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- [26-01] After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- [32-15] Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- [42-11] Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- [43-06] “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- [44-08] Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah.”

praise

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as, “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as, “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[12-13]** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **[17-08]** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **[22-07]** Zechariah said, “**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!
- **[43-13]** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **[47-08]** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. This term is also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [forgive](#), [forgiveness](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [06-05] Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- [13-12] But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- [19-08] Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- [21-07] Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- [38-11] Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- [43-13] The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- [49-18] God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

precious

Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as, “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him".
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like, "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [04-07] "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- [13-09] Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- [19-07] So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- [21-07] An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

promise

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as, “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as, “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [swear](#), [swear by](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-15]** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”?
- **[03-16]** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **[05-04]** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **[08-15]** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **[17-14]** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **[50-01]** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example, the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [false prophet](#), [fulfill](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- [17-13] God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- [19-01] Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- [19-06] All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- [19-17] Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- [21-09] The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- [43-05] "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- [43-07] "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- [48-12] Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.
-

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as, “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [blessed](#), [blessing](#), [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

punish, punishment

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-07]** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **[16-02]** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **[19-16]** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **[48-06]** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **[48-10]** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **[49-09]** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.

- [49-11] Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as, “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as, “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase, “provided purification for sins” could be translated as, “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include, “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See: [atonement](#), [atone](#), [clean](#), [cleanse](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Rabbah

Definition:

Rabbah was the most important city of the Ammonite people.

- In battles against the Ammonites, the Israelites often attacked Rabbah.
- Israel's King David captured Rabbah as one of his last conquests.
- The modern-day city Amman Jordan is now where Rabbah used to be located.

(See also: [Ammon](#), [Ammonites](#), [Ammonites](#), [David](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before moving to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Benjamin](#), [Rachel](#), [Samuel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Ramoth

Facts:

Ramoth was an important city in the mountains of Gilead near the Jordan River. It was also called Ramoth Gilead.

- Ramoth belonged to the Israelite tribe of Gad and was designated as a city of refuge.
- King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah waged war against the king of Aram at Ramoth. Ahab was killed in that battle.
- Sometime later, King Ahaziah and King Joram tried to take the city of Ramoth from the king of Aram.
- Ramoth Gilead was where Jehu was anointed king over Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Aram](#), [Aramean](#), [Aramaic](#), [Gad](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Joram](#), [Jordan River](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rebuke

Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent the one who committed the wrong from involving themselves further in sin.
- This could be translated by, “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by, “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as, “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also [admonish](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

refuge, shelter

Definition:

The term “refuge” refers to a place or condition of safety and protection. A “shelter” refers to a physical structure that protects from weather or danger.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a refuge where his people can be safe, protected, and cared for.
- The term, “city of refuge” in the Old Testament referred to certain cities where a person who accidentally killed someone could run to for protection from people who would attack them in revenge.
- A “shelter” is often a physical structure such as a building or roof that can provide protection to people or animals.
- Sometimes “shelter” means “protection” as when Lot said that his guests were “under the shelter” of his roof. He was saying that they should be safe because they were in his house.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “refuge” could be translated as “safe place” or “place of protection.”
- Depending on the context, the term “shelter” could be translated as, “something that protects” or “protection” or “protected place.”
- If it refers to a physical structure, “shelter” could also be translated as “protective building” or “ ”
- The phrase “into safe shelter” could be translated as “into a safe place” or “into a place that will protect.”
- To “find shelter” or “take shelter” or “take refuge” could be translated as, “find a place of safety” or “put oneself in a protected place.”

Bible References:

Waiting

Rehoboam

Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

- At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the “kingdom of Israel” in the north.
- Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah which consisted of the two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[18-05]** After Solomon died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became king. **Rehoboam** was a foolish man.
- **[18-06]** **Rehoboam** answered foolishly and told them, “You thought my father Solomon made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will punish you more harshly than he did.”
- **[18-07]** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against **Rehoboam**. Only two tribes remained faithful to him.

reign

Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule as a king over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term ”reign is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel when they rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king” or “governing as king.”

(See also: [king](#), [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reject

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by, “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression, “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as, “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of the people rejecting God’s commandments, this could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [stiff-necked](#), [stubborn](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rejoice

Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as, “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said, “my soul rejoices in God my Savior” she meant, “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#), [joyful](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

rest

Definition:

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animal rests, it can mean that they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as, “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- When God says, “they will not enter my rest,” this could be translated as, “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Leah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

reveal, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- In the Bible, the term “reveal” is often used to describe how God has made himself known to people.
- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul says that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- The New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealing events that will happen in the end times. He revealed this to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include, “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be, “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in this word.
- The phrase, “where there is no revelation” could be translated as, “when God does not reveal himself to people” or “when God has not spoken to people” or “among people whom God has not communicated to.”

(See also: [good news, gospel](#), [good news, gospel](#), [dream](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The terms “righteous” and “righteousness” refer to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people who the Bible calls “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous based on Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as, “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When referring to people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase, “the righteous” could also be translated as, “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” is used figuratively and refers to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [goodness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-02]** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **[04-08]** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **[17-02]** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **[23-01]** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **[50-10]** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include, “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be, “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [Parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated by, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”
- In Psalm 105:9, God calls for an accuser to be at the “right hand” of a wicked leader sent to punish his rebellious people. This could be translated as, “appoint an accuser to have the place of honor beside that wicked leader” or “appoint an accuser to help that wicked leader punish them.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [accusation](#), [accuser](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#), [mighty](#), [might](#), [punish](#), [punishment](#), [rebel](#), [rebellious](#), [rebellion](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

robe**Definition:**

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by both men and women. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short in length.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: [royal](#), [tunic](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

ruler, rulers, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group.

- In the Old Testament, a king was also referred to with the general term “ruler,” as in the phrase, “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God is referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when referring a king ruling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [govern](#), [proconsul](#), [government](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [rest](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-05]** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **[26-02]** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **[41-03]** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made out of goat hair or camel hair.

- Clothing made out of sackcloth was uncomfortable for the person wearing it. It was worn as a way of showing mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could also be translated as, “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include, “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as, “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See: [ash](#), [ashes](#), [dust](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [kid](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [mourn](#), [mourning](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sign](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sacred**Definition:**

Term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, often the term “sacred” is used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” or “sacred music” refer to music that is sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” refers to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performs to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [consecrate](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action, “to sacrifice” could be translated as, “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be, “As you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal that is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [offering by fire](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[03-14]** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.

- **[05-06]** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **[05-09]** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **[48-06]** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **[48-08]** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **[49-11]** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

salvation

Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using the word “save” or “rescue” as in, “when God saves people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God will rescue his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as, “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as, “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), [safe](#), [Savior](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Samuel

Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah was barren, so she prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if hborn as an answer to Hannah’s desperate prayer that God would give her a male child.er prayer was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- When Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to help Eli the priest in the temple to fulfill her promise to God
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet for him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Hannah](#), [judge](#), [judgment](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” is often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as, “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used as a tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern day church.

(See also: [Biblical Money](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [sacred](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [tax](#), [taxes](#), [temple](#),)

Bible References:

Waiting

Saul (OT)

Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-01] Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **[17-04] Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- **[17-05]** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

scribe, expert in the Jewish law

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible to write or copy important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term “scribes” is also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees” and the two groups are frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [Pharisee](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

seek, sought

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. The past tense is “sought.” It can also mean “try hard” or “make an effort” to do something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity means to “try to find a time” to do a particular thing
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- to “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “try to get favor” or “to do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

seize

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” It could also be translated as, “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated as “overcome” or “suddenly come upon.”
- This term could also be translated as, “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression, “seized and slept with her” could be translated as, “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

send, send out, sent

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean “to cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as “send word” or “send a message” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently uses the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as, “commissioned me” or “caused me to come” or “appointed me to go.”

(See also: [appoint](#), [appointed](#), [redeem](#), [redemption](#), [redeemer](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a servant or a slave is being referred to.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave is a kind of servant who is the property of the person he works for. The person who buys a slave is called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treat their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treat their slaves very well, like a servant who is a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It does not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God are often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obey God through faith in Christ are often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obeying his master. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [enslave](#), [in bondage](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [serve](#), [service](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[06-01]** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **[08-04]** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **[09-13]** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.”

- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **[29-03]** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **[35-06]** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **[47-04]** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **[50-04]** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

serve, service**Definition:**

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a woman serving her guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to serve the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute to” or “hand out to” or “give to.”¹[comment_5adb7a6af206fdb7787dd58f4b215940](#)
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as, “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables.
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant, that is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about this in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means to be separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose.

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- The term “sanctify” means to set apart a person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include, “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [holiness](#), [sanctify](#), [sanctification](#), [appoint](#), [appointed](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Seth

Facts:

In the book of Genesis, Seth was the third son of Adam and Eve.

- Eve said that Seth was given to her in place of her son Abel, who was murdered by his brother Cain.
- Noah was one of Seth's descendants, so everyone who has lived since the time of the Flood is also a descendant of Seth.
- Seth and his family were the first people to "call on the name of the Lord."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abel](#), [Cain](#), [call](#), [calling](#), [called](#), [call out](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [flood](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking

Definition:

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: [Euphemism](#))

- To “sleep with” someone is a common way of referring to having sexual relations. The past tense is, “slept with.”
- In the Old Testament book, “Song of Solomon,” the ULB uses the term “lovemaking” to translate the word “love,” which in that context refers to sexual relations. This is related to the expression, “make love to.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may use different expressions of this term in different contexts, depending on whether it is talking about a husband and wife, or whether it is about some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate “sleep with”: “lie with” or “make love to” or “be intimate with.”
- Other ways to translate “have relations with” could include, “have sexual relations with” or “have marital relations with.”
- The term “lovemaking” could also be translated as, “loving” or “intimacy.” Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See: [sexual immorality](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

shadow

Definition:

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: [darkness](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

shame, shameful, ashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent, by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [humble](#), [humility](#), [humiliate](#), [humiliation](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [repentance](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sharon, Plain of Sharon

Facts:

Sharon was the name of a flat, fertile area of land along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, south of Mount Carmel. It is also known as the “Plain of Sharon.”

- Several cities mentioned in the Bible were located on the Plain of Sharon, including Joppa, Lydda, and Caesarea.
- This could be translated as “the plain called Sharon” or “Sharon Plain.”
- People who lived in the region of Sharon were called “Sharonites.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Caesarea](#), [Caesarea Philippi](#), [Carmel](#), [Mount Carmel](#), [Joppa](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sheba

Facts:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia.

- The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what is now the present-day country of Yemen or Ethiopia.
- Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
- The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
- There are also several men named “Sheba” listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
- The city of Beersheba is shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [Beersheba](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Ethiopian](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Shechem

Facts:

Shechem is a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem is also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem is where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem, which later became his family burial ground and where Jacob's sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, which resulted in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))[Hamor](#)

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Esau](#), [Hamor](#), [Hivite](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sheep, ram, ewe

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. The male sheep is called a “ram.” The female sheep is called a “ewe.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially males and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [lamb](#), [Lamb of God](#), [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-12]** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **[17-02]** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **[30-03]** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **[38-08]** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Shem

Facts:

Shem was one of Noah's three sons who went with him into the ark during the worldwide flood described in the book of Genesis.

- Shem was the ancestor of Abraham and his descendants.
- The descendants of Shem are known as "Semites" who speak "Semitic" languages such as Hebrew and Arabic.
- The Bible records the length of Shem's life to be nearly 600 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Arabia](#), [Arabian](#), [ark](#), [flood](#), [Noah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

shepherd, to shepherd

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water.

- Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.
- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- In the Old Testament, God is called the “shepherd” of his people because he takes care of all their needs and protects them. He also leads and guides them.
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus calls himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also refers to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” is used to refer to a person who is a spiritual leader over other believers. The term “pastor” is the same word as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as, “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include, “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The expression, “to shepherd (a flock)” could be translated as, “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [church](#), [Church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [09-11] Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- [17-02] David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- [23-06] That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- [23-08] The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- [30-03] To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

shield

Definition:

A shield is an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. "To shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval in shape and were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal that were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Paul also talks about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that believing in Jesus, and living out that faith in obedience to God, will protect believers from spiritual attacks from Satan.

(See also: [faith](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [Satan](#), [devil](#), [evil one](#), [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Shimei

Definition:

Shimei is the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- Shimei son of Gera, was a Benjamite who cursed King David and threw stones at him as he was fleeing Jerusalem to escape being killed by his son Absalom.
- There were also several Levite priests in the Old Testament who were named Shimei.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [Benjamin](#), [Levite](#), [Levi](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Sidon, Sidonians

Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The “Sidonians” were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and the immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Noah](#), [Phoenicia](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Tyre](#), [Tyrians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

siege, besiege

Definition:

The term “siege” refers to when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from being able to receive any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city means to cause that city to be under a siege.

- When Babylon came to attack Israel, they used a siege tactic on Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege attack, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- The expression “lay siege” means to perform a siege. It has the same meaning as “besiege.”
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

Bible References:

Waiting

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The containers would include silver cups and bowls, among other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, silver coins and silver weights called shekels were used.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Simeon

Facts:

In the Bible, there are several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) and Leah was named Simeon. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan, an area that was part of Judah's inheritance.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Christ](#), [Messiah](#), [dedicate](#), [dedication](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a sinful nature that controls them.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context, “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means, “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include, “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- * **[03-15]** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- * **[13-12]** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- * **[20-01]** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- * **[21-13]** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- * **[35-01]** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- * **[38-05]** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- * **[43-11]** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- * **[48-08]** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- * **[49-17]** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

sister

Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the New Testament, “sister” is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase, “brothers and sisters” is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book, Song of Songs, “sister” refers to a lover or a spouse.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include, “sister in Christ” or “spiritual sister” or “woman who believes in Jesus” or “fellow woman believer.”
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for “believer,” this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of “loved one” or “dear one.”

(See also: [brother in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, spirit, spiritual](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

snow**Facts:**

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but may not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of this is the Bible’s mention of snow on Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is white is often compared to the color of snow, as when Jesus’ clothing or hair is described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes being pure and clean. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God completely cleanses his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Lebanon](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well-known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the beginning years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-14]** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **[18-02]** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **[18-03]** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries. ... When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **[18-04]** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

son, son of

Definition:

The term “son” refers to a boy or man in relation to his parents. It can refer either to someone’s male offspring or to an adopted son.

- “Son” is often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger.
- Sometimes “sons of God” is used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God calls Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning, “having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include, “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah, son of Zadok” and “Azariah, son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah, son of Amaziah in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” using the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” refers to a male descendant, not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [firstborn](#), [Son of God](#), [the Son](#), [Son](#), [sons of God](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[04-08]** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **[04-09]** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **[05-05]** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **[05-08]** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **[09-07]** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **[11-06]** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **[18-01]** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **[26-04]** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

spear

Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the “javelin” or “lance.”
- Make sure that the translation of “spear” is different from the translation of “sword,” which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: [prey, to prey on](#), [Rome, Roman](#), [sword](#), [warrior](#), [soldier](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings that give nourishment to a person’s spirit, “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in, “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” or “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include, “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person as in, “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as, “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as, “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as, “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as, “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- A “spiritual gift” could be translated as, “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [demon](#), [evil spirit](#), [unclean spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-03]** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **[40-07]** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **[45-05]** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **[48-07]** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

splendor

Definition:

The term “splendor” refers to extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor, referring to their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of the people, including rich clothing, gold and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as, “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: [glory](#), [glorious](#), [king](#), [majesty](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

staff

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, which was different from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), [king of Egypt](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [sheep](#), [ram](#), [ewe](#), [shepherd](#), [to shepherd](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

statute, statutes

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” or ” command” or “law” or “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stone, stoning**Definition:**

A stone is a small rock. The term “stoning” refers to throwing stones and larger rocks at a person in order to kill him.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- The New Testament tells of a time that Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed because of testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [commit](#), [committed](#), [commitment](#), [crime](#), [criminal](#), [death](#), [die](#), [dead](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#), [testify](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a shortage of food because of famine.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things, such as gold and silver, that had been dedicated to Yahweh. Some of these things were used to repair and maintain the temple.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include, “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), [dedicate](#), [dedication](#), [famine](#), [gold](#), [grain](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

strength, strengthen

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to the state of being strong physically, emotionally, or spiritually. To “strengthen” means to make someone or something stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to being able to stand up against some kind of opposing force.
- A person has strength of will if he is able to not give in to temptation.
- One writer of the Psalms calls Yahweh his strength, which means that God helps him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is “strengthened,” it means that people are rebuilding the structure, to reinforce it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase, “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following expressions are examples of how this term is used, along with their meanings, which are also alternate ways they can be translated:
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means, “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means, “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means, “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means, “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means, “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means, “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means, “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means, “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means, “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means, “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means, “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [persevere](#), [perseverance](#), [right hand](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stronghold, fortress, fortified

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses are manmade structures with defensive walls. They can also be natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortify strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that make it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” refers to something that someone wrongly trusts in for security, such as a false god or other thing that is worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as, “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [foreign god](#), [god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolatrous](#), [refuge](#), [shelter](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

stumble

Definition:

The term “stumble” means to “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, “to stumble” can mean “to sin” or “to falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as, “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [stumbling](#), [block](#), [stone of stumbling](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

sword

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- The blade of a sword in ancient times was around 60 to 91 centimeters long.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
- Jesus’ disciples had swords they planned to use to defend themselves. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest’s servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God’s word. God’s teachings in the Bible expose people’s innermost thoughts and convict them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God’s word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
- Another figurative use of this term is in the book of Psalms where the tongue or speech of a person is compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as, “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations may decide to include a picture of a sword.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [James \(brother of Jesus\)](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [tongue](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take apart the tabernacle and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when Solomon's temple in Jerusalem was built.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "tabernacle" means "dwelling place." Other ways to translate it could include, "sacred tent" or "tent where God was" or "God's tent."
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of "temple."

(See also: , [altar](#), [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [temple](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Tamar

Facts:

Tamar is the name of several women in the Old Testament. It is also the name of several cities or other places in the Old Testament.

- Tamar was the daughter-in-law of Judah. She gave birth to Perez who was an ancestor of Jesus Christ.
- One of King David's daughters was also named Tamar; she was the sister of Absalom. Her half-brother Amnon raped her and left her desolate.
- Absalom also had a daughter named Tamar.
- A city called "Hazezon Tamar" is the same as the city of Engedi on the western shore of the Salt Sea. There is also a "Baal Tamar." There are also general references to a place called "Tamar" which may be different from the cities.

(See also: [Absalom](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Amnon](#), [David](#), [ancestor](#), [father](#), [forefather](#), [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#))

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Tarshish

Facts:

Tarshish was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a city.

- One of Japheth's grandsons was named Tarshish.
- Tarshish was also the name of one of the wise men of King Ahashuerus.
- The city of Tarshish was a very prosperous port city, whose ships carried valuable products to buy, sell, or trade.
- This city was associated with Tyre and is thought to have been a Phoenician city that was somewhat distant from Israel, perhaps on the southern coast of Spain.
- The Old Testament prophet Jonah boarded a ship bound for the city of Tarshish instead of obeying God's command to go preach to Nineveh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Esther](#), [Japheth](#), [Jonah](#), [Nineveh](#), [Ninevite](#), [Phoenicia](#), [wise men](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” refers to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it refers only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- During the reign of King Solomon he built the Temple, which was the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- When it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations will translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it clear what is being referred to.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [court Zion](#), [Mount Zion house](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17-06] David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- [18-02] In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- [20-07] They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.

- [20-13] When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- [25-04] Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- [40-07] When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

tent

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents made of sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he made tents to earn money to support himself.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses." (See: [Synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Saul](#), [Sinai](#), [Mount Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tent of meeting

Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [Moses](#), [pillar](#), [column](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-08]** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain.
- **[13-09]** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God.
- **[14-08]** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**.
- **[18-02]** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

Terah

Facts:

Terah was a descendant of Noah's son, Shem. He was the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran.

- Terah left his home in Ur in order to go to the land of Canaan with his son Abram, his nephew Lot, and Abram's wife Sarai.
- On the way to Canaan, Terah and his family lived for years in the city of Haran in Mesopotamia. Terah died in Haran at the age of 205.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [Haran](#), [Lot](#), [Mesopotamia](#), [Aram Naharaim](#), [Nahor](#), [Sarah](#), [Sarai](#), [Shem](#), [Ur](#))

Bible References:

Genesis 11:31-32

Waiting

thresh, threshing

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

throne

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a king sits to decide important matters and to listen to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a king has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the king, his reign, or his power. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God is often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus is described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [powers](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

time

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” is often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events take place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- Both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three and a half year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- Phrases such as “second time” or “many times” refer to the number of occurrences that something happened.
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” **Doublet**

(See also: [age](#), [tribulation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tribe

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

tribute**Definition:**

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and good relations between their nations.

- A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers might pay a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include other things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [tax](#), [taxes](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trouble, troubles, troubled

Definition:

The term “trouble” refers to experiences in life that are very difficult and distressing. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.
- The action, “to trouble” someone means “to bother” that person or to cause him distress.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as, “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as, “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as, “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include, “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [affliction](#), [persecute](#), [persecution](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

true, truth, come true

Definition:

The terms “true” and “truth” refer to concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said.

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- The expression “come true” or “came true” is an expression that means that a prophecy actually happened as it was predicted that it would.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include, “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as, “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as, “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as, “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as, “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by, “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [understand](#), [understanding](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[02-04]** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **[14-06]** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.

- [31-08] They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- [39-10] "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

trumpet

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [assembly](#), [assemble](#), [earth](#), [earthly](#), [horn](#), [horns](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [wrath](#), [fury](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

trust, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

The term “trust” refers to believing that something or someone is true or dependable. A “trustworthy” person can be relied on to do and say what is right and true.

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God and that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include, “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as, “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: , [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [confidence](#), [confident](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [true](#), [truth](#), [come true](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12-12] When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14-15] Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17-02] David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34-06] Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Tubal

Facts:

There are several men in the Old Testament who had the name “Tubal.”

- One man named Tubal was one of the sons of Japheth.
- A man named “Tubal-Cain” was the son of Lamech and descendant of Cain.
- Tubal is also the name of a people group mentioned by the prophets Isaiah and Ezekiel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cain](#), [descendant](#), [descended from](#), [Ezekiel](#), [Isaiah](#), [Japheth](#), [Lamech](#), [people group](#), [peoples](#), [the people](#), [a people](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called “Tyrians.”

- Part of the city was also located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the coast.
- Because of its location and valuable natural resources such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers for building a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also gave King Solomon wood and skilled laborers for building the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Canaanite](#), [cedar](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [the sea](#), [the Great Sea](#), [the western sea](#), [Mediterranean Sea](#), [Phoenicia](#), [Sidon](#), [Sidonians](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression, “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include, “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as, “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [circumcise](#), [circumcision](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

understand, understanding

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believe in](#), [belief](#), [know](#), [knowledge](#), [make known](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as, “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as, “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as, “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [adulterous](#), [adulterer](#), [adulteress](#), [disobey](#), [disobedient](#), [disobedience](#), [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

unleavened bread, Festival of Unleavened Bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise. The “Festival of Unleavened Bread” is part of the Passover celebration.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- For this reason, the week leading up to Passover is called the “Festival of Unleavened Bread.”
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include, “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [slave](#), [slavery](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [yeast](#), [leaven](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

upright, uprightness

Definition:

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “upright” could include, “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as, “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [integrity](#), [law](#), [principle](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [obey](#), [obedient](#), [obedience](#), [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Uriah

Facts:

Uriah was a righteous man and one of King David's best soldiers. He is often referred to as "Uriah the Hittite."

- Uriah had a very beautiful wife named Bathsheba.
- David committed adultery with Uriah's wife, and she became pregnant with David's child.
- To cover up this sin, David caused Uriah to be killed in battle. Then David married Bathsheba.
- Another man named Uriah was a priest during the time of King Ahaz.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Bathsheba](#), [David](#), [Hittite](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[17-12]** Bathsheba's husband, a man named **Uriah**, was one of David's best soldiers. David called **Uriah** back from the battle and told him to go be with his wife. But **Uriah** refused to go home while the rest of the soldiers were in battle. So David sent **Uriah** back to the battle and told the general to place him where the enemy was strongest so that he would be killed.
- **[17-13]** After **Uriah** was killed, David married Bathsheba.

vineyard**Definition:**

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as, “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [Israelites](#), [nation of Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

vision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as, “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as, “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like, “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: [dream](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

warrior, soldier**Facts:**

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: [courage](#), [courageous](#), [crucify](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [tomb](#), [grave](#), [burial place](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

watch, watchman**Definition:**

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include, “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

Waiting

watchtower, tower

Definition:

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [enemy](#), [watch](#), [watchman](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

well, cistern

Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include, “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [court](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [prison](#), [prisoner](#), [imprison](#), [strife](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), [chaff](#), [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), [threshing](#), [winnow](#), [sift](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term “to will” means “to determine” or “to desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as, “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

Waiting

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also refer to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as, “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include, “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

smashed

wise men

Facts:

In the Bible, the phrase “wise men” often refers to men who serve God and act wisely, not foolishly. This is also a special term that refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served as part of a king’s court.

- Sometimes the term “wise men” is explained in the text as “prudent men” or “men with understanding.” This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The “wise men” who served pharaohs and other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.
- Sometimes wise men also performed magical acts such as divination or miracles that were done through the power of evil spirits.
- In the New Testament, the group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called “magi,” which is often translated as “wise men” since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.
- It is very probable that these men were astrologers who studied the stars. Some have thought that they may have been descendants of the wise men whom Daniel taught when he was in Babylon.
- Depending on the context, the term “wise men” could be translated using the term “wise” or with a phrase such as, “gifted men” or “educated men” or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When “wise men” is simply a noun phrase, the word “wise” should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Daniel](#), [divination](#), [diviner](#), [soothsaying](#), [soothsayer](#), [magic](#), [magician](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [ruler](#), [rulers](#), [rule](#), [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

word**Definition:**

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include, “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”
- When it refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Saying.”

(See also: [word of God](#), [God’s word](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures or “Old Testament.” These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people can still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include, “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as, “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone, it could be translated as “message” or “God’s word” or “teachings,” depending on the context. Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

(See also: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[25-07]** In **God’s word** he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **[33-06]** So Jesus explained, “The seed is the **word of God**.”

- [42-03] Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- [42-07] Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- [45-10] Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- [48-12] But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- [49-18] God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as, “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be, “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as, “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression, “the work of God” could be translated as, “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in, “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression, “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression, “examine your own work” could also be translated as, “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as, “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See: [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Spirit of God](#), [Spirit of the Lord](#), [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means, “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as, “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as, “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be, “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as, “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [corruption](#), [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#), [Rome](#), [Roman](#), [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

worship

Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally, “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [offering](#), [praise](#), [honor](#), [to honor](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **[14-02]** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **[17-06]** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **[18-12]** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **[25-07]** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, “**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.””
- **[26-02]** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **[47-01]** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **[49-18]** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

wrath, fury**Definition:**

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include, "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See: [judge](#), [judgment](#), [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

written**Definition:**

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated: “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [to command](#), [commandment](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [word of God](#), [word of Yahweh](#), [word of the Lord](#), [scripture](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#), [revelation](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **[09-14]** God said, “I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ Also tell them, ‘I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.’”

- **[13-04]** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **[13-05]** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **[16-01]** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **[19-10]** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host

Definition:

The terms “Yahweh of hosts” and “God of hosts” are titles that express God’s authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term “host” or “hosts” is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to “host of the heavens” refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, “Lord of hosts” means the same as “Yahweh of hosts” but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word “Yahweh” is not used in the New Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “Yahweh of hosts” could include, “Yahweh, who rules all the angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler of all creation.”
- The phrase “of hosts” in the terms “God of hosts” and “Lord of hosts” would be translated the same way as in the phrase “Yahweh of hosts” above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term “Yahweh” and prefer to use the capitalized word, “LORD” instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term “LORD of hosts” would be used in the Old Testament for “Yahweh of hosts.”

(See also: [angel](#), [archangel](#), [authority](#), [God](#), [lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#), [Lord](#), [Lord Yahweh](#), [Yahweh God Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zadok

Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [ark of the covenant decrees](#), [ark of Yahweh](#), [David](#), [Jotham](#), [Nehemiah](#), [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zebulun

Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel

- The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
- Sometimes the name “Zebulun” is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Leah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Dead Sea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zechariah (OT)

Facts:

Zechariah was a prophet who prophesied during the reign of King Darius I of Persia. The Old Testament book of Zechariah contains his prophecies, which urged the returning exiles to rebuild the temple.

- The prophet Zechariah lived during the same time period as Ezra, Nehemiah, Zerubbabel and Haggai. He was also mentioned by Jesus as the last of the prophets who were murdered during Old Testament times.
- Another man named Zechariah was a gatekeeper at the temple during the time of David.
- One of King Jehoshaphat's sons who was named Zechariah was murdered by his brother Jehoram.
- Zechariah was the name of a priest who was stoned by the people of Israel when he rebuked them for their idol worship.
- King Zechariah was the son of Jeroboam and he reigned over Israel for only six months before being murdered.

(Translation Suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Darius](#), [Ezra](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Nehemiah](#), [Zerubbabel](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zedekiah

Facts:

Zedekiah, son of Josiah, was the last king of Judah (597-587 B.C.). There are also several other men named Zedekiah in the Old Testament.

- King Nebuchadnezzar made Zedekiah king of Judah after capturing King Jehoiachin and taking him away to Babylon. Zedekiah later rebelled and as a result Nebuchadnezzar captured him and destroyed all of Jerusalem.
- Zedekiah, son of Kenaanah, was a false prophet during the time of King Ahab of Israel.
- A man named Zedekiah was one of those who signed an agreement to the Lord during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [Ezekiel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Jehoiachin](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Nehemiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zephaniah

Facts:

Zephaniah, son of Cushi, was a prophet who lived in Jerusalem and prophesied during the reign of King Josiah. He lived during the same time period as Jeremiah.

- He rebuked the people of Judah for worshipping false gods. His prophecies are written in the book of Zephaniah in the Old Testament.
- There were several other men in the Old Testament named Zephaniah, most of whom were priests.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zerubbabel

Facts:

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

- One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
- A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
- Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Babylonian](#), [captive](#), [captivity](#), [Cyrus](#), [Ezra](#), [high priest](#), [Jehoiakim](#), [Joshua](#), [Judah](#), [Nehemiah](#), [Persia](#), [Persians](#), [Zedekiah](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [Metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Abram](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Ephrathah](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jebus](#))

Bible References:

Waiting

translationAcademy

First, Second or Third Person

This answers the question: What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*
- *Pronouns*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you”.

Description

Definitions

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people uses the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “*Your servant* used to keep *his* father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
”... Do you have an arm like *God’s*? Can you thunder with a voice like *him*? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful. Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to *my Lord*, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *his* brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first or second person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

- **But David said to Saul, “*Your servant* used to keep *his* father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
 - But David said to Saul, “*I, your servant*, used to keep *my* father’s sheep.”

2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”).

- **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like *God’s*? Can you thunder with a voice like *him*?”** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
 - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like *mine*? Can you thunder with a voice like *me*?”
- **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *his* brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
 - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *your* brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Forms of You*

Active or Passive

This answers the question: What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentence Structure*
- *Verbs*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences the subject is the one that the action is done to. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when not to.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

ACTIVE: *My father* built the house in 2010.

PASSIVE: *The house* was built by my father in 2010.

PASSIVE: *The house* was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same reasons in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive:

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants *were killed*, and your servant Uriah the Hittite *was killed* too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemies shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal *was broken down* ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down.

No stonework *was seen* there. (1 Kings 6:18 ULB)

This means that no one saw stonework there. The point is that no stonework was done there.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action.
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - *The king's servants gave* Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead use a generic expression like "they," or "people," or "someone."

- **It would be better for him if a millstone *were put* around his neck and he *were thrown* into the sea** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if *they were to put* a millstone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if *someone were to put* a heavy stone around his neck and *throw* him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

- **A loaf of bread *was given* him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He *received* a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Abstract Nouns*
- *Word Order*

Doublet

This answers the question: What are doublets and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A doublet is a pair of words used together that mean nearly the same nearly thing. In some languages people do not use doublets, or they may use them only in certain situations. Translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning.

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean “very old.”

Description

We are using the word doublet to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing and that are used in the same phrase. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but they may do it for a reason that would not fit in a particular verse.

Examples from the Bible

King David was *old* and *advanced in years*. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

This means that he was “very old.”

he attacked two men *more righteous* and *better* than himself (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

as of a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot*. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use your culture’s way of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.

- **You have decided to prepare *false* and *deceptive* words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

- “You have decided to prepare *false* things to say.”

2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- **King David was *old* and *advanced in years***. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

- “King David was *very old*.”

3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- **a lamb *without blemish* and *without spot***. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “a lamb *without any blemish at all*”

Ellipsis

This answers the question: What is ellipsis?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

Ellipsis is where a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there.

Description

Ellipsis is where one or more words are left out of the sentence because the sentence can be understood without them. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous
(Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is.

Examples from the Bible

when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?”
He said, “Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite by giving Jesus only as much information as necessary. He did not say that he wanted Jesus to heal him, because he knew that Jesus would understand that if he wanted to receive his sight, Jesus would have to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf *and Sirion like a young ox.* (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor *sinner*s in the assembly of the righteous** (Psalm 1:5)
 - "the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and *sinner*s will not stand in the assembly of the righteous"
- **when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, *that I might receive my sight.*"** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - "when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, 'What do you want me to do for you?' He said, 'Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.'"
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - "He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox."

Euphemism

This answers the question: What is a Euphemism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable. Its purpose is to avoid offending the people who hear or read it.

they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons were dead. It is euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he does not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

whether we are awake or asleep (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)

Paul refers to being dead as being “asleep” so that instead of thinking that they will never see their loved ones again in this life, his readers will remember that they will see them again when Jesus establishes his kingdom.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
 - “where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **whether we are awake or asleep** (1 Thessalonians 5:10 ULB)
 - “whether we are alive or dead”

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This answers the question: What are assumed knowledge, implicit information, and explicit information?

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. There are two types information.

- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, although what he says may remind them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes *have holes*, and the birds of the sky *have nests*, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**. Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the

people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For *they do not wash their hands when they eat*. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. They were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit*

Hyperbole

This answers the question: What is hyperbole?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. He may greatly exaggerate something in order to show his strong feeling or opinion about it, or he may generalize the situation by using words like “every” or “all” to mean “many.”

Description

Hyperbole is a figure of speech in which the speaker shows that something is very important by describing it as larger or greater than it really is. There are two kinds of hyperbole:

1. Exaggeration: This is when a speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it.

Whoever does not *carry his own cross* and come after me cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:27 ULB) - This is an exaggeration. It means that whoever wants to be Jesus’ disciple must be determined to follow him faithfully, even if his enemies were to kill that person.

2. Generalization: This is when a speaker uses words like “every” or “all” to mean something like “very many,” but not “every one.” (Some people may not call generalization like this “hyperbole.”)

Moses was educated in *all the learning of the Egyptians* (Acts 7:22 ULB) - This is a generalization. It means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

If readers do not understand that a statement is a hyperbole, they may either think that something happened that did not happen, or they may think that the speaker or writer was saying something that is not true.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, *cut it off*. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple. (Luke 14:26 ULB)

Because of many other things that Jesus said, we know that his use of the word “hate” here is hyperbole. He meant that we must not love even our own family members more than we love him. We must love him more than we love ourselves or anyone else.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, “*Everyone* is looking for you.” (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about *all things* and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God’s Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is hyperbole just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus *walking on the sea* and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

... for *all* have sinned and come short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23 ULB)

The word “all” here is not hyperbole. All humans have sinned. The only human who has never sinned is Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole. For example “all the people” could be translated as “large crowds of people.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the hyperbole.

- **If anyone comes to me and does not *hate* his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.** (Luke 14:26 ULB)
 - “If anyone comes to me and does not *love me much more than* he loves his own father, mother, wife, children, brothers and sisters—yes, and his own life also—he cannot be my disciple.”
- **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops *as numerous as the sand on the seashore*.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - “The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and *a great number of troops*.”

Idiom

This answers the question: What are idioms and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

An idiom is a certain kind of figure of speech, the kind that usually cannot be correctly understood without being told its true meaning. Every language has them. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture that uses it. Its meaning may be different from what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely *set his face* to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should *enter under my roof*. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The words “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that originally wrote the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.

Examples from the Bible

“Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, ”Look, we are your flesh and bone.”
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

The kings of the earth take their stand together (Psalm 2:2 ULB)

This means, “The kings on earth plan together.”

the one who lifts up my head” (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

- **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.”**
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - “...Look, we all belong to the same nation.”
- **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - “He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.”
- **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - “I am not worthy that you should enter my house.”

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

- **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - “Be all ears when I say these words to you.”
- **”My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7ULB)
 - “I am crying my eyes out”

Litotes

This answers the question: What is litotes?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Description

Litotes is a strong statement made by negative phrases to strengthen a positive meaning. It is used to show that the opposite idea is not true.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who speak some languages do not use litotes and would fail to understand that the statement is strengthened. They might think that it is weakened or even canceled.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very worthwhile.

All things were made through him. *Without him was not one thing* made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using litotes John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very concerned.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are *not the least* among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning would not be clear, say in a strong way what *is* true.

- **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was *not useless*,** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
 - "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you *did much good*."
- **Now when it became day, there was *no small excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
 - "Now when it became day, there was *great excitement* among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
 - "Now when it became day, the soldiers were *very concerned* because of what had happened to Peter."

Merism

This answers the question: What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

Description

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

“Alpha and Omega” is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*, (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

“Heaven and earth” is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some readers may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything*"
- ***From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.*** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - "*In all places*, people should praise Yahweh."

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of *heaven and earth*** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - "I praise you, Father, Lord of *everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth*"
- **He will bless those who honor him, both *young and old*.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - "He will bless *all those* who honor him, regardless of whether they are *young or old*."

Metaphor

This answers the question: What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- [Figures of Speech](#)
- [Simile](#)

Description

A metaphor is the use of words to speak of one thing as if it were a different thing. Sometimes a speaker does this in ways that are very common in the language. At other times, a speaker does this in ways that are less common in the language and that might even be unique.

1. First we will discuss very common metaphors.

The metaphors that are very common in a language are usually not very vivid. They may even be “dead.” Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” and “the price of food is going up.” Examples in biblical languages are “hand” to mean “power,” “face” to mean “presence,” and “clothing” to mean emotions or moral qualities.

Metaphors like these are in constant use in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, languages speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that can be seen or held, or as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that you can watch happen.

When these metaphors are used in their normal ways, the speaker and audience do not normally even regard them as figurative language. This is why, for example, it would be wrong to translate the English expression, “The price of petrol is going up” into another language in a way that would draw undeserved attention to it, because English speakers do not view it as a vivid expression, that is, as an unusual expression that carries meaning in an unusual manner.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

2. Next we will discuss the less common metaphors, metaphors that are sometimes even unique in a language.

The speaker usually produces metaphors of this kind in order to emphasize the importance of what he is talking about. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. And he speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

We call this kind of metaphor “live.” It is unique in the biblical languages, which means that it is very memorable.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. The thing someone speaks of is called the **topic**. The thing he calls it is the **image**. The way that they are similar is the **point of comparison**.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a rose. The woman (his “love”) is the topic and the red rose is the image. Both are beautiful and delicate.

- My love is a red, red rose.

1. Sometimes the **topic** and the **image** are both stated clearly.

Jesus said to them. *“I am the bread of life. He who comes to me will not hunger, and he who believes on me will never thirst.”* (John 6:35 ULB)

Jesus called himself the bread of life. The topic is “I” and the image is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have spiritual life.

2. Sometimes only the **image** is stated clearly.

Produce *fruits* that are worthy of repentance (Luke 3:8 ULB)

The image here is “fruits”. The topic is not stated, but it is actions or behavior. Trees can produce good fruit or bad fruit, and people can produce good behavior or bad behavior. Fruits that are worthy of repentance are good behavior that is appropriate for people who have repented.

Purposes of this second kind of metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel toward another.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not realize that a word is being used as an image in a metaphor.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know how the topic and the image are alike.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” Just as a potter takes clay and forms a jar or dish out of it, God makes us into what he wants us to be.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of *the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.*” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor about the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is common and seems to be a normal way to say something in the biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

- **For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he fell asleep*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay,** (Acts 13:36 ULB)

- "For after David had in his own generation served the desires of God, *he died*, was laid with his fathers, and saw decay."

2. If the target audience would think that the phrase should be understood literally, change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding "like" or "as."

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand."

3. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)

- "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick."

4. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

- **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *clay*. You are our *potter*; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

- "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand."

5. Or, if the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, simply state the truth that the metaphor was used to communicate.

- **I will make you become *fishers of men*.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)

- "I will make you become *people who gather men*."

- "Now you gather fish. I will make you *gather people*."

6. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)

- "Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

7. If the target audience would not know how the topic is like the image, state it clearly.

- **Yahweh lives; may *my rock* be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - "Yahweh lives; may he be praised because like a huge rock, *he shields me from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted."
- **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you *to kick a goad*.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself* like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick."

To learn more about common metaphors read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#)

Metonymy

This answers the question: What is a metonymy?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Many times the Bible uses metonymy. If you do not recognize it as a metonymy you will not understand the passage or worse yet, get the wrong understanding of the passage.

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and *the blood* of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a concrete object associated with it.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. Throne is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or, "reign." This means that God would make him become the king who was to follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

who warned you to flee from *the wrath* that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here is an option.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

- **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*This cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - “He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “*The wine in this cup* is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

- **The Lord God will give him *the throne* of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - “The Lord God will give him *the kingly authority* of his father, David.”
 - “The Lord God will *make him king* like his ancestor, King David.”
- **who warned you to flee from *the wrath* to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - “who warned you to flee from God’s coming *punishment*?”

To learn about some common metonymies, we suggest you read:

- [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#)

Parallelism

This answers the question: What is parallelism?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use the kind of parallelism in which the two phrases mean the same thing. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning.

Examples from the Bible

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

3. The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

4. The second says something that contrasts with the first.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

1. For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases.
2. When the two clauses or phrases mean the same thing, some languages would not translate them both. (See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(See [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Parallelism with the Same Meaning](#)

Personification

This answers the question: What is personification?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often speak this way because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom and sin.

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

Some languages do not use personification, and some languages use it only in certain situations.

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see, such as wisdom, sin, and wind. For example:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about relationships between people and other people than about relationships between people and non-human things, such as wealth.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. They are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would not be understood clearly, here are some strategies for dealing with it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

- “sin is at your door, waiting to attack you”

2. Use the words “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

- “sin is about to destroy you, just *as* a wild animal could harm a person.”

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the wind and the sea as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

- “He even controls the winds and the sea.”

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had human characteristics).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Apostrophe*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Rhetorical Question

This answers the question: What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*
- *Sentences*

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express sarcasm or to rebuke or scold the hearer. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other reasons as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question to which the speaker does not expect an answer because he is not looking for information. Speakers often use rhetorical questions to rebuke or scold people.

Those who stood by said, *Is this how you insult God's high priest?*" (Acts 23:4 ULB) The people did not ask this question in order to get information. Rather they used it to scold Paul because they did not think he should have spoken as he did to the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to remind people of something that they already know, to express strong emotion, to say something in a strong way, or to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may think that a question is a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions only for scolding.
- Some readers might think that the purpose of a question is something other than what it really is.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel he should feel free to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a woman would never forget her jewelry and veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat.

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed which a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

Be sure you know that you are dealing with a rhetorical question and not an information question. Then be sure you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - *Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!*
- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - *”Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!”*

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

- **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - *“This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”*
- **Is this how you insult God’s high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - *You should not insult God’s high priest!”*
- **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - *I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!”*
- **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - *“How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!”*

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

- **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - *”You still rule the kingdom of Israel, don’t you?”*

Simile

This answers the question: What is a simile?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36 ULB)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves*, so be as wise *as serpents* and harmless *as doves*. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword*. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, *as a good soldier of Christ Jesus*. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1 If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - "See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves."
- **For the word of God is living and active and sharper *than any two-edged sword***. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - "For the word of God is living and active and *more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword*"

2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
 - "See, I send you out *as chickens in the midst of wild dogs*,"
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
- **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard**, (Matthew 17:20 ULB)
 - "If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed"

3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

- **See, I send you out *as sheep in the midst of wolves***, (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - "See, I send you out and people will want to harm you."
- **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - "How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metaphor*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns*

Synecdoche

This answers the question: What does the word synecdoche mean?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Figures of Speech*

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul”, the part of herself that has emotions, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the legs and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

- **My soul exalts the Lord.** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - "I exalt the Lord."
- **the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)
 - "a representative of the Pharisees said to him"
- **I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - "I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Metonymy*
- *Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies*

Forms of You

This answers the question: What are the different forms of you?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular*
- *Forms of 'You' - Dual/Plural*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

Watch the video for Singular, Dual, and Plural “you” for computer (see <http://youtu.be/cPtjzJ2Advk>) or tablet/phone (see <http://youtu.be/AVITfDEk8nc>).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- *Forms of 'You' - Singular to a Crowd*

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend. Watch the video on Formal and Informal ‘You’ on the **computer** or on the **tablet/phone**. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- *Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal*

Biblical Distance

This answers the question: How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Decimal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

Original Measure	Centimeters	Meters
handbreadth	8 centimeters	.08 meters
span	23 centimeters	.23 meters
cubit	46 centimeters	.46 meters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters	.54 meters
stadia	-	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)

1. Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half kubits*; its width will be *one kubit and a half*; and its height will be *one kubit and a half*."

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*; its width will be *0.7 meter*; and its height will be *0.7 meter*."

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *3 3/4 feet*; its width will be *2 1/4 feet*; and its height will be *2 1/4 feet*."

4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *two and a half cubits (one meter)*; its width will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*; and its height will be *one cubit and a half (0.7 meter)*."

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.

- "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be *one meter*¹; its width will be *0.7 meter*²; and its height will be *0.7 meter*." The footnotes would look like:
 - ^[1] one meter two and a half cubits
 - ^[2] one cubit and a half

Biblical Money

This answers the question: How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

- "The one owed *five hundred denali*, and the other owed *fifty denali*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

- "The one owed *five hundred silver coins*, and the other owed *fifty silver coins*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)

3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

- "The one owed *five hundred days' wages*, and the other owed *fifty days' wages*."

4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*."² (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:

- ^[1] five hundred days's wages
- ^[2] fifty day's wages

5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

- "The one owed *five hundred denarii*¹, and the other owed *fifty denarii*." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
 - ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Copy or Borrow Words](#)
- [Translate Unknowns](#)

Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: What are the Hebrew months?

In order to understand this page, it would be good to read

- [Ordinal Numbers](#)

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months they use.
2. Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
3. Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
4. The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile) - This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in *the month of Abib*. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day *in the first month of the year*, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of Abib*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in *the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the first month of the year*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."

2. Use the months that people know.

- "At that time, you will appear before me in *the month of March*, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt."
- "It will always be a statute for you that *on the day I choose in late September* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

3. State clearly what season the month occurred.

- "It will always be a statute for you that *in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month*, you must humble yourselves and do no work"

4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

- "It will always be a statute for you that in *the day I choose in early autumn* you must humble yourselves and do no work"

How to Translate Names

This answers the question: How can I translate names that are new to my culture?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. All names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this *Melchizedek*, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” simply to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” simply to tell us something about Melchizedek.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace. (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the *Amorites* (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the the Living One who sees me.”

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name *Moses* sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names *Saul* and *Paul* refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name all of the time and write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the *Jordan* and came to *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with the *Amorites*** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - “You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the city of *Jericho*. The leaders of *Jericho* fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*”
- **Shortly after, some *Pharisees* came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.”** (Luke 13:31 ULB)

- “Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.”

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

- **She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - “She named him *Moses*, which sounds like ‘drawn out,’ and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name.

- **she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - “she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Well of the One who sees me*;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text talks about that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.

For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Paul*”¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB)
 - “But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;”

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that explains who or what the name refers to.

For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

- **a young man named *Saul*** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - “a young man named *Saul*”
- **But *Saul*, who is also called *Paul*, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9 ULB) *
 “But __Saul__, who is also called __Paul__, was filled with the Holy Spirit;” * **It came about in Iconium that __Paul__ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue**
 ([[en:bible:notes:act:14:01 | Acts 14:1 ULB)

- "It came about in Iconium that *Paul*¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue"
(Acts 14:1 ULB) The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*

Numbers

This answers the question: How do I translate numbers?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Translate Unknowns*

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5”. Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. Some are small, such as “five” (5) and “fifteen” (15). Others are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), twenty-two thousand (22,000) or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was *eighty-six* years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about *three thousand* men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived *162* years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived *962* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of *thousands of ten thousands*. (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- **Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.** (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities."

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *one million* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. "

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand (100,000)* talents of gold, *one million (1,000,000)* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *one hundred thousand* talents of gold, *a thousand thousand* talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

- "I have prepared for Yahweh's house *a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)*, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The ULB (Unlocked Literal Bible) and the UDB (Unlocked Dynamic Bible) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived *130* years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived *eight hundred* years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived *930* years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Ordinal Numbers*
- *Fractions*

Ordinal Numbers

This answers the question: What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Numbers*

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church *first* apostles, *second* prophets, *third* teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the

order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The *first* lot went to Jehoiarib, the *second* to Jedaiah, the *third* to Harim, the *fourth* to Seorim, ... the *twenty-third* to Delaiah, and the *twenty-fourth* to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The *first* row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The *second* row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The *third* row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The *fourth* row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably be the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *another* to Jedaiah, *another* to Harim,... *another* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
 - ”There were *twenty-four* lots. *One lot* went to Jehoiarib, *the next* to Jedaiah, *the next* to Harim,... *the next* to Delaiah, *and the last* went to Maaziah.”
- **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *the first* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the second* river is Gihon. This one flows**

throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the third* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. *The fourth* river is the Euphrates.(Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)

- "A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became *four* rivers. The name of *one* is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of *the next* river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of *the next* river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The *last* river is the Euphrates."

2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

- **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

- "They cast *twenty-four* lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah."

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Fractions*

Textual Variants

This answers the question: Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Choosing a Source Text*
- *Original Manuscripts*

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. Sometimes the copiers added sentences by mistake or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹[¹]

[¹] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

⁵³[Then every man went to his own house.... ¹¹She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]^[2]

^[2]The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:35-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:15-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹

- ^[1]Many ancient authorities insert v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.” ¹⁶[¹

- ^[1]Many ancient authorities insert verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” ^[1]

- ^[1]Some ancient authorities do not have verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Chapter and Verse Numbers*

- *Original Manuscripts*
- *Terms to Know*
- *The Original and Source Languages*

Translate Unknowns

This answers the question: How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Sentences*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals* (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous *wolves*. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what *myrrh* is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made *great lights* (Psalm 136:7ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like *snow* (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use a phrase that describes the part of the meaning that is important in the particular verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - "Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but *are truly hungry and dangerous animals.*"
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked grain seeds* and two fish"

2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like *snow*** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
 - "your sins ... will be white like *milk*"
 - "your sins ... will be white like *the moon*"

3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *myrrh*. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
 - "Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with *a medicine called myrrh*. But he refused to drink it."
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - "We have here only five loaves of *baked crushed seed bread* and two fish"

4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *jackals*** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - "I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for *wild dogs*"
- **We have here only five loaves of *bread* and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - "We have here only five *loaves of baked food* and two fish"

5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made *great lights*** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - "to him who made *the sun and the moon*"

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Copy or Borrow Words*
- *How to Translate Names*

Verse Bridges

This answers the question: Why are some verse numbers combined, such as “3-5” or “17-18”?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Structure of the Bible*

Sometimes in the ULB or UDB (an in other versions, too) two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. The numbers are written like this because the information in the verses was rearranged.

Description

In rare cases, you will see in the Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB) or the Unlocked Dynamic Bible (UDB) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. It shows where the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

²⁹ These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, ³⁰ Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 26:29-30 ULB)

²⁹⁻³⁰ The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishpan. (Genesis 26:29-30 UDB)

In the ULB text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UDB text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes the ULB has separate verses while the UDB has a verse bridge.

⁴ However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), ⁵ if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULB)

⁴⁻⁵ Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UDB)

There are also a few verse bridges in the ULB.

¹⁷⁻¹⁸ Ezra's sons were Jether, Mered, Epher, and Jalon. Mered's Egyptian wife bore Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah, who became the father of Eshtemoa. These were the sons of Bithiah, daughter of Pharaoh, whom Mered married. Mered's Jewish wife bore Jered, who became the father of Gedor; Heber, who became the father of Soco; and Jekuthiel, who became the father of Zanoah. (1 Chronicles 4:17-18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers.

1. If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.
2. If the ULB has a verse bridge, but another Bible you refer to does not have one, you can choose the order that works best for your language.

See: [Marking Verses in the translationStudio APP](#)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

- ² you must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. ³ You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3)
 - ²⁻³ you must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UDB)

2. If the ULB has a verse bridge, but another Bible you refer to does not have one, you can choose the order that works best for your language.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- [Chapter and Verse Numbers](#)

Background Information

This answers the question: What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

- *Order of Events*
- *Writing Styles*

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. Sometimes a writer may give some background information to help his listeners understand the story. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story. The story teller and translator need to tell the story in a way that people will know whether an event is background information and will be able to understand what order the events happened in.

Description

Every story has a storyline. The storyline tells a series of events mostly in the time order that the events happened. It is full of action verbs that moves the reader along the storyline. Occasionally an author may take a break from the storyline to share something of interest. This break is called **background information**. The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because *their village was going to have a a feast the next day*. *Peter was the best hunter in the village*. *He once killed three wild pigs in one day!* They walked for hours through low bushes until they found a wild pig. They shot the pig and killed it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope *they had brought with them*, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that *it was his own pig*. *Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig*.

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter *was* the best hunter in the village" and "*it was* his own pig."

Sometimes a storyteller makes a break in the story to tell about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a a feast the next day" and "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," "that they had brought with them," and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins's pig."

A writer may use background information

- to help their listeners be interested in the story.
- to help their listeners understand something in the story.
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story.

- to tell the setting of a story. Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place.
 - when the story takes place.
 - who is present when the story begins.
 - what is happening when the story begins.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Translators need to know whether or not the events in the Bible happened in the same order that they are told.
- Translators will need to translate the story in a way that their own readers will understand the order of events.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram *was* eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, *was* about thirty years of age. He *was* the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULB)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULB)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study the grammar and punctuation of your language. Observe how your language presents background information in writings. Follow those same grammar rules when you translate.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.

2. Reorder the information so that that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies applied

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULB English translations.

- **Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli.** (Luke 3:23 ULB)- English uses the word “now” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information.
- **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch *for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done.* But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20 ULB) The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb “had” in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

2. Reorder the information so that that earlier events are mentioned first.

- **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULB)
 - “When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”
- **John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch *for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done.* But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20) - The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.
 - “Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

- *Connecting Words*
- *Introduction of a New Event*